

[Alt text: A Live Photo screen with the Live Photo in the center. Beneath the photo is the frame viewer with the Make Key Photo button active. On either end of the frame viewer are two arrows that allow you to trim the Live Photo. At the bottom of the screen are the Live, Adjust, Filters, and Crop buttons. The Live button is selected.]



1. Go to the Photos app 📷 [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Open a Live Photo, then tap 🛠️ [Alt text: the Edit button] .
3. Tap 📷 [Alt text: the Live Photo button] , then do any of the following:
  - *Set a key photo:* Move the white frame on the frame viewer, tap Make Key Photo, then tap Done.
  - *Trim a Live Photo:* Drag either end of the frame viewer to choose the frames the Live Photo plays.
  - *Make a still photo:* Tap the Live button at the top of the screen to turn off the Live feature. The Live Photo becomes a still of its key photo.
  - *Mute a Live Photo:* Tap 🔊 [Alt text: the Mute button] at the top of the screen. Tap it again to unmute.

**Note:** Live Photos taken on an iPhone 15 model or later with a portrait effect lose the portrait

effect if you change the key photo.



### Add effects to a Live Photo

You can add effects to Live Photos to turn them into fun videos.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Open a Live Photo.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Live Photo button] in the top-left corner, then choose one of the following:
  - *Live*: Applies the Live video playback feature.
  - *Loop*: Repeats the action in a continuous looping video.
  - *Bounce*: Rewinds the action backward and forward.
  - *Long Exposure*: Simulates a DSLR-like long exposure effect by blurring motion.
  - *Live Off*: Turns off the Live video playback feature or applied effect.

### Turn a Live Photo into a video

You can turn a Live Photo into a short video to save or share—for example, to share with people not on Apple devices.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Open a Live Photo.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button] in the top-right corner, then tap Save as Video.

### Related

[Take Live Photos with your iPhone camera](#)

[Edit photos and videos on iPhone](#)

[Undo and revert photo edits in Photos on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Edit portraits](#)

## Edit portraits on iPhone

Metadata

**Summary:** In Photos on your iPhone, change and adjust the studio-quality lighting of portrait photos.

In the Photos app, you can change and adjust the lighting effects, depth of field, and focus point of your portraits. You can also apply portrait effects to photos taken in Photo mode.



[Alt text: The Edit screen of a portrait. The photo is in the center of the screen and below the photo are the Portrait Lighting options. Studio Light is selected. Below that is a slider to adjust the level of the effect. At the bottom of the screen from left to right are the Portrait, Adjust, Filters, and Crop buttons. The Portrait button is selected.]

### Change the Portrait Lighting effect


You can apply, change, or remove the Portrait Lighting effects in portraits.

1. Go to the Photos app 📷 [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap any portrait to view it in full screen, then tap 🛠️ [Alt text: the Edit button] .
3. Tap 📷 [Alt text: the Depth Adjustment button] , then drag 📷 [Alt text: the Portrait Lighting control] to choose a lighting effect.
  - *Natural Light*: The face is in sharp focus against a blurred background.
  - *Studio Light*: The face is brightly lit, and the photo has an overall clean look.
  - *Contour Light*: The face has dramatic shadows with highlights and lowlights.
  - *Stage Light*: The face is spotlighted against a deep black background.

- *Stage Light Mono*: The effect is like Stage Light, but the photo is in classic black and white.
- *High-Key Light Mono*: Creates a grayscale subject on a white background.

**Note:** On iPhone XR, only the front camera supports Natural Light, Studio Light, and Contour Light.

4. Drag the slider left or right to adjust the intensity of the lighting effect.
5. Tap Done to save your changes.



To undo edits after you save, tap  [Alt text: the Edit button], then tap Revert to go back to the original lighting.

### Blur the background in portraits

Use the Depth Control slider to adjust the level of background blur in your portraits.





[Alt text: The Edit screen of a portrait in Photos. A portrait is in the center of the screen and below the photo is a slider to adjust the Depth Adjustment setting. Below the slider from left to right are the Portrait, Adjust, Filters, and Crop buttons. The Portrait button is selected.]

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap any portrait to view it in full screen, then tap  [Alt text: the Edit button] .
3. Drag the Depth Control slider to increase or decrease the background blur effect.  
A black dot marks the original depth value for the photo.
4. Tap Done.

### Change the focus point of a portrait




You can change the subject (or focus point) of a portrait using Focus Control. When you select a new subject, the background blur automatically adjusts so the new subject appears sharp and in focus. Make sure that the new subject isn't blurred or too far in the distance.


1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap any portrait to view it in full screen, then tap  [Alt text: the Edit button] .
3. Tap a new subject or focus point in the photo.
4. Tap Done.

**Note:** Available on portraits taken on iPhone 13 models and later, with iOS 16 or later.

### Apply the portrait effect to photos taken in Photo mode

On iPhone 15 models and later, photos with a person, dog, or cat taken in Photo mode can become portraits in the Photos app.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap any photo taken in Photo mode to view it in full screen, then tap  [Alt text: the Edit button] .
3. If portrait effects are available, tap  [Alt text: the Depth Adjustment button] .
4. Use the Depth Control slider to increase or decrease the level of background blur in the portrait.
5. Tap Done.

To undo edits after you save, open the photo, tap  [Alt text: the Edit button] , then tap Revert.

**Note:** When the portrait effect is applied to a Live Photo taken in Photo mode, the Live Photo effects aren't available. Tap Live to view the Live Photo or apply a Live Photo effect without the portrait effect applied.

### Related

[Take portraits with your iPhone camera](#)

[Edit photos and videos on iPhone](#)

[Edit Cinematic mode videos on your iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Make stickers from your photos](#)

## Make stickers from your photos on iPhone


### Metadata

**Summary:** On your iPhone, turn photos and Live Photos into stickers that you can use to decorate messages, photos, notes, and more.

In the Photos app, you can make stickers from the subjects in your photos and animated stickers from the subjects in your Live Photos. Then use your stickers to decorate messages, photos, notes, and more.

### Turn a photo into a sticker

You can turn the main subject of a photo into a sticker.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo to open it in full screen.
3. Touch and hold the subject, then release.
4. Tap Add Sticker.

The sticker appears in your stickers menu, which you can access when you use the iPhone onscreen keyboard or Markup tools.

5. Tap Add Effect if you want to apply a visual effect such as Outline, Comic, or Puffy.




[Alt text: The Photos app is open to a photo of a person. The person is selected, and the option Add Sticker is available in the menu above.]

**Tip:** You can use stickers you've created to decorate a photo. See [Edit photos and videos](#).

### Turn a Live Photo into an animated sticker




You can turn the moving subject of a Live Photo into an animated sticker.

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a Live Photo to open it in full screen.
3. Touch and hold the subject of the Live Photo, slide it up until you see a duplicate image of the subject, then release it.
4. Tap Add Sticker.

The animated sticker appears in your stickers menu, which you can access when you use the iPhone onscreen keyboard or Markup tools.

5. Tap Add Effect if you want to apply a visual effect such as Outline, Comic, or Puffy.

### Delete a sticker

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo, then tap Edit.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Markup button ], then tap  [Alt text: the Add button ] .
4. Tap Add Sticker, touch and hold the sticker you want to delete, then tap Remove.

Your stickers sync with iCloud, so they're available on your iPhone, iPad, Mac, and Apple Vision Pro devices signed in to the same [Apple Account](#).

### Related

[Add emoji, Memoji, and stickers with the iPhone keyboard](#)

[Use Markup to add text, shapes, stickers, and more to documents on iPhone](#)

[Send stickers in Messages on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Duplicate and copy photos and videos](#)



## Duplicate and copy photos and videos on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** In Photos on your iPhone, you can duplicate a photo or video while preserving the original version.



In the Photos app on iPhone, you can duplicate a photo or video while preserving the original version. You can also copy a photo and then paste it into another document such as an email, text message, or presentation.

### Duplicate a photo or video

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo or video, then tap  [Alt text: the More button ] .
3. Tap Duplicate.



A duplicate copy appears next to the original in your library.

### Copy a photo

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo, then tap  [Alt text: the More button] .
3. Tap Copy, then paste the photo into another document.



### Copy multiple photos or videos

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Swipe up to view your library.
3. Tap Select, then tap the thumbnails you want to copy.
4. Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Copy.
5. Paste the copies into another document.

### Related

[Merge duplicate photos and videos on iPhone](#)

[Lift a subject from the photo or video background on iPhone](#)

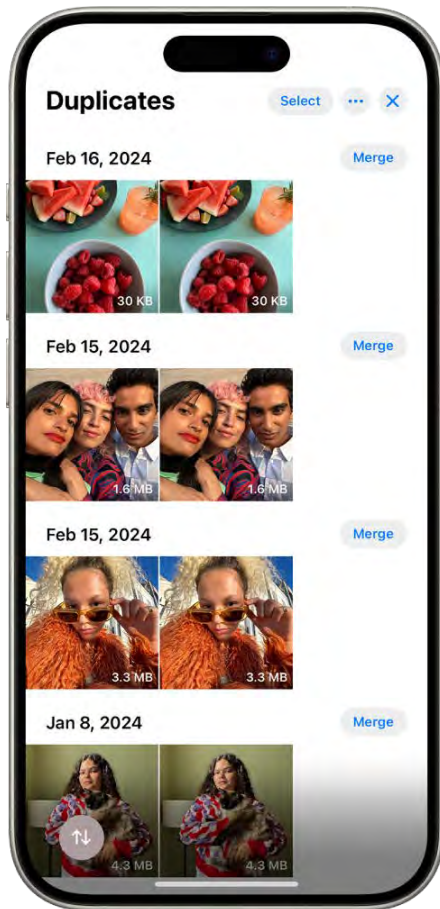
NAV TITLE: [Merge duplicate photos and videos](#)

## Merge duplicate photos and videos on iPhone


#### Metadata

**Summary:** In Photos on your iPhone, merge duplicate photos and videos to save space and clean up your library.

The Photos app identifies duplicate photos and videos in your photo library in the Duplicates album. You can merge duplicate photos and videos to save space and clean up your library.



[Alt text: The Duplicates screen, showing duplicate photos next to each other. On the right side of the screen are Merge buttons to merge each pair of duplicate photos.]

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down to the Utilities section, then tap Duplicates.
3. Tap Merge to combine a set of duplicates, then tap Merge *[number]* Items.

If you don't have any duplicate photos or videos in your library, the Duplicates album doesn't appear.

### Related

[Duplicate and copy photos and videos on iPhone](#)

[Delete or hide photos and videos on iPhone](#)

[Import and export photos and videos on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Import and export photos and videos](#)

# Import and export photos and videos on iPhone


## Metadata

**Summary:** In Photos on your iPhone, import or export photos and videos directly to or from a compatible device.

You can import photos and videos directly to the Photos app from a digital camera, an SD memory card, or another iPhone or iPad that has a camera. You can also export unmodified versions of your photos and videos directly to an external drive, memory card, or other storage device that's connected to your iPhone.

## Import photos and videos to your iPhone



Import photos and videos saved on another device such as a digital camera or an external drive to the Photos app on your iPhone.

1. Insert the camera adapter or card reader into the Lightning or USB-C connector, or connect the device directly to your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
  - *Connect a camera:* Connect the adapter to the camera, then turn on the camera and make sure it's in transfer mode. For more information, see the documentation that came with the camera.
  - *Connect an external storage device or insert an SD memory card into the card reader:* Don't force the card into the slot on the reader; it fits only one way.
  - *Connect an iPhone or iPad:* Use the Lightning adapter or the USB-C cable that came with the device to connect it to the camera adapter. Turn on and unlock the device.
3. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
4. Tap Import.
5. Select the photos and videos you want to import, then select your import destination.
  - *Import all items:* Tap Import All.
  - *Import selected items:* Tap the items you want to import (a checkmark appears for each), tap Import, then tap Import Selected.
6. After the photos and videos have been imported, keep or delete them on the camera, card, iPhone, or iPad.
7. Disconnect the camera adapter or card reader.

## Export photos and videos to an external storage device

You can export photos and videos you took on your iPhone directly to an external drive, a memory card, or other storage device.

**Note:** For photos and videos that have been edited, the unmodified original version will be exported.

1. Connect your iPhone to the storage device using the Lightning or USB-C connector, or connect the device directly to your iPhone.
2. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
3. Select the photos and videos you want to export.
4. Tap  [Alt text: the Share button] , then tap Export Unmodified Original.
5. Tap your storage device (below Locations), then tap Save.

### Related

[Share photos and videos on iPhone](#)

[Share long videos on your iPhone](#)

[Apple Support article: Import photos using Apple camera adapters](#)

NAV TITLE: [Print photos](#)



## Print photos on iPhone to an AirPrint-enabled printer

### Metadata

**Summary:** Print your photos directly from the Photos app on your iPhone with any AirPrint-enabled device.


Print your photos directly from the Photos app on your iPhone with any AirPrint-enabled device.

### Print a photo

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo, then tap  [Alt text: the Share button] .
3. Tap Print.

### Print multiple photos at once

1. Go to the Photos app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Swipe down to view your photo library, then tap Select.

3. Select each photo you want to print, then tap  [Alt text: the Share button] .
4. Tap Print.

#### Related

[Print from iPhone](#)

[Import and export photos and videos on iPhone](#)

[Share photos and videos on iPhone](#)

---


## Podcasts

NAV TITLE: [Find podcasts](#)

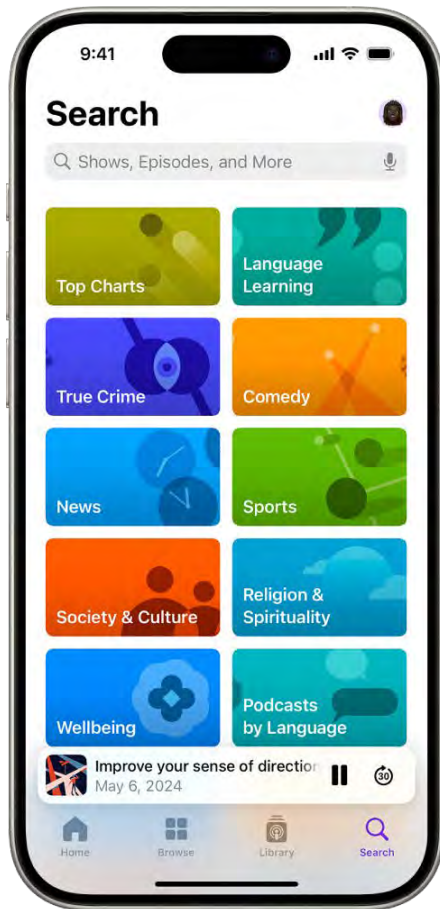
### Find podcasts on iPhone

#### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, use Podcasts to find and play shows. You can stream an episode or download it to play offline.



Use the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] to find shows about science, news, politics, comedy, and more. If you find a show you like, you can *follow* it to add it to your library. Then you can easily listen offline, get notified about new episodes, and more.

**Note:** Shows may offer paid subscriptions that give you access to exclusive shows and episodes, new releases, episodes without ads, and more. You can [subscribe to a show or channel](#) and manage your subscriptions. If you already subscribe to Apple Music, Apple News+, or an eligible third-party app, you can listen to its subscriber content in Podcasts. See [Listen to subscriber-only content in Podcasts on iPhone](#).




[Alt text: The Search screen in the Podcasts app, showing podcast categories. Near the bottom of the screen is episode artwork, the episode title, and the Pause and Skip Forward buttons. At the bottom of the screen are the Home, Browse, Library, and Search tabs.]

## Find podcasts

1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Search by title, person, or topic:* Tap Search, then enter a word or phrase in the search field. Suggestions appear as you type; you can tap a suggested result, or tap Search on the onscreen keyboard to view all results.
  - *Discover new shows:* Tap Browse to see new and trending shows, and the Apple editorial collections. You can also tap Search without typing anything; you see Top Charts and other featured categories.
  - *Add shows by URL:* Tap Library, tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Follow a Show by URL. Enter the URL, then tap Follow.

**Note:** The URL must be for a valid podcast RSS feed.

## Get personalized recommendations

1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home.


Suggested shows appear in the You Might Like row. Suggested episodes based on your listening appear in the More to Discover row. Other recommendations are available based on topics you've explored before and any subscriptions you've already purchased.


To opt out of personalized recommendations for Podcasts, tap Home, then tap your profile picture. Tap your name, then turn off Personalized Recommendations.

**Note:** Your Personalized Recommendations setting also applies to the App Store, Apple Books, iTunes Store, Apple TV, and subscriptions from Apple.

## View shared podcasts


When a friend shares a show with you in Messages, you can easily find it in the Podcasts app.

1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then scroll to the Shared with You section.

If you don't see Shared with You, check to make sure your friend is in your contacts, and that Podcasts is turned in Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Messages > Shared with You.

See also [Find all the content someone shared with you.](#)

## Browse episodes within a specific podcast

1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a show to see its information page.
3. Scroll to see recent episodes or tap See All (if available).

## Related

[Download, save, remove, and share podcast episodes on iPhone](#)


[Listen to podcasts on iPhone](#)

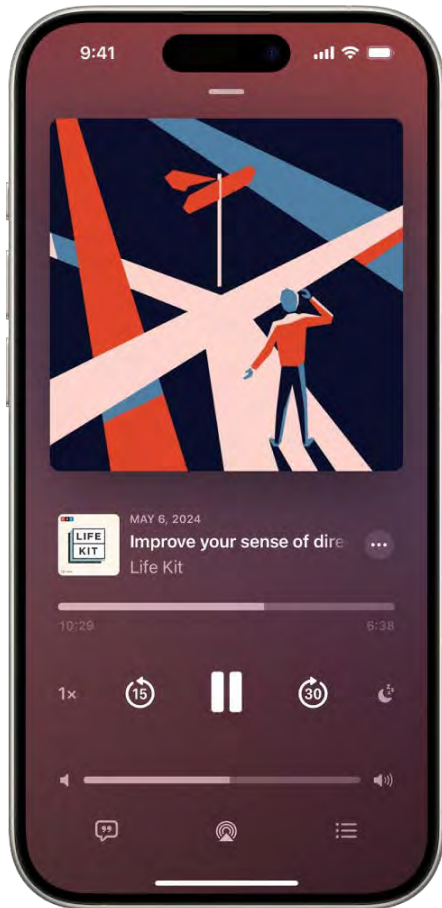
NAV TITLE: [Listen to podcasts](#)

# Listen to podcasts on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** In Podcasts on iPhone, play, pause, or skip ahead using the playback controls, set a sleep timer, and stream episodes to another device.


In the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A], you can play an episode, see what's playing next, listen to an episode when you're offline, set a sleep timer, and use the playback controls.



[Alt text: The Now Playing tab in the Podcasts app, showing the podcast artwork, the episode title, the playback controls, and the volume slider. At the bottom of the screen is the AirPlay icon and the Playing Next button.]

- COMMENT - #ba #podcasts

### Play a podcast

1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. [Find a podcast](#), then tap below an episode title.

**Tip:** To jump to a specific time, drag the slider below the episode information. (If the slider doesn't appear, tap the player near the bottom of the screen to open Now Playing.)

### Resume playing a previous podcast





1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.



2. Tap Home, scroll to the Recently Played section, then tap the Play button - **COMMENT**  
- **Check for icon** below an episode title.

### Choose what to play next



You can add episodes to Playing Next, then listen to them later.

1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. [Find a podcast.](#)
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button] for an episode, then tap Play Next.
4. Tap the player near the bottom of the screen to open Now Playing, then tap  [Alt text: the Playing Next button] .
5. In the Queue section, do any of the following:
  - *Play an episode:* Tap the episode. The next episode in the queue plays immediately after the previous episode finishes.
  - *Reorder episodes:* Drag  [Alt text: the Reorder button] to move an episode up or down in the list.
  - *Remove an episode from the queue:* Swipe left on the episode, then tap Remove.
  - *Remove all episodes from the queue:* Tap Clear.

If you listen to multiple episodes of a show in a row, additional episodes appear in the Continue Playing section of Now Playing. These episodes play after the ones you added to the Queue section, so you can easily pick up where you left off in a show. You can also tap an episode in Continue Playing to start listening right away.

### Set a sleep timer

You can set a sleep timer so that playback stops automatically after a specified period of time.










1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the player near the bottom of the screen to open Now Playing.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Sleep Timer button] , then choose an option.

### Use the playback controls

Tap the player near the bottom of the screen to open Now Playing, then use any of the following controls.

(table aria-label=Playback controls)

Control	Description
 [Alt text: The Play button.]	Play the current episode.

 [Alt text: The Pause button.]	Pause the current episode.
 [Alt text: The Playback Speed button.]	Choose a faster or slower playback speed.
 [Alt text: The 15 Seconds Rewind button.]	Jump back 15 seconds.  To change the number of seconds you skip back, go to Settings > Apps > Podcasts, then tap Back.
 [Alt text: The 30 Seconds Fast Forward button.]	Jump forward 30 seconds.  To change the number of seconds you skip forward, go to Settings > Apps > Podcasts, then tap Forward.
 [Alt text: The Sleep Timer button.]	Set a timer for podcasts to stop playing.
 [Alt text: The View Transcript button.]	View the transcript for an episode.
 [Alt text: The AirPlay button.]	<a href="#">Stream the audio to other devices.</a>
 [Alt text: The Playing Next button.]	See what's playing next, or play more episodes from a show you've recently listened to.
 [Alt text: The More button.]	Choose more actions such as sharing or downloading the episode.

**Related**


- [Organize your podcast library on iPhone](#)
- [Listen to subscriber-only content in Podcasts on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [View podcast transcripts](#)

# View podcast transcripts on iPhone

## Metadata




Summary: On iPhone, view and search transcripts for podcast episodes.

In the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] , you can view and search episode transcripts.




[Alt text: An episode transcript in the Podcasts app, with a sentence highlighted. Below the transcript are the playback controls.]

When an episode transcript is available, you can read it.

1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *While playing an episode:* Tap  [Alt text: the View Transcript button] . (You may need to tap the player near the bottom of the screen to open Now Playing.)
  - *While viewing episode information:* Scroll down to the Transcripts section. You can also tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap View Transcript.

- *From the Up Next section:* Tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap View Transcript.

You can read along with an episode as you play it. Tap a word to jump to that time in the episode. Tap  [Alt text: The Search button] to find a specific word or phrase.

**Note:** Transcript availability may vary by language, and by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Follow and play shows in Apple Podcasts on iPhone and iPad](#).

## Related


[Listen to podcasts on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Follow your favorite podcasts](#)

# Follow your favorite podcasts on iPhone




### Metadata

**Summary:** In Podcasts on iPhone, follow or unfollow podcasts and customize your notification preferences.



When you find a show you like in the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A], follow it to add it to your library so you can get notified about new episodes, change the playback order, and more.

## Follow a podcast

When you follow a podcast, it's added to your library.



1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *While viewing show information:* Tap Follow.  
You can also tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Follow Show.
  - *While viewing episode information, or from Now Playing:* Tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Follow Show.

## Unfollow a podcast

1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Shows.
3. Tap a show you follow, tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Unfollow Show.

## Get notifications for new episodes

Get notified when new episodes are available for podcasts you follow.

1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the My Account button] or your picture.
4. Tap Notifications, then turn Notifications on or off.

### Related

[Subscribe to a show or channel in Podcasts on iPhone](#)

[Find podcasts on iPhone](#)


[Organize your podcast library on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use the Podcasts widget](#)

## Use the Podcasts widget on iPhone

### Metadata


**Summary:** On iPhone, add the Podcasts widget to your Home Screen so you can view the episodes that are playing next without opening the app.

You can add the Podcasts widget to your Home Screen to view and play episodes in your Up Next queue without opening the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] .

### Add a Podcasts widget to the Home Screen

1. Touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle.
2. Tap Edit at the top left, then tap Add Widget to open the widget gallery.
3. Scroll down, then tap Podcasts.
4. Swipe left and right to view the different widget sizes and layouts. When you see the option you want, tap Add Widget.

To move the widget on your Home Screen, touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle. Drag the widget to a new location, then tap Done.

To remove the widget from your Home Screen, touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle, tap the  [ALT N/A] at the top left of the widget, then tap Remove.


### Related

[Listen to podcasts on iPhone](#)



## Organize your podcast library on iPhone

### Metadata


**Summary:** On iPhone, use Library to customize the podcasts you follow, catch up on the latest episodes, and create your own stations.

In the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A], you can organize the podcasts you follow, catch up on the latest episodes, and create your own stations.

### View your podcast library

1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library at the bottom of the screen to see the following options:
  - *Shows:* Tap Followed to view shows you follow. If you downloaded or saved individual episodes from podcasts you don't follow, tap All to see them. You can tap any show to see the information page or the episodes you downloaded or saved.
  - *Channels:* See channels from shows you follow and browse all shows in a channel.
  - *Saved:* Episodes you saved appear here.
  - *Downloaded:* Episodes you downloaded appear here. You can listen to these episodes without an internet connection.
  - *Latest Episodes:* The most recent episodes from each show you follow are displayed here. To change how long episodes stay in this playlist, tap  [Alt text: the More button] .
  - *Stations:* If you created stations, each one is listed.


### Filter episodes by unplayed, saved, downloaded, and season

1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a show to see its information page.
3. Tap Episodes (or the current filter) above the list of episodes.
4. Choose an option, like Unplayed or Season 1.



**Note:** Some filter options, such as Unplayed, Downloaded, Saved, and Played, are only available for shows that you follow or shows with downloaded or saved episodes.

### Change the episode playback order

1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.


2. Tap Library, then tap Shows.
3. Tap a show you follow to view its information page.
4. Tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Settings.
5. Choose an episode order option.

#### **Limit the number of downloads from each podcast**

1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Shows.
3. Tap a show you follow to view its information page.
4. Tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Settings.
5. Tap Automatically Download, then choose an option.


#### **Mark an episode as played**

Do any of the following:

- *While viewing show information:* Swipe right on an episode, then tap Played.
- *While viewing episode information:* Tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Mark as Played.

#### **Hide episodes you've already played**



You can change a show's settings to hide episodes you've already played.


Tap a show you follow to view its information page, tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Hide Played Episodes.

To automatically hide played episodes for all shows you follow, go to Settings > Apps > Podcasts, then turn on Hide Played Episodes.

#### **Create your own station**

Use stations (similar to a music playlist) to group shows you follow based on themes like news, comedy, or morning commute. Episodes from the podcasts you choose are automatically added to your station regularly.

1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap  [Alt text: the More button] near the top right.
3. Tap New Station, add a title, then tap Save.
4. Tap Choose Podcasts, then tap the shows you want to add to the station (or turn on Include All Podcasts).
5. Tap Back, then tap Done.

**Tip:** You can adjust the number of episodes from each podcast that are added to your station. Tap the station, tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Station Settings. To use the same settings for all podcasts in a station, tap Episodes, then choose an option. To adjust the settings for a single show, tap the show in the Podcasts list, then choose an option.

## Related


[Download, save, remove, and share podcast episodes on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Download, save, remove, and share podcasts](#)






# Download, save, remove, and share podcast episodes on iPhone

## Metadata




**Summary:** In Podcasts on iPhone, download, save, remove, and share podcast episodes.

In the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A], you can download, save, remove, and share podcast episodes.


## Download an episode

1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *While viewing show information:* Swipe left on an episode, then tap  [Alt text: the Download button].  
You can also tap  [Alt text: the More button] below an episode, then tap Download Episode.
  - *While viewing episode information:* Tap  [Alt text: the Download button].  
You can also tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Download Episode.

## Save an episode

1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *While viewing show information:* Swipe left on an episode, then tap  [Alt text: the Save button].  
You can also tap  [Alt text: the More button] below an episode in the list, then tap Save Episode.






- *While viewing episode information:* Tap  [Alt text: the Save button] .

You can also tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Save Episode.







When you save an episode, it's automatically downloaded so you can listen to it offline. To turn off this option, go to Settings > Apps > Podcasts, then turn off Download When Saving.

### Remove a saved episode



1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *From the Library:* Tap Saved, then tap a show. Swipe left on an episode, then tap Unsave.
  - *While viewing show or episode information:* Tap  [Alt text: the Unsave button] near the episode name.

You can also tap  [Alt text: the More button] near the episode name, then tap Unsave Episode.


### Remove a downloaded episode


1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *From the Library:* Tap Downloaded, then tap a show. Swipe left on an episode, then tap Remove Download.  
  
You can also tap  [Alt text: the More button] near the episode name, then tap Remove Download.
  - *While viewing show information:* Tap  [Alt text: the Download button] or  [Alt text: the More button] near the episode name, then tap Remove Download.
  - *While viewing episode information:* Tap  [Alt text: the Checkmark button] or  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Remove Download.

### Remove all downloaded episodes from a show



1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, tap Shows, then tap a show to see its information page.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Remove Downloads.

### Remove all downloaded episodes

1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Downloaded.

3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Remove All Downloads.

### Share a podcast show or episode

1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a show to see its information page. If you want to share a specific episode, tap the episode.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button] near the top right, then tap Share Show or Share Episode.
4. Optionally, specify the starting time for a shared episode. Tap From Start, then choose From [time].

The shared episode starts from the point where you're listening when you tap Share.

5. Choose how to share the show or episode.

### Related


[Subscribe to a show or channel in Podcasts on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Subscribe to podcasts](#)

## Subscribe to a show or channel in Podcasts on iPhone


### Metadata

Summary: In Podcasts on iPhone, subscribe to podcasts.

In the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A ] , subscribe to, change, cancel, and share your podcasts subscriptions. Paid subscriptions allow you to support the shows you love, and they often include premium extras, early access to new episodes, or ad-free listening.



**Note:** Not all subscriptions and channels are available in all countries, regions, or languages. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

### Subscribe to a show or channel

1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Select the show or channel you want to subscribe to.
3. Tap the subscription button (if available).

When you subscribe to a show, you automatically follow it. See [Follow your favorite podcasts on iPhone](#). When you subscribe to a channel or follow one of its shows, the channel appears in the Channels section of your library.

## Change or cancel your subscriptions

1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the My Account button] or your picture, then tap Manage Subscriptions.
4. Tap a subscription to change or cancel it.

## Share Apple Podcasts subscriptions

When you subscribe to podcast channels, you can [use Family Sharing](#) to share your subscriptions with up to five other family members. Your family group members will automatically have access to the channels you subscribe to.

If you [join a family group](#) and a family group member subscribes to a show you already subscribe to, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

**Note:** To stop sharing a show subscription with a family group, you can cancel the subscription or [leave a Family Sharing group](#).

## Related


[Apple Support article: Get and manage your Apple Podcasts Subscriptions](#)  
[Listen to subscriber-only content in Podcasts on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Listen to subscriber-only content](#)

# Listen to subscriber-only content in Podcasts on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** In Podcasts on iPhone, play audio content from other apps you subscribe to.


In the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A], you can listen to audio content from Apple Music, Apple News+, and eligible third-party subscription apps.

**Note:** Not all apps offer audio content that's available in Podcasts.

## Connect app subscriptions to Podcasts

Your eligible app subscriptions are automatically connected to Podcasts if you subscribed through the App Store and the app offers audio content in Podcasts.

If you subscribed using another method, do the following:

1. Go to the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] .
2. [Browse or search](#) for a channel with an eligible subscription.
3. On the Channel page, tap the Already a Subscriber link, then follow the instructions to connect your app subscription.

After an app subscription is connected, you can find the channel in your library. You can use Podcasts to play all subscriber-only shows and episodes.

### Related

[Subscribe to a show or channel in Podcasts on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Change download settings](#)

## Change your download settings for Podcasts on iPhone


### Metadata

**Summary:** In Podcasts on iPhone, customize your download preferences in Settings.


Podcasts you follow are automatically downloaded to your Apple device. Episodes you've played are automatically deleted from your device. You can change those settings, and adjust other download options.

### Turn automatic downloads on or off

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Podcasts.
2. Tap Automatically Download, then tap an option.

**Tip:** To automatically download episodes from a particular podcast, open the Podcasts app  [ALT N/A] , tap Library, then tap Shows. Touch and hold the show's artwork, tap Settings, then tap Automatically Download to choose a download option.

### Remove downloaded podcasts after you listen to them

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Podcasts.
2. Turn on Remove Played Downloads.

Or, to adjust this setting for a particular podcast you follow, tap Library, tap Shows, then touch and hold the show's artwork. Tap Settings, then turn on Remove Played Downloads.

### Turn off automatic syncing across Apple devices

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Podcasts.

2. Turn off Sync Library.

### Related

[Download, save, remove, and share podcast episodes on iPhone](#)

---


# Reminders

NAV TITLE: [Get started with Reminders](#)

## Get started with Reminders on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** Use the Reminders app on iPhone to set reminders, make grocery lists, create checklists for projects, and organize tasks in to-do lists.

The Reminders app  [ALT N/A] helps you remember anything you need to track. You can set reminders, make grocery lists, create checklists for projects, and organize tasks in to-do lists.

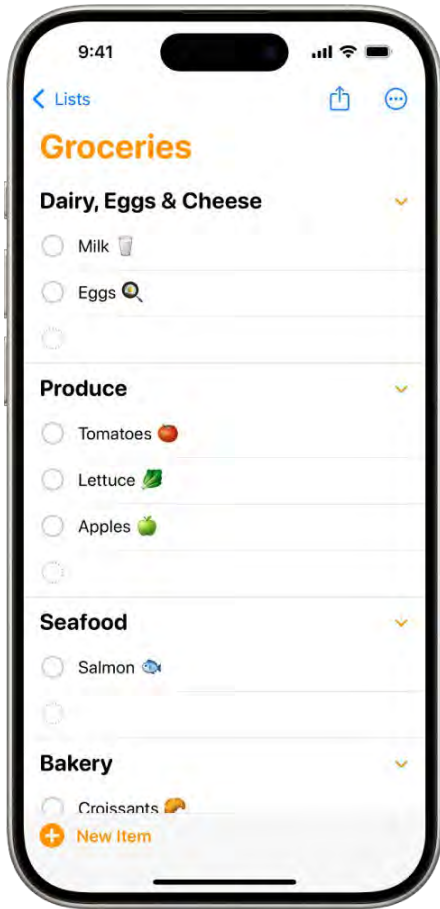
### Set a reminder




[Alt text: The Reminders app, showing a new task being added to the Reminders list.]

Simply type, dictate, or ask Siri when you need to remember something.

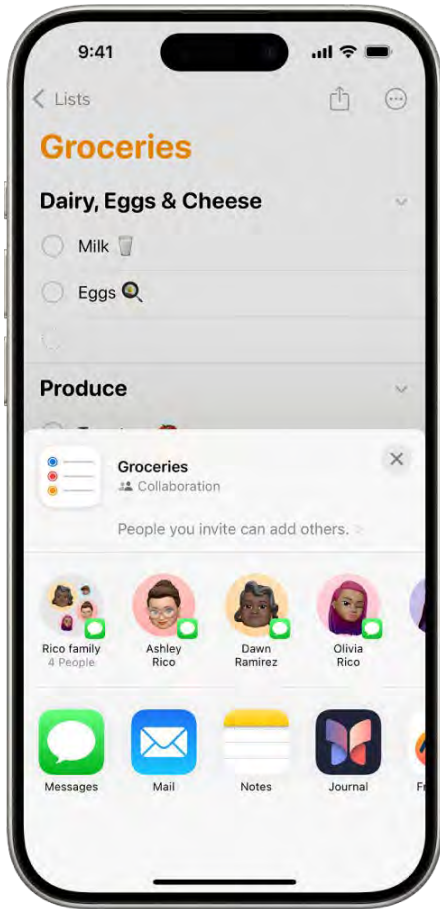
**Create a grocery list**



[Alt text: The Reminders app, showing a grocery list with items in categories such as Produce and Seafood.]

Make your shopping easier with a grocery list that automatically sorts items into categories. To convert a regular list into a grocery list, tap  [Alt text: the More button], tap Show List Info, tap List Type, then choose Groceries.

### Collaborate on a list

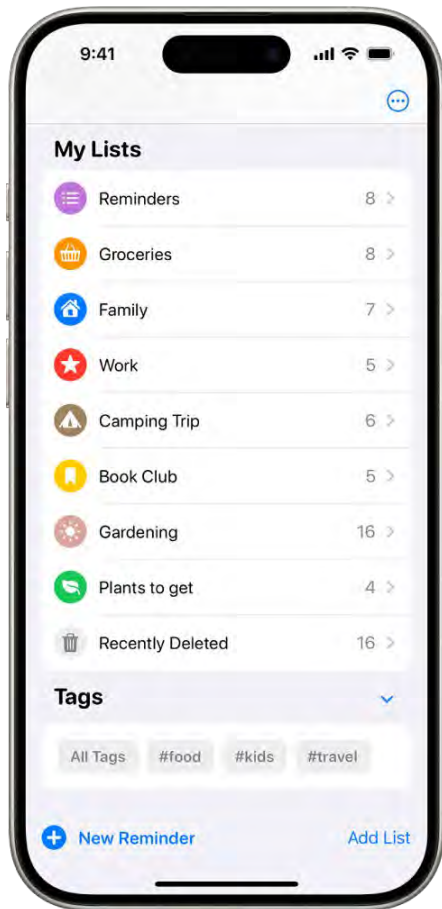


[Alt text: The Reminders app, showing a grocery list with options for sharing at the bottom.]

To invite collaborators to work on a list, tap  [Alt text: the Share button], then choose a sharing option.

### Organize your reminders





[Alt text: The Reminders app, showing multiple lists and the Tag Browser at the bottom.]

You can create new lists to suit your needs, categorize with tags, and manage your reminders with Smart Lists.

**Note:** All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders in iCloud](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Want to learn more?

- [Set reminders on iPhone](#)
- [Make a grocery list in Reminders on iPhone](#)
- [Share lists and collaborate in Reminders on iPhone](#)
- [Use Smart Lists in Reminders on iPhone](#)

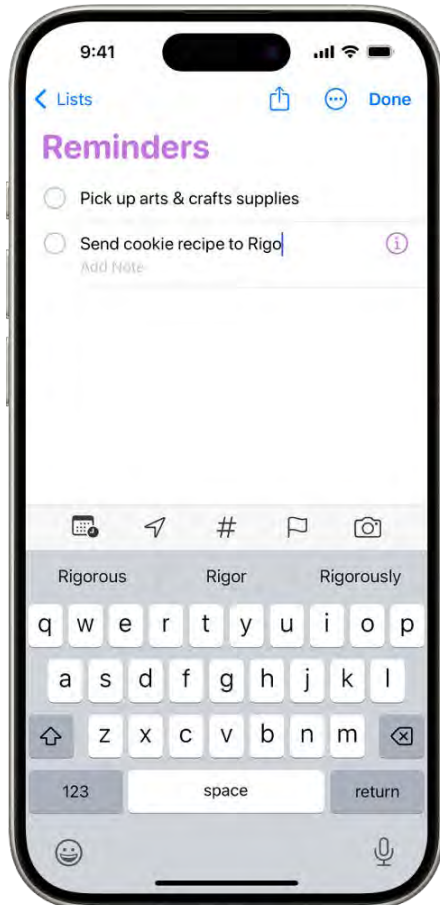
NAV TITLE: [Set reminders](#)

## Set reminders on iPhone

#### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, easily add reminders. Simply type or dictate in a list, ask Siri, or add a reminder from the Calendar app.


In the Reminders app, you can easily set reminders. Simply type or dictate in a list, ask Siri, or add a reminder from the Calendar app.



[Alt text: A new task is being added in the Reminders list.]

**Note:** All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders in iCloud](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

#### Set a reminder

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap New Reminder, then enter a description.

#### Ask Siri to set a reminder

**Siri:** Say something like: “Add artichokes to my groceries list.” [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

### **Add a reminder in Calendar**

See [Use Reminders in Calendar.](#)

### **Related**

[Make a grocery list in Reminders on iPhone](#)

[Add details in Reminders on iPhone](#)

[Complete and remove items in Reminders on iPhone](#)

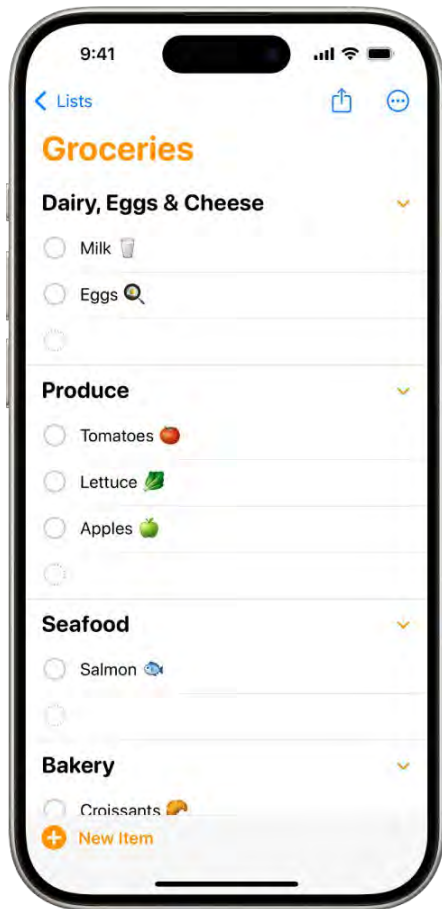
NAV TITLE: [Make a grocery list](#)

## Make a grocery list in Reminders on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** In Reminders on iPhone, make a grocery list, automatically sort items into categories, and change how items are grouped.


In the Reminders app, you can create a grocery list to make shopping easier. Items are automatically sorted into categories such as Produce and Seafood. You can change how items are grouped, and the list remembers your preferences.





[Alt text: The Reminders app showing a grocery list with items in categories such as Produce and Seafood.]

**Note:** All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders in iCloud](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

### Create a new grocery list

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Enter a name for the list, tap List Type, then choose Groceries.
3. Choose a color and symbol for the list (optional).



### Convert an existing list to a grocery list

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a list, tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Show List Info.
3. Tap List Type, then choose Groceries.

### Add an item to your grocery list

**Siri:** You can quickly add an item using Siri. Say something like: “Add artichokes to my groceries list.” [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

Or without using Siri:

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In your grocery list, tap New Item, then enter a description.
3. To enter more information, tap Add Note.
4. Tap  [Alt text: the Edit Details button] to edit the item details. For example, you can attach a photo, set a location-based reminder, or flag an important item.

Items added to the list are automatically placed in categories. If you enter grocery items in a language different from the system language of your iPhone, you can [add an additional language in Settings](#). (Grocery categorization is available for [supported languages](#).)

## Related

[Complete and remove items in Reminders on iPhone](#)

[Edit and organize a list in Reminders on iPhone](#)

[Share lists and collaborate in Reminders on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Add details](#)

# Add details in Reminders on iPhone



## Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, add details to your reminders such as notes, links, due dates, and photos.

You can add details to your reminders such as notes, links, due dates, and photos.








**Note:** All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders in iCloud](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

## Add a note, URL, and other details to a reminder


1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap an item.
3. Tap Add Note, then add more information.
4. Tap  [Alt text: the Edit Details button] to edit the item details. For example, you can set a date and time, set a location-based reminder, flag an important item, or attach a photo.

### Set when and where to be reminded

You can be reminded on a certain date, at a specific time or location, or when you're texting someone in Messages.

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap an item, then do any of the following:
  - *Schedule a date and time:* Tap  [Alt text: the Date and Time button], then choose an option.  
**Tip:** Reminders with a due date appear as an all-day event in Calendar. See [Use Reminders in Calendar](#).
  - *Set a recurring reminder:* Tap  [Alt text: the Edit Details button], tap Repeat, then choose the frequency.
  - *Get an early reminder before the scheduled date and time:* Tap  [Alt text: the Edit Details button], tap Early Reminder, then choose when you want to be reminded. For example, “5 minutes before,” “2 days before,” or another choice.
  - *Add a location:* Tap  [Alt text: the Location button], then choose where you want to be reminded—for example, when you arrive home or get into a car with a Bluetooth® connection to your iPhone.  
**Note:** To receive location-based reminders, you must allow Reminders to use your precise location. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Privacy & Security > Location Services. Turn on Location Services, tap Reminders, choose While Using the App, then turn on Precise Location.
  - *Get a reminder in Messages:* Tap  [Alt text: the Edit Details button], turn on When Messaging, then choose someone from your contacts list. The reminder appears the next time you chat with that person in Messages.

### Set a flag and priority

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap an item.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Flag an important item:* Tap  [Alt text: the Flag button].
  - *Set a priority:* Tap  [Alt text: the Edit Details button], tap Priority, then choose Low, Medium, or High.

### Add a photo or scan a document

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap an item, then tap  [Alt text: the Photos button].

3. Do any of the following:

- Take a new photo.
- Choose a photo from your photo library.
- Scan a document.
- Scan and insert text.

### Related

[Complete and remove items in Reminders on iPhone](#)

[Use Smart Lists in Reminders on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Complete and remove items](#)


## Complete and remove items in Reminders on iPhone

### Metadata


**Summary:** In Reminders, check off items on your list or permanently delete items. With the Reminders widget, complete items from the iPhone Home Screen or Lock Screen.

In a Reminders list, you can check off items to hide them, or you can permanently delete items. With the Reminders widget, you can complete items from the iPhone Home Screen or Lock Screen.

### Mark an item as completed

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. While viewing a list, tap the empty circle next to an item to mark the item as completed.

Completed items are hidden on your list.

To unhide completed items, tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Show Completed. To delete the completed items, tap Clear.


### Remove or delete an item

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. While viewing a list, swipe left on an item, then tap Delete.

If you change your mind, you can recover the deleted item—tap with three fingers or shake to undo.

**Tip:** You can recover or permanently delete items in the Recently Deleted list.

## Use the Reminders widget

With the Reminders widget, you can complete items from the Home Screen without opening the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] .

1. On the iPhone Home Screen, [add the Reminders widget](#).
2. To change the list shown in the widget, touch and hold the widget, tap Edit Widget, then choose a list.
3. To complete an item, tap the item in the widget.

## Related

[Edit and organize a list in Reminders on iPhone](#)

[Use Smart Lists in Reminders on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Edit and organize a list](#)

# Edit and organize a list in Reminders on iPhone



### Metadata

**Summary:** In Reminders on iPhone, organize a list with sections and subtasks; view the sections as columns and move items.

In the Reminders app, you can organize a list with sections and subtasks. You can also view the sections as columns and easily move items to different columns.

**Note:** All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders in iCloud](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

## Edit a list


1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. While viewing a list, tap  [Alt text: the More button], then do any of the following:
  - *Change the list name, type, color, or icon:* Tap Show List Info.
  - *Edit multiple items:* Tap tap Select Reminders or Select Items, then select the items you want to edit. You can also drag two fingers over the items. Use the buttons at the bottom of the screen to add a date and time, move, delete, assign, complete, tag, or flag the selected items.
  - *Sort items by due date, creation date, priority, or title:* (not available in all Smart Lists) Tap Sort By, then choose an option.







When you sort or reorder a list, the new order is applied to the list on your other devices where you're using [updated reminders](#). If you sort or reorder a shared list, other participants also see the new order (if they use updated reminders).

- *Remove the list:* Tap Delete List.

### Manually reorder or recategorize items in a list

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. While viewing a list, touch and hold an item you want to move, then drag it to a new location.

### Organize with sections



1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
  2. While viewing a list, do any of the following:
    - *Create a new section:* Tap  [Alt text: the More button], tap New Section, then enter a name.
    - *Collapse a section:* Tap  [Alt text: the Collapse button].
    - *Expand a section:* Tap  [Alt text: the Expand button].
    - *Rename section:* Tap the section name, then enter a new name.
    - *Move a section:* Touch and hold the section, then drag it to a new position.
- Note:** You can't move the Others section.
- *Remove a section:* Swipe left on the section, then tap Delete.

### View the sections as columns


You can view the list in columns, making it easy to visualize and recategorize the items.



[Alt text: The Reminders app showing a grocery list with the categories organized as columns.]

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. While viewing a list, tap  [Alt text: the More button ], then tap View as Columns.
3. To recategorize an item, drag it into a different column.

### Create subtasks

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. While viewing a list, swipe right on an item, then tap Indent. Or drag an item onto another item.

If you complete a main task, the subtasks are also completed. If you delete or move a main task, the subtasks are also deleted or moved.

### Related

[Organize multiple lists in Reminders on iPhone](#)

[Tag items in Reminders on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Search your lists](#)


## Search through all your lists in Reminders on iPhone

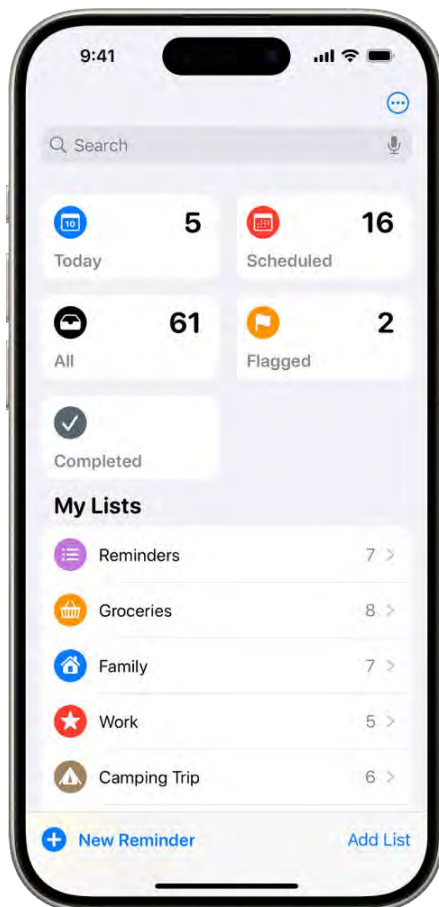
Metadata

Summary: In Reminders on iPhone, search all your lists for items that contain specific text.

In the Reminders app, you can easily search through all your lists for items that contain specific text.

### Search for items in all your lists

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Lists to see all the lists.
3. In the search field, enter a word or phrase.



[Alt text: A Reminders screen showing search field at the top and multiple lists below.]

## Related

[Tag items in Reminders on iPhone](#)

[Use Smart Lists in Reminders on iPhone](#)

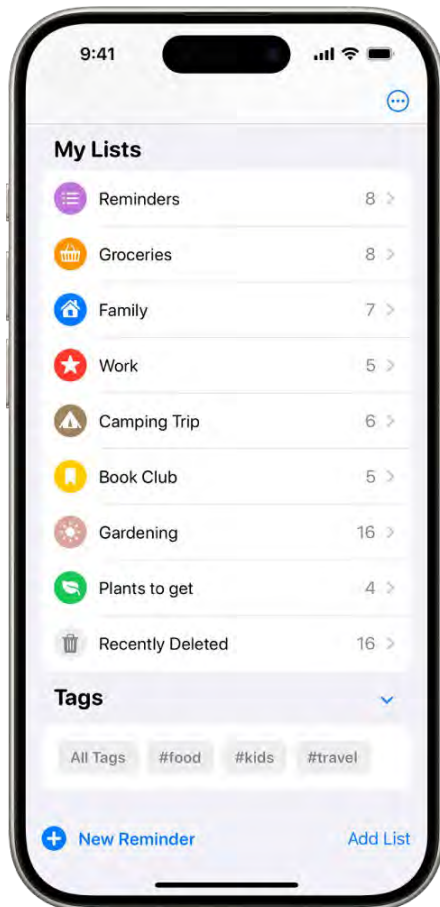
NAV TITLE: [Organize multiple lists](#)

# Organize multiple lists in Reminders on iPhone

## Metadata

**Summary:** In Reminders on iPhone, create new lists, organize the lists into groups, and pin lists for quick access.


In the Reminders app, you can create new lists, organize the lists into groups, and pin lists for quick access.





[Alt text: A Reminders screen showing multiple lists and the Tag Browser at the bottom.]

**Note:** All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders in iCloud](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

### Make a new list

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Lists (in the top-left corner).
3. Tap Add List.
4. Enter a name, then choose a color and symbol for the list.
5. Tap List Type, then choose Standard, Groceries, or [Smart List](#).

### Pin an important list above the other lists for easy access

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Lists (in the top-left corner).
3. Touch and hold a list, then tap Pin. You can also swipe right on the list, then tap  [Alt text: the pin button] .



You can have a maximum of nine pinned lists.

To change the position of a pinned list, tap  [Alt text: the More button] , tap Edit Lists, then drag  [Alt text: the Reorder button] to a new position.



### Create a group of lists

You can organize your lists in groups such as work, school, or shopping.



To create a group, simply drag a list onto another list. You can also do the following:

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Lists (in the top-left corner), tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Edit Lists.
3. Tap Add Group, enter a name, select the lists to include in the group (optional), then tap Create.

### Edit and rearrange lists and groups

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Lists (in the top-left corner), then do any of the following:
  - *Rearrange lists and groups:* Drag a list or group to a new location. You can even move a list to a different group.
  - *Change the name and appearance of a list or group:* Swipe left on the list or group, then tap  [Alt text: the Edit Details button] .

## Delete a list or group

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Lists (in the top-left corner).
3. Swipe left on the list or group, then tap  [Alt text: the Delete button] .

When you delete a group, you have the option to keep the lists.

Delete lists or groups are moved to Recently Deleted. You can recover them within 30 days of deletion. After 30 days, they are permanently deleted.

## Related

[Tag items in Reminders on iPhone](#)

[Use Smart Lists in Reminders on iPhone](#)

NAV.TITLE: [Tag items](#)

# Tag items in Reminders on iPhone


### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, use tags to categorize reminders and automatically filter them across lists.

In the Reminders app, you can use tags as a fast and flexible way to categorize and organize your reminders. You can add one or more tags to a reminder, such as #shopping and #work, and easily search and filter your reminders across lists using the Tag Browser or Smart Lists.

**Note:** All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

## Add tags

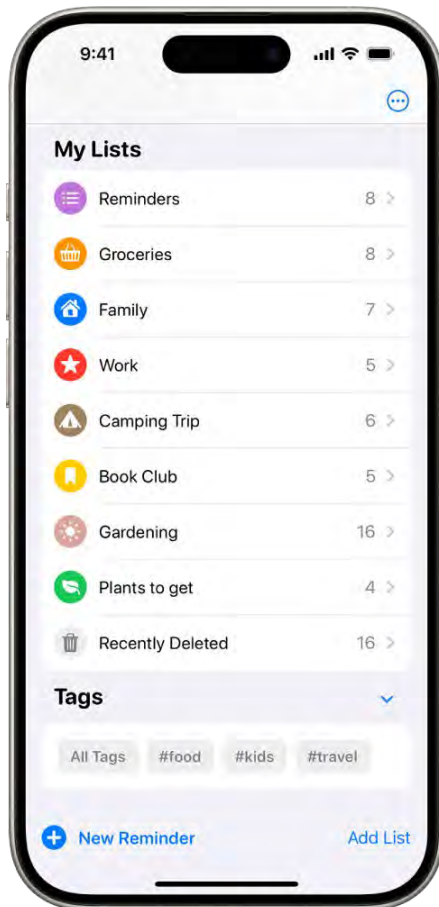
1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. When you create or edit an item in a list, type # followed by the tag name or choose a tag from the menu above the keyboard.

A tag can be only one word, but you can use dashes and underscores to combine words. You can add multiple tags to an item.

## View items with tags

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Lists (in the top-left corner).



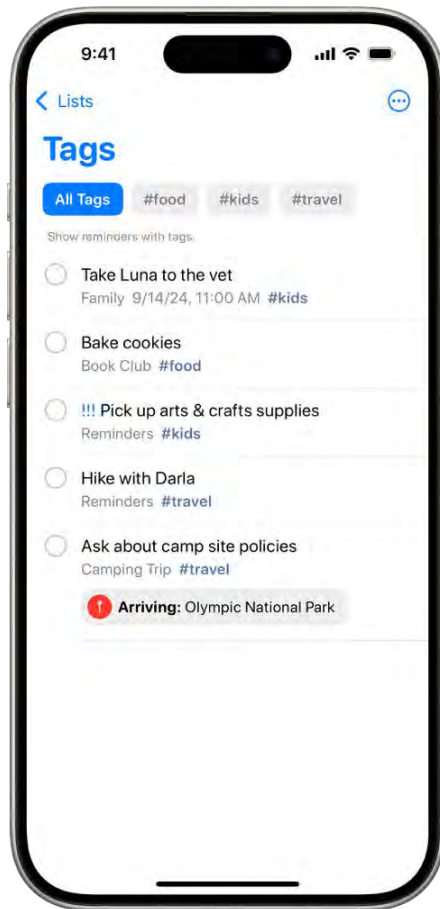
[Alt text: A Reminders screen showing multiple lists and the Tag Browser at the bottom.]

3. Below Tags at the bottom of the screen, do any of the following:

- *View items with specific tags:* Tap one or more tags, then choose to view items matching any or all of the selected tags.


**Tip:** To save this list as a Smart List, tap  [Alt text: the More button ], then tap Create Smart List.

- *View all items with tags:* Tap All Tags.



[Alt text: A list of items with the FarmersMarket tag. Buttons along the top show additional tags that you can apply.]

### Rename or delete a tag

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Lists (in the top-left corner).
3. Below Tags at the bottom of the screen, touch and hold a tag, then tap Rename Tag or Delete Tag.

When you delete a tag, it's also removed from all Smart Lists that use it.

### Related

[Use Smart Lists in Reminders on iPhone](#)

[Search through all your lists in Reminders on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use Smart Lists](#)

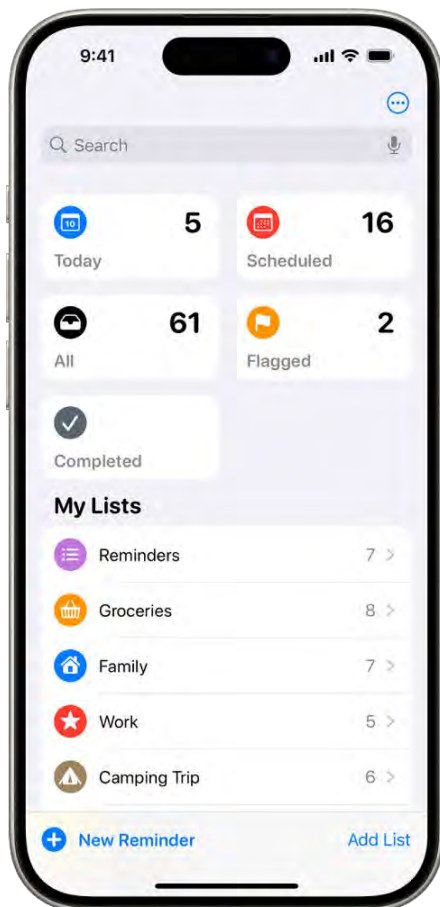


## Use Smart Lists in Reminders on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, use Smart Lists to automatically filter items across all your lists.

In the Reminders app, you can easily filter items across all your lists using Smart Lists. You can create custom Smart Lists to automatically include items filtered by tags, dates, times, locations, flags, and priority. You can choose more than one tag (such as #gardening and #errands) and combine them with other filters.




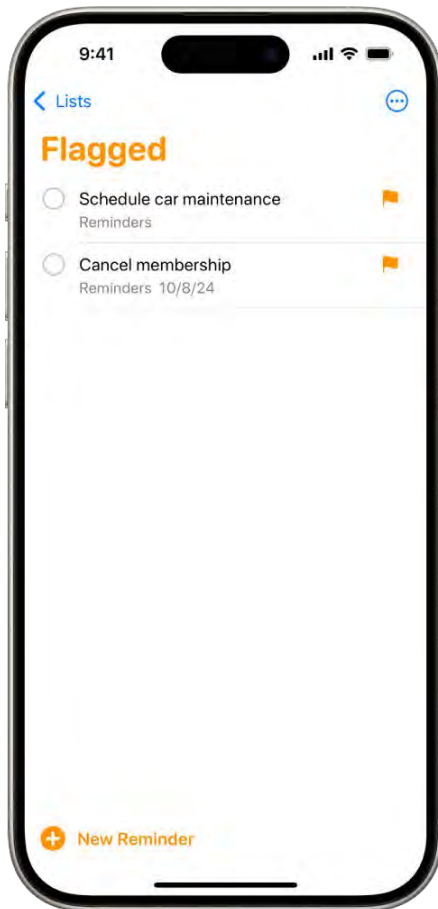
[Alt text: A Reminders screen with Smart Lists at the top and regular lists below.]

**Note:** All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders in iCloud](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

### Automatically organize items using the default Smart Lists

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT NVA] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Lists (in the top-left corner), tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Edit Lists.
3. Turn on or off the following Smart Lists:
  - *Today*: Items scheduled for today and overdue items
  - *Scheduled*: Items scheduled by date or time
  - *All*: All items across all your lists
  - *Completed*: Items with a checkmark
  - *Assigned to Me*: Items assigned to you in shared lists
  - *Siri Suggestions*: Suggested items detected in Mail and Messages
  - *Flagged*: Items with a flag



[Alt text: A Reminders screen showing a Smart List that contains all flagged items.]

### **Make a custom Smart List**



1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Lists (in the top-left corner).
3. Tap Add List, enter a name, choose a color and icon, then tap Make into Smart List.
4. Choose one or more filters, then choose to include items matching any or all of the selected filters. You can filter by tags, dates, locations, and more.

### Convert a list to a Smart List

When you convert a list, its items are moved to the top level of the default list and tagged with the name of the Smart List.

**Note:** You can't convert a shared list.

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. View the list you want to convert.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button], tap Show List Info, scroll to the bottom, then tap Convert to Smart List.

### Related

[Tag items in Reminders on iPhone](#)

[Organize multiple lists in Reminders on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Share and collaborate](#)

## Share lists and collaborate in Reminders on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, use iCloud to share to-do lists, collaborate, and assign tasks to other people.


In the Reminders app, you can use iCloud to share to-do lists. You can collaborate and assign tasks to other people who also use iCloud.

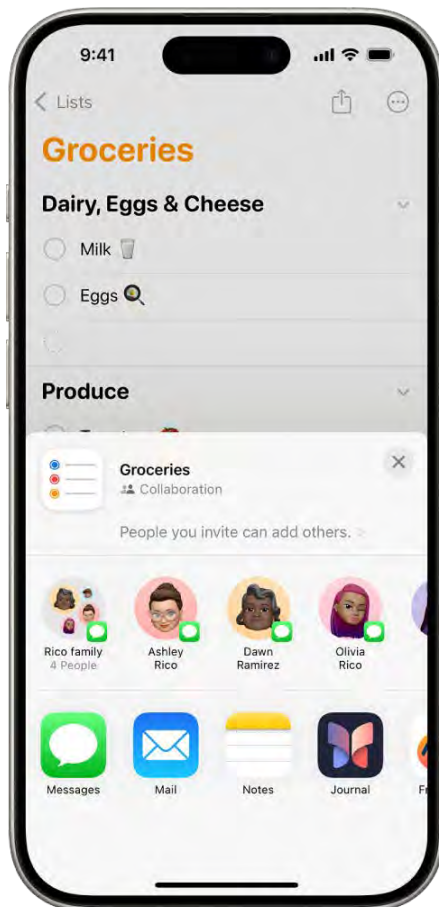
**Note:** All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders in iCloud](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

### Collaborate on a list using iCloud

You can share a list and collaborate with people who use iCloud. People who accept the invitation can add and edit items, mark items as completed, and all the collaborators can see everyone's changes. Everyone you collaborate with must be [signed in to their Apple Account](#) and [have Reminders turned on in iCloud settings](#).

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. View the list you want to share, then tap  [Alt text: the Share button] .





[Alt text: A Reminders screen showing a grocery list with options for sharing at the bottom.]

3. By default, collaborators on the list can invite other people. To restrict sharing, tap “People you invite can add others,” then turn off “Allow others to invite.”
4. Choose how to send your invitation (for example, using Messages or Mail).  
If you send the invitation in Messages, you [get activity updates in the Messages conversation](#) when someone makes changes in the shared list. Tap the updates to go to the shared list.

### Assign items in a shared list



You can assign a task to any person on the list, including yourself.

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In the shared list, create or edit a reminder, then do either of the following:
  - Type @ followed by the person’s name or choose a person from the menu above the keyboard.

- Tap  [Alt text: the Person button] , then choose a person.

**Tip:** To quickly see all items assigned to you, [use the Assigned to Me Smart List](#).

#### Turn notifications on or off for a shared list

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In the shared list, tap  [Alt text: the Collaborate button] , then tap Manage Shared List.
3. Below Notify When, turn on or off any of the following:
  - *Adding Items:* Receive an alert when someone adds an item to the list.
  - *Completing Items:* Receive an alert when someone completes an item on the list.

#### Related

[Make a grocery list in Reminders on iPhone](#)

[Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone](#)



NAV TITLE: [Print a list](#)

## Print a list in Reminders on iPhone

#### Metadata

**Summary:** In Reminders on iPhone, print a grocery list for shopping, checklist, to-do tasks, and more.

You can print a grocery list, checklist, to-do items, project tasks, and more.

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. View the list you want to print.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Print.

#### Related

[Print from iPhone](#)

[Share lists and collaborate in Reminders on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Work with templates](#)



## Work with templates in Reminders on iPhone

#### Metadata

**Summary:** In Reminders on iPhone, save a list as a template for new lists. You can also publish a template and share it with others.



In the Reminders app, you can save a list as a template to reuse it for routines, packing lists, and more. Create a link to publish and share a template with others, or download templates that others have shared.

#### Save a list as a template

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. When viewing a list, tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Save as Template.
3. Enter a name for the template.
4. Turn on or off Include Completed Reminders, then tap Save.




After you make a template from a list, any changes you make to that list don't affect the template.

#### Make a new list from a template

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. When viewing your lists, tap  [Alt text: the More button], tap Templates, then tap the name of a template.
3. Enter a name for the list, then tap Create.




#### Edit or delete a template


Any changes you make to a template don't affect lists previously created from the template.

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. When viewing your lists, tap  [Alt text: the More button], tap Templates, then tap  [Alt text: the Edit button] next to the template you want to manage.
3. Choose one of the following:
  - *Edit Template:* Add, edit, or delete any items in the template. You can also change the name, color, and icon for the template.
  - *Delete Template:* Remove the template.

#### Share a template

When you share a template, Apple servers have access so that anyone with the link can download a copy of the template on a device using iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, or later. You can choose whether to keep any dates, tags, or locations in the shared template; images are removed.

1. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. When viewing your lists, tap  [Alt text: the More button], tap Templates, then tap  [Alt text: the Edit button] next to the template you want to share.
3. Tap Share Template, then choose a method for sharing.

To manage a shared template, tap  [Alt text: the More button], tap Templates, tap  [Alt text: the Edit button], then tap Manage Link.

If you make changes to the template after sharing, you can update the shared version. Anyone who downloaded the previous version needs to download the template again to get the updates.

If you stop sharing a template, this doesn't affect anyone who has already downloaded the template.

### Related

[Organize multiple lists in Reminders on iPhone](#)

[Share lists and collaborate in Reminders on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Add or remove accounts](#)

## Add or remove accounts in Reminders on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** In the Reminders app on iPhone, use multiple accounts—such as iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, and Yahoo—and keep all your to-do lists in one place. Your reminders stay up to date on all your devices that use the same accounts.

In the Reminders app, you can use multiple accounts—such as iCloud, enterprise-managed iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, and Yahoo—and keep all your to-do lists in one place. Your reminders stay up to date on all your devices that use the same accounts.

**Note:** All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use updated reminders in iCloud. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

### Keep your reminders up to date on all your devices with iCloud



1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name].

2. Tap iCloud, tap See All, then turn on Reminders.

Your reminders stored in iCloud—and any changes you make to them—appear on your iPhone, iPad, Apple Watch, and Mac where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#).

### Update your reminders stored in iCloud


If you've been using Reminders with iOS 12 or earlier, you may need to update your reminders stored in iCloud to use features such as attachments, flags, list colors and icons, and more.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name].
2. Tap iCloud, tap See All, then make sure Reminders is turned on.
3. Go to the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
4. On the Welcome to Reminders screen, choose one of the following options:
  - *Update Now*: Begin the update process.
  - *Update Later*: A blue Update button appears above your lists; tap it when you're ready to update your reminders.

**Note:** Updated reminders aren't backward compatible with the Reminders app in earlier versions of iOS and macOS. See the Apple Support article [Upgrading the Reminders app in iOS 13 or later](#).


### Add other accounts

You can use the Reminders app to manage your to-do lists in other accounts, such as Microsoft Exchange and Yahoo.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Reminders.
2. Tap Reminders Accounts, then tap Add Account.
3. Do one of the following:
  - Choose an account provider, then enter your account information.
  - If your account provider isn't listed, tap Other, tap Add CalDAV Account, enter your account information, then turn on Reminders for that account.

### Remove an account

When you remove or delete an account, the reminders in that account no longer appear on your iPhone. The reminders remain in your internet account (for example, iCloud.com or Microsoft Exchange) and any other devices you had already set up.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Reminders.
2. Tap Reminders Accounts, then tap the account you want to remove.
3. Do one of the following:



- *Stop using Reminders on the account:* Turn off Reminders.

You can continue to use the account for other services, such as Calendar.

- *Stop using all services on the account:* Tap Sign Out (for an iCloud account) or Delete Account (for other accounts).

If you don't see Sign Out or Delete Account, your account may be managed by your organization. See an administrator for removal instructions.

## Related

[Use iCloud on iPhone](#)


[Set up mail, contacts, and calendar accounts on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Change Reminders settings](#)


# Change your Reminders settings on iPhone

## Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, customize your preferences for the Reminders app in Settings.

You can customize your preferences for the Reminders app  [ALT N/A] in Settings. Choose the default list for new items, adjust notifications, and more.

## Customize your Reminders settings

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Reminders.
2. Adjust any of the following:
  - *Accounts:* [Add or remove accounts in Reminders.](#)
  - *Siri & Search:* Allow [Siri](#) to make suggestions across apps based on the way you use Reminders. You can also allow suggestions and content from Reminders to appear in [Search](#) and [widgets](#).
  - *Notifications:* [Change notification settings.](#)
  - *Language:* Choose your preferred languages.
  - *Default List:* Choose the list for new reminders you create outside of a specific list, such as reminders you create using Siri.
  - *Today Notification:* Set a time to see notifications for [all-day reminders](#) that have been assigned a date without a time.
  - *Show as Overdue:* The scheduled date turns red for overdue [all-day reminders](#).

- *Include Due Today*: The badge count includes [overdue items and items due today](#).
- *Mute Notifications*: Turn off notifications for [assigned reminders](#).
- *Show Suggestions*: If you type text that matches a previously completed reminder, that reminder appears as a suggestion.
- *Add Language*: Set an additional language that Reminders uses to automatically [place grocery items into categories](#).
- *Clear Categorization History*: Clears categorization learned as you manually moved items in grocery lists; this applies to all your devices and grocery lists you've shared. Existing items are not affected.

#### Related

[Find settings on iPhone](#)

---

## Learn more in Reminders

Learn more topics in the Reminders app on iPhone

#### Metadata

**Summary:** The Learn more links in the UI go the following pages.

In iOS 18, the Learn more links in the Reminders app go the following pages:

- [Upgrade your reminders](#)
- [About the Assigned to Me list](#)
- [Converting a list to a Smart List](#)
- [About incompatible filter settings](#)


## Upgrade your reminders

#### Metadata

**Summary:** The Reminders app has several new features. To use these features, you need to upgrade the reminders in your iCloud account.

The Reminders app has several features—including Smart Lists, improved Siri capabilities, and an improved toolbar—that make it easier to create reminders. To use these features, you need to upgrade the reminders in your iCloud account.

**Note:** Upgraded reminders are supported in the Reminders app in iOS 13, iPadOS 13, macOS 10.15, or later.

Before you begin, make sure your device is connected to the internet. Also, make sure you've turned on Reminders in iCloud settings—go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > iCloud, tap Save to iCloud, then turn on Reminders. The first time you open Reminders, the app leads you through the upgrade process. If you choose to upgrade later, tap Upgrade (next to your iCloud account in the Reminders app) when you're ready to upgrade.

The upgrade process affects the reminders in this iCloud account only. Reminders in all other accounts remain unchanged.

### See your reminders on other devices

You can view and edit your upgraded reminders on devices with iOS 13, iPadOS 13, macOS 10.15, or later where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

You can't access upgraded reminders on the following:

- Devices with earlier versions of iOS or macOS; also, any reminders you create on those devices are visible only on devices with earlier versions of iOS or macOS
- The iCloud for Windows app

On a Mac with an earlier version of macOS or on a Windows device, you can access your upgraded reminders using a web browser. Go to [Reminders on iCloud.com](https://reminders.onicloud.com), then sign in to your Apple Account.

### Shared lists

After you upgrade your reminders, you can share lists with others who have also upgraded their reminders. People who haven't upgraded yet can't see your shared lists. Additionally, you can't see lists that are shared with you until the list owner upgrades their iCloud reminders.

If you share a list using Family Sharing, the list converts to a standard sharing arrangement when the family organizer upgrades their reminders. The converted list can have participants who aren't family members.

- COMMENT -

Topic ID: [apd151b374b6](#)

How to access:

1. Sign in to an iCloud account with pre-upgrade Reminders and a list shared with another iCloud account.
2. Go to the Reminders app, in the reminders list, tap Upgrade (next to My Lists).
3. Tap Continue, then tap Learn More.
4. IMPORTANT: Tap Upgrade Later (to exit without upgrading so you can see this Learn More again).

## About the Assigned to Me list

### Metadata

**Summary:** You can use the Assigned to Me list to easily see the reminders that are assigned to you.

You can use the Assigned to Me list to easily see the reminders that are assigned to you.


A reminder can be assigned only if it's in a shared list. Any participant of a shared list can assign a reminder to anyone who has joined the shared list (including themselves).

To hide the Assigned to Me list, touch and hold the list, then tap Hide.

- COMMENT -

Topic ID: apd7741f383d

How to access:

1. Sign in to an iCloud account without reminders assigned to the user.
2. In the Reminders app, above the Reminders list, tap  [Alt text: the More button], tap Edit Lists, select the Assigned to Me smart list, then tap Done.
3. Tap the Assigned to Me smart list (it should be empty), then tap Learn More.

## Converting a list to a Smart List

### Metadata

**Summary:** Several changes happen when you convert a list to a Smart List.

When you convert a list to a Smart List, the following changes happen:

- A new tag—created from the name of the original list—is added to each reminder in the list.
- The reminders in the list move to the default list or to the first non-shared list in the account that contains the list you’re converting.
- Subtasks are outdented.
- A gear on the list icon indicates it’s a Smart List.


*Note:*

- You can’t convert a shared list or the default list.
- You can’t undo converting a list to a Smart List.

- COMMENT -

Topic ID: apd6daa0d16e

How to access:

1. Go to the Reminders app, tap a non-Smart List, tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Show List Info.
2. Scroll to bottom. Below Convert to Smart List, tap Learn More.

## About incompatible filter settings

Metadata

Summary: You are creating a Smart List using filters that aren’t supported on an earlier OS.

You are creating a Smart List using filters that aren’t supported on an earlier OS. To see this Smart List, update to the current OS, or remove the incompatible filters from the Smart List.

### Incompatible filters

- Include reminders matching any filters
- Any Tag
- Any Selected Tags
- No Tags
- Excluded tags
- Today
- On a Date

- Before a Date
- After a Date
- Relative Range with “Include Past Due Reminders” turned on
- No Date
- No Time
- No Location
- No Priority
- Not Flagged
- Lists (any setting)

- COMMENT -

Topic ID: apd7fd6ba595

How to access:

1. Have at least one device on your account that is running iOS 15.
2. On a device with iOS 16 or later, create a smart list (Add List > Make into Smart List).
3. Do one of the following:

Choose Include reminders matching [any] filters. “Smart List Hidden on Some Devices” warning appears. Tap Learn More.

Or

Tap Lists > Include; Tap Learn more link next to “This Smart List is not supported on some of your devices.”

---

## Safari

NAV TITLE: [Browse the web](#)

### Browse the web using Safari on iPhone

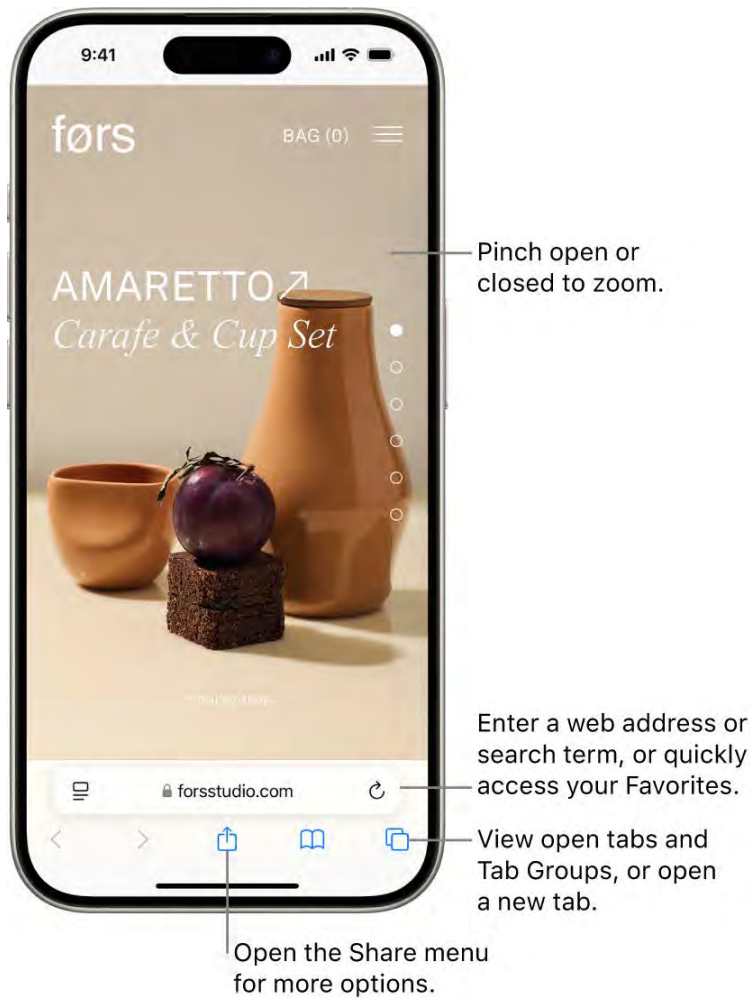
Metadata

Summary: In Safari on iPhone, view websites, preview website links, translate webpages, and

add the Safari app back to your Home Screen.


You can browse the web, view websites, preview website links, translate webpages, and add the Safari app back to your Home Screen if it gets removed. Sign in to iCloud with the same [Apple Account](#) on multiple devices to keep your open tabs, bookmarks, history, and Reading List up to date across all your devices.

- COMMENT - #ba #websites





[Alt text: A website open in Safari, with the address field at the bottom. At the bottom, from left to right, are the Back, Forward, Share, Bookmarks, and Tabs buttons.]


### Go to a webpage

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Enter the name or web address (URL) of the webpage in the search field.

## View websites with Safari




1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Get back to the top:* Double-tap the top edge of the screen to quickly return to the top of a long page.
  - *See more of the page:* Turn iPhone to landscape orientation.
  - *Refresh the page:* Pull down from the top of the page.
  - *Share links:* At the bottom of the page, tap  [Alt text: the Share button ] .

## Preview website links

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold a link in Safari to see a preview of the link without opening the page.  
To open the link, tap the preview, or choose Open.  
To close the preview and stay on the current page, tap anywhere outside the preview.


## Translate a webpage or image

When you view a webpage or image that's in another language, you can use Safari to translate the text (not available in all languages or regions).

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Page Settings button] , then tap  [Alt text: the Translate button] (if translation is available).

## Add Safari back to your Home Screen

If you don't see Safari on your Home Screen, you can find it in App Library and add it back.

1. On the Home Screen, swipe left until you see the App Library.
2. Enter "Safari" in the search field.
3. Press and hold  [Alt text: the Safari app icon] , then tap Add to Home Screen.

## Related

[Search for websites in Safari on iPhone](#)

[Change the layout in Safari on iPhone](#)

[Clear your cache and cookies on iPhone](#)



# Search for websites in Safari on iPhone

## Metadata

**Summary:** In Safari on iPhone, enter a URL or a search term to find websites or specific information.


Enter a URL or a search term to find websites or specific information.


- COMMENT - #ba #websites #marcom #sports




[Alt text: A Safari search screen, with the onscreen keyboard at the bottom of the screen. Above the keyboard, the search field contains the text “earthquakes game score.”]

## Search the web

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Enter a search term, phrase, or URL in the search field.
3. Tap a search suggestion, or tap Go on the keyboard.





If you don't want to see suggested search terms, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Safari, then turn off Search Engine Suggestions.

### **See your favorite websites while you search**


1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Safari.
2. Tap Favorites, then select the folder with the favorites you want to see.

### **Search a webpage**

You can find a specific word or phrase on a webpage.

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Page Settings button] , then tap  [Alt text: the Find on Page button] .
3. Enter the word or phrase in the search field.
4. Tap  [Alt text: the Go Down button] to jump to other mentions.

### **Choose a search engine**

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Safari.
2. Tap Search Engine, then choose a search engine.

### **Search for objects in your photos**

With Visual Look Up, you can identify and learn about popular landmarks, plants, pets, and more that appear in your photos and videos. See [Use Visual Look Up to identify objects in your photos and videos](#).

- COMMENT - #ba #websites



Visual Look Up  
is available.

[Alt text: A photo is open in the Photos app. At the bottom of the screen, the Info button displays an icon indicating that Visual Look Up information is available.]

**Tip:** You can use the same feature to scan text and search online. See [Use Live Text with your iPhone camera.](#)

#### Related

[Browse the web using Safari on iPhone](#)  
[Bookmark a website in Safari on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [See highlights](#)

## See a webpage's highlights in Safari on iPhone

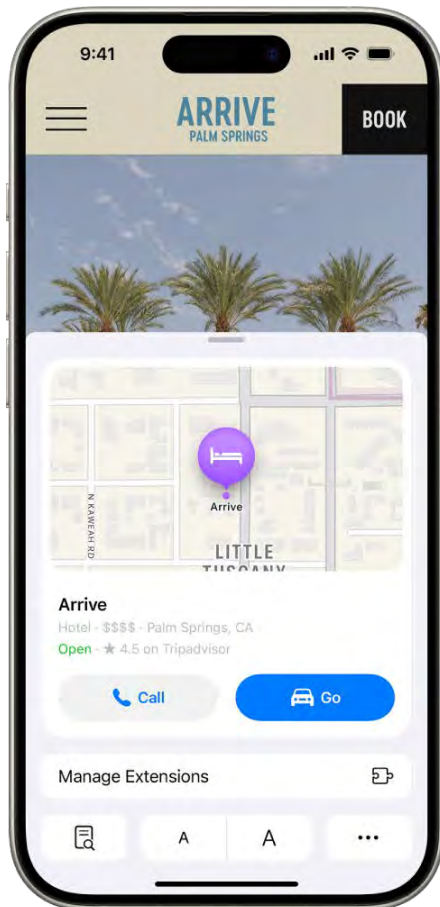
Metadata

**Summary:** In Safari on iPhone, see helpful information and links to learn more about the content of a webpage in Highlights.


You can learn more about the current webpage by looking at Highlights. Highlights share helpful information, such as directions, summaries, and links to additional details about people, music, movies, and TV shows.



**Note:** Highlights aren't available in all countries or regions.


- COMMENT - #ba #locations



[Alt text: The Safari app showing highlights for a hotel destination in Palm Springs, including a map, buttons to call the hotel and get directions, and a link to book a reservation.]

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Open a webpage.

If Highlights are available for the webpage,  [Alt text: the Highlights button] replaces  [Alt text: the Page Settings button] on the left side of the search field.

3. Tap  [Alt text: the Highlights button] .

## Related

[Browse the web using Safari on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Customize your Safari settings](#)

# Customize your Safari settings on iPhone




## Metadata


**Summary:** In Safari on iPhone, you can customize your start page, change the text size on websites, and change display and privacy settings.

You can customize your start page, change the text size on websites, and change display and privacy settings. Sign in to iCloud with the same [Apple Account](#) on multiple devices to keep your open tabs, bookmarks, browsing history, and Reading List up to date across all your Apple devices.


## Customize your start page






When you open a new tab, you begin on your start page. You can customize your start page with new background images and options.

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Tabs button] , then tap  [Alt text: the New Tab button] .
3. Scroll to the bottom of the page, then tap Edit.
4. Choose the options you want to appear on your start page:
  - *Use Start Page on All Devices:* Use these settings on all your Apple devices where you have Use Start Page on All Devices turned on and you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#) using [two-factor authentication](#).
  - *Favorites:* Display shortcuts to your favorite bookmarked websites. See [Bookmark a favorite website](#).
  - *Privacy Report:* Stay updated on how many trackers and websites Safari blocked from tracking you. See [View the Privacy Report](#).
  - *Reading List:* Show webpages currently in your Reading List. See [Add the current webpage to your Reading List](#).
  - *Recently Closed Tabs:* Go back to tabs you previously closed.

- *iCloud Tabs*: Show open tabs from other Apple devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account and Safari is turned on in iCloud settings or preferences. See [Organize your tabs with Tab Groups](#).
- *Suggestions*: See websites you visit most, websites shared in other apps (such as Calendar and Maps), and links shared with you in Messages, Mail, and more. See [Find links shared with you](#).
- *Background Image*: Choose the image you want to appear in the background each time you open a new start page in this Tab Group. To use a photo as your background, tap  [Alt text: Select Image from Library].



### Customize the Page menu

You can add your favorite Page and Tab Actions to the Page menu  [ALT N/A].

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Page Settings button] on the left side of the search field, then tap  [Alt text: the Details button].
3. Tap Edit, then tap  [Alt text: the Add button] to add Page or Tab Actions to the Page menu.  
Tap  [Alt text: the Add button] to remove an action.
4. Tap Done, then tap Done again.






### Change the text size for a website on Safari

Use the Page Settings button to increase or decrease the text size.

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Page Settings button] on the left side of the search field.
3. Tap the large A to increase the font size or the small A to decrease it.

### Change the display controls for a website on Safari


You can hide the search field, switch to Reader, and more.

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Page Settings button], then do any of the following:
  - *Hide the search field*: Tap  [Alt text: the Details button], then tap Hide Toolbar (tap the bottom of the screen to get it back).
  - *See a streamlined view of the webpage*: Tap Show Reader (if available).  
To return to the normal view, tap  [Alt text: the Details button], then tap Hide Reader.
  - *See what the webpage looks like on a desktop computer*: Tap  [Alt text: the Details button], then tap Request Desktop Website (if available).

You can also adjust Safari settings in Accessibility settings. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Per-App Settings. Tap Add App, choose Safari, then tap Safari to adjust the settings.

### Choose where to save downloads

When you download a file in Safari, you can choose whether to save it to iCloud or on your iPhone.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Safari.
2. Tap Downloads, then choose one of the following:
  - *iCloud Drive*: Select this option to save downloads to the Downloads folder in iCloud Drive. This allows you to access the downloaded file on any iPhone, iPad, or Mac where you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#).
  - *On My iPhone*: Select this option to save downloads to the Downloads folder on your iPhone.

### Share website passwords with a group

You can create a group of trusted contacts and share a set of passwords. Passwords stay up to date for everyone in the group, and you can remove someone at any time.

See [Share passwords or passkeys with people you trust](#).

### Adjust privacy settings for Safari

You can choose what privacy settings you want across Safari, and create individual exceptions for websites. See [Browse privately](#).

### Related

[Change the layout in Safari on iPhone](#)

[Clear your cache and cookies on iPhone](#)

[Get extensions to customize Safari on iPhone](#)


NAV TITLE: [Change the layout](#)

## Change the layout in Safari on iPhone

#### Metadata

Summary: In Safari on iPhone, choose the tab bar layout that works best for you.

You can choose the tab bar layout that works best for you. Depending on the layout, the search field appears at the top (Single Tab layout) or bottom (Tab Bar layout) of the screen.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Safari.
2. Scroll down to Tabs, then select either Tab Bar or Single Tab.

### Related

[Customize your Safari settings on iPhone](#)

[Organize your tabs with Tab Groups in Safari on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use Safari profiles](#)

## Create multiple Safari profiles on iPhone


### Metadata

**Summary:** In Safari on iPhone, create multiple Safari profiles—like Work, School, or Personal—and use them to see only the information and tabs you need.

You can create multiple Safari profiles—like Work and Personal—and use them to separate your internet browsing into different themes. Each profile has separate favorites, histories, tabs, and Tab Groups. You can add, edit, or remove a profile at any time.

### Create a profile

The profiles you create on iPhone also appear in Safari settings on any iPhone, iPad, or Mac where you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#).

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Safari.
2. Tap New Profile, then tap Name.
3. Enter a name for this profile, then choose an icon and color.
4. Below Settings, tap Favorites to choose a bookmarks folder.

If you have multiple folders of bookmarks, this option selects the folder of bookmarked websites that are recommended as you enter an address, search, or create a new tab. For example, if you have a folder of bookmarks related to work, you can create a work profile and use this field to ensure that those websites are suggested as you type in the address field.



5. Tap Open New Tabs and choose the page you want new tabs to open to.

### Use profiles in Safari

You can easily browse the internet with a profile, or move between profiles.


1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.



2. Tap  [Alt text: the Tabs button] , then tap  [Alt text: the Tab Groups button] .
3. Tap Profile, then select the profile you want to use.

**Note:** You can access your saved bookmarks and passwords in iCloud keychain from any profile.


### Edit a profile

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Safari.
2. Tap the profile you want to edit.

### Choose which extensions to use with a profile

You can install extensions to customize the way your browser works on iPhone. See [Get extensions to customize Safari](#).


If you have extensions installed on your iPhone, you can customize which extensions you want to use with each profile.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Safari.
2. Tap Extensions, then tap an extension.
3. Turn on the profiles you want to use with this extension (below Allow Extension In).

### Remove a profile

You can delete a profile at any time. This action also erases the favorites, history, and Tab Groups associated with the profile, and closes all websites open in the profile.

**Important:** This action can't be undone.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Safari.
2. Tap a profile, then tap Delete Profile.

### Related

[Customize your Safari settings on iPhone](#)

[Clear your cache and cookies on iPhone](#)

## Use Tab Groups

NAV TITLE: [Open and close tabs](#)

Open and close tabs in Safari on iPhone


#### Metadata


**Summary:** In Safari on iPhone, use tabs to help you navigate between multiple open webpages.

Use tabs to help you navigate between multiple open webpages.

**Note:** If you're using the Single Tab layout, the menus and other items may look different from what's described in this guide. See [Change the layout of Safari](#).




#### Open a link in a new tab

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the link, then tap Open in New Tab.




To stay on the current webpage when you open new links in a separate tab, go to Settings  [ALT N/A ] > Apps > Safari > Open Links, then tap In Background.

#### View a tab's history

You can see which webpages you previously visited in this tab.




1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold  [Alt text: the Back button ] or  [Alt text: the Forward button ] .

#### Close tabs

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Tabs button ] , then tap  [Alt text: the Close button ] in the upper-right corner of a tab to close it.

**Tip:** To close all tabs in this Tab Group at the same time, touch and hold Done, then tap Close All Tabs.

#### Open a recently closed tab

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Tabs button ] , touch and hold  [Alt text: the New Tab button ] , then choose from the list of recently closed tabs.

#### Related

[Organize your tabs with Tab Groups in Safari on iPhone](#)

[View your Safari tabs from another Apple device on iPhone](#)

[Share Tab Groups and collaborate in Safari on iPhone](#)

## Organize your tabs with Tab Groups in Safari on iPhone



### Metadata

**Summary:** In Safari on iPhone, create Tab Groups to keep tabs organized and make them easier to find again later.

You can create Tab Groups to keep tabs organized and make them easier to find again later.



- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

### Create a new Tab Group

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Tabs button] to view your open tabs.
3. Touch and hold a tab, then choose Move to Tab Group.
4. Tap New Tab Group, enter a name, then tap Move.





**Tip:** To move between your Tab Groups, tap  [Alt text: the Tab Groups button] in the bottom center of the screen.

### Reorder tabs in a Tab Group

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Tabs button] to view the open tabs in that Tab Group.
3. Touch and hold a tab in the Tab Group.
4. In the menu that appears, tap Arrange Tabs By, then choose an option.



Or, just drag the tab to where you want it.

### Rename a Tab Group



1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Tabs button], then tap  [Alt text: the Tab Groups button].
3. Tap Edit, then tap  [Alt text: the More button].
4. Tap Rename, enter a name, then tap Save.

### Pin a tab at the top of a Tab Group

You can customize your Tab Groups with pinned tabs in each group. The pinned tab stays at the top of the Tab Group.

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Tabs button] to view the open tabs in that Tab Group.
3. Touch and hold the tab you want to pin.
4. In the menu that appears, tap Pin Tab.

### Move a tab to another Tab Group

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold  [Alt text: the Tabs button], then tap Move to Tab Group.
3. Choose one of the Tab Groups you created previously, or create a new group.

### Related

[Open and close tabs in Safari on iPhone](#)

[View your Safari tabs from another Apple device on iPhone](#)

[Share Tab Groups and collaborate in Safari on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [View your tabs from another Apple device](#)




## View your Safari tabs from another Apple device on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** In Safari on iPhone, view the tabs that are open on your other Apple devices and keep tabs and Tab Groups updated across them.

You can view the tabs that are open on your other Apple devices and keep tabs and Tab Groups updated across devices. You must be signed in to iCloud with the same [Apple Account](#) on all your devices to manage Safari tabs across your devices.


### View tabs that are open on your other Apple devices

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Tabs button], tap  [Alt text: the New Tab button], then scroll to see the tabs open on your other devices at the bottom of the start page.

To close a tab on another Apple device, touch and hold the link, then choose Close.

**Note:** To view tabs open on your other devices, you must have iCloud Tabs turned on for your start page. See [Customize your start page](#).

### Keep tabs and Tab Groups updated across your devices

Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > iCloud > See All, then make sure Safari is turned on.

**Note:** To also see tabs open on your Mac, you must have Safari turned on in iCloud settings on your Mac, be signed in to the same [Apple Account](#), and use [two-factor authentication](#).

## Related

[Organize your tabs with Tab Groups in Safari on iPhone](#)

[Open and close tabs in Safari on iPhone](#)

[Share Tab Groups and collaborate in Safari on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Share Tab Groups](#)

## Share Tab Groups and collaborate in Safari on iPhone




### Metadata

**Summary:** In Safari on iPhone, share a Tab Group. Add and remove people, and start a message conversation, phone call, or FaceTime call without leaving Safari.

You can share a Tab Group and collaborate with people who use iCloud. You can add and remove people from the Tab Group at any time, and even start a message conversation, phone call, or FaceTime call without leaving Safari. Collaborators can add and remove tabs from the Tab Group, and everyone sees updates in real time.



Everyone you collaborate with must be [signed in to their Apple Account](#), have [Safari turned on in iCloud settings](#), and have [two-factor authentication](#) turned on.

### Share a Tab Group

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Tabs button] to view the open tabs in that Tab Group.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Share button] at the top-right corner of the Tab Group.
4. Tap Messages, then choose the person or group you want to share it with.

You get activity updates in the Messages conversation when someone makes changes in the Shared Tab Group. Tap the updates to go to the Shared Tab Group.

### Add and remove people from a shared Tab Group



1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Collaborate button] at the top-right corner.

3. Tap Manage Shared Tab Group, then do any of the following:

- *Remove someone:* Tap a name, then tap Remove Access.
- *Add someone:* Tap Share With More People, then invite them.
- *Stop Sharing with everyone:* Tap Stop Sharing.

#### **Start a Messages, audio, or video conversation from Safari**

You can start a conversation—using Messages, FaceTime audio, or FaceTime video—with everyone that shares the Tab Group, without leaving Safari.

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. In Safari, tap  [Alt text: the Collaborate button ], then tap message, audio, or video to start the conversation.

#### **Related**

[Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone](#)

[Organize your tabs with Tab Groups in Safari on iPhone](#)

[View your Safari tabs from another Apple device on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use Siri to listen to a webpage](#)

## Use Siri to listen to a webpage in Safari on iPhone

#### Metadata

**Summary:** In Safari on iPhone, open a webpage and say something like “Hey Siri, listen to the page” to use Siri to hear the page aloud.



You can use Siri to read supported webpages aloud in the Safari app.

- COMMENT - #ba #websites







[Alt text: A website is open in Safari. The Page Settings button is selected and listening controls are displayed.]

### Listen to a webpage

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Open the page you want to listen to, then do one of the following:
  - Tap  [Alt text: the Page Settings button ], then tap Listen to Page.
  - [Activate Siri](#), then say something like “Read this” or “I want to listen to this page.”

### Pause listening

While listening to a webpage, tap  [Alt text: the Listening Controls button ], tap Listening Controls, then tap  [Alt text: the Pause button ] .

To start listening again, tap  [Alt text: the Listening Controls button] , then tap  [Alt text: the Play button ] .

### Related

[Find out what Siri can do on iPhone](#)

## Search for websites in Safari on iPhone

NAV TITLE: [Bookmark favorite webpages](#)



# Bookmark a website in Safari on iPhone

### Metadata






**Summary:** In Safari on iPhone, bookmark a website, add a website to Favorites, or add a website icon to the Home Screen to easily revisit later.

You can bookmark a website, add a website to Favorites, or add a website icon to the Home Screen to easily revisit it later.


### Bookmark a favorite website

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Open the webpage you want to bookmark.
3. Touch and hold  [Alt text: the Show Bookmarks button ] , then tap Add Bookmark.

### View and organize your bookmarks

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Show Bookmarks button] .
3. Tap Edit, then do any of the following:
  - *Create a new folder:* Tap New Folder at the bottom left, enter a name, then tap Done.
  - *Move a bookmark into a folder:* Tap the bookmark, tap below Location, then tap a folder. Tap  [Alt text: the Back button] to return to your bookmarks.
  - *Delete bookmarks:* Tap  [Alt text: the Delete button] , then tap Delete.
  - *Rename bookmarks:* Tap the bookmark, enter a new name, then tap Done.
  - *Reorder bookmarks:* Touch and hold  [Alt text: The Reorder button] , then drag the bookmark to a new location.

### See your Mac bookmarks on iPhone

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A ] > [your name] > iCloud.
2. Tap See All (next to Saved to iCloud), then make sure Safari is turned on.



**Note:** You must also have Safari turned on in iCloud settings on your Mac and be signed in to




the same [Apple Account](#). See [Set up iCloud for the Safari app on all your devices](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

### Add a website icon to your Home Screen

You can add a website icon to your iPhone Home Screen for quick access.

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Go to the website you want to add to your Home Screen.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Share button] in the menu bar.
4. Scroll down the list of options, then tap Add to Home Screen.

If you don't see Add to Home Screen, you can add it. Scroll down to the bottom of the list, tap Edit Actions, then tap  [ALT N/A ] Add to Home Screen.

The icon appears only on the device where you add it.

**Note:** Some websites may ask for permission to send you notifications. You can change your notification settings at any time. See [Change notification settings](#).

### Related

[Save webpages to read later in Safari on iPhone](#)

[Find links shared with you in Safari on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Save pages to a Reading List](#)



## Save webpages to read later in Safari on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** In Safari on iPhone, save interesting websites to your Reading List to read later. Access your Reading List even when you're offline.




Save interesting items in your Reading List so you can revisit them later. You can even save the items in your Reading List and read them when you're not connected to the internet.

### Add the current webpage to your Reading List

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Share button] , then tap Add to Reading List.

**Tip:** To add a linked webpage without opening it, touch and hold the link, then tap Add to Reading List.

## View your Reading List

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Show Bookmarks button] .
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Reading List button] .

To delete an item from your Reading List, swipe left on the item.

## Automatically save all Reading List items to iCloud for offline reading

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A ] > Apps > Safari.
2. Turn on Automatically Save Offline (below Reading List).

## Related

[Find links shared with you in Safari on iPhone](#)


[Bookmark a website in Safari on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Find links shared with you](#)

# Find links shared with you in Safari on iPhone


### Metadata

**Summary:** In Safari on iPhone, easily find links friends share with you in Messages, Mail, and other apps.


You can easily find and organize web links that friends share with you in Messages conversations. Links shared with you are added to the Safari start page (the page that first appears when you open a new Safari window) below Suggestions. You can keep those links on your start page, remove them, or organize related links into Tab Groups. (Safari must be turned on in Settings  [ALT N/A ] > Apps > Messages > Shared with You, and your friend must be in your contacts.)

## See links from friends in Safari


To find links shared with you, you can display them on your Safari start page. Then, every time you open a new page, you see them listed there.

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Tabs button] , then tap  [Alt text: the New Tab button] to open a new tab.

Links shared with you appear below Suggestions. If you don't see a Suggestions section, scroll down, tap Edit, then turn on Suggestions. If you don't see links shared with you, turn on Shared with You below Show In Suggestions.


**Tip:** To change where Suggestions appear on your start page, touch and drag  [Alt text: the Reorder button] .

### Remove a link from the Shared with You section

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. While viewing your shared links, touch and hold the preview image of a link.
3. Tap Remove Link.

### Organize shared links in a Tab Group

You can group related shared web links into Tab Groups to make them easier to find.

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the preview image of the link you want to move, then tap Open in Tab Group.
3. Tap New Tab Group to create one, or add the link to a Tab Group you already have.

To learn more about Shared with You, see [Share content in Messages](#).

### Related

[Annotate and save a webpage as a PDF in Safari on iPhone](#)

[Bookmark a website in Safari on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Annotate and save a webpage as a PDF](#)



## Annotate and save a webpage as a PDF in Safari on iPhone

#### Metadata

**Summary:** In Safari on iPhone, mark up a webpage, highlight your favorite parts, draw and write notes, and share your document as a PDF with others.

You can mark up a webpage, highlight your favorite parts, draw and write notes, and share your document as a PDF with others.

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.

2. Tap  [Alt text: the Share button] .
3. Tap Markup  [ALT N/A ] , then use the tools to annotate the webpage.
4. Tap Done, then tap Save File To.
5. Choose a file to save it to, then tap Save.

### Related

- [Find links shared with you in Safari on iPhone](#)
- [Bookmark a website in Safari on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Automatically fill in forms](#)

## Automatically fill in your information in Safari on iPhone

### Metadata


**Summary:** In Safari on iPhone, use AutoFill to automatically fill in credit card information, contact information, and user names and passwords.

Use AutoFill to automatically fill in credit card information, contact information, and user names and passwords.

**Important:** Never enter your password or credit card number on sites with a “Not Secure” warning. See the Apple Support article [If you see a “Not Secure” warning while browsing with Safari](#).


### Set up AutoFill

You can save your personal information or credit card number on your iPhone to speed up filling in online forms and making purchases.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A ] > Apps > Safari.
2. Tap AutoFill, then do any of the following:
  - *Set up contact info:* Turn on Use Contact Info, tap My Info, then choose your contact card. The contact information from that card is entered when you tap AutoFill on webpages in Safari.
  - *Set up credit card info:* Turn on Credit Cards, tap Saved Credit Cards, then tap Add Credit Card. Enter your credit card information into the fields provided or tap Use Camera to enter the information without typing.

### Fill in your contact information automatically

You can quickly add your personal information to online forms using AutoFill.


1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. In a form on a website that supports AutoFill, tap a blank field.
3. Tap AutoFill Contact above the keyboard, then select a contact.
4. Tap any field to make changes.
5. Follow the onscreen instructions to submit the form.

**Note:** You can use AutoFill to enter another person's information from your contact list. For example, if you're purchasing a gift and shipping it to a friend, you can use AutoFill to enter their address. Tap AutoFill Contact, tap Other Contact, then choose their contact card.


### Fill in your payment information automatically

After you add a credit card, or if you have Apple Card or Apple Cash in Wallet, you can use AutoFill to make online purchases without having to enter your full card number.

P9 **Note:** You can use Apple Cash in apps or on the web where Apple Pay isn't yet accepted. See [Use Apple Cash in Wallet](#).

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. In a form on a website, tap the credit card information field.
3. Tap the saved card you want to use, or tap Scan Card to take a picture of the front of a credit card.

**Tip:** After you enter a new card, you can save it in Safari AutoFill, then add it to Wallet. See [Set up Apple Pay in Wallet](#).


You can use virtual card numbers at checkout and keep your real credit card number private. See [Set up Apple Pay in Wallet](#). After you've set up a virtual card number, tap a card with  [Alt text: the virtual card icon] above the keyboard to use it at checkout.

### Fill in your passwords automatically

When you sign up for services on websites and in apps, you can let iPhone create and save strong passwords for many of your accounts. See [Automatically fill in strong passwords](#).

### Change AutoFill options


You can change the personal information or credit card number on your iPhone for filling in online forms and making purchases.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A ] > Apps > Safari.
2. Tap AutoFill, then do any of the following:
  - *Change contact info:* Tap My Info, then choose a contact card that has the information you want to enter when you tap AutoFill on webpages in Safari.

- *Change credit card info:* Tap Saved Credit Cards, then choose the credit card you want to use to make purchases (or tap Add Credit Card).

### Turn off AutoFill

You can turn off AutoFill for your contact or credit card information, and for passwords. This is helpful in situations where you don't want your contact or credit card information to be readily available—for example if you share a device with others.

- *Turn off AutoFill for your contact or credit card information:* Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Safari > AutoFill, then turn off either option.
- *Turn off AutoFill for passwords:* Go to Settings > General > AutoFill & Passwords, then turn off AutoFill Passwords and Passkeys.

### Related

[About Apple Wallet on iPhone](#)

[Sign in with passkeys in Safari on iPhone](#)

[Get extensions to customize Safari on iPhone](#)

[Automatically fill in one-time verification codes on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Get extensions](#)



## Get extensions to customize Safari on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** In Safari on iPhone, install extensions to customize the way your browser works.


You can install extensions to customize the way your browser works. For example, extensions can help you find coupons when shopping, block content on websites, give you access to features from other apps, and more.

### Add Safari extensions

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Page Settings button], then tap Manage Extensions.
3. Tap More Extensions to browse through extensions in the App Store.
4. When you find one you want, tap the price, or if the app is free, tap Get, then follow the onscreen instructions.

### Change Safari extension settings

You can use an extension to customize the way your browser works. You can turn Safari extensions on or off at any time.



1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Safari.
2. Tap Extensions, then tap an extension.
3. Turn on Allow Extension.

If you have Safari profiles set up, turn on the extension for each profile you want to use it with.

**Important:** Check the extensions you have installed and make sure you're familiar with what they do.

### Change Safari extension settings for an individual website

You can turn an extension on or off for an individual website without changing your overall Safari settings.

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Page Settings button] on the left side of the search field, then tap Manage Extensions.
3. Turn each extension on or off.

### Remove a Safari extension

1. Swipe down on the Home Screen, then search for the extension you want to remove.
2. Touch and hold the extension icon, tap "Delete app," then follow the onscreen instructions.

### Related

[Hide distractions when reading articles in Safari on iPhone](#)

[Get apps in the App Store on iPhone](#)

## Hide distractions


NAV TITLE: [Hide distractions when browsing](#)


### Hide distractions when browsing webpages in Safari on iPhone

#### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, use Distraction Control to hide menus and other distractions on webpages.

Use Distraction Control to hide menus and other diversions on a webpage.

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. On a website, tap  [Alt text: the Highlights button] , then tap Hide Distracting Items.
3. Tap the items you want to hide from the webpage.
4. Tap Done.

To unhide, tap  [Alt text: the Highlights button] , then tap Show Distracting Items.

### Related

[Block pop-ups in Safari on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Hide distractions when reading](#)

## Hide distractions when reading articles in Safari on iPhone

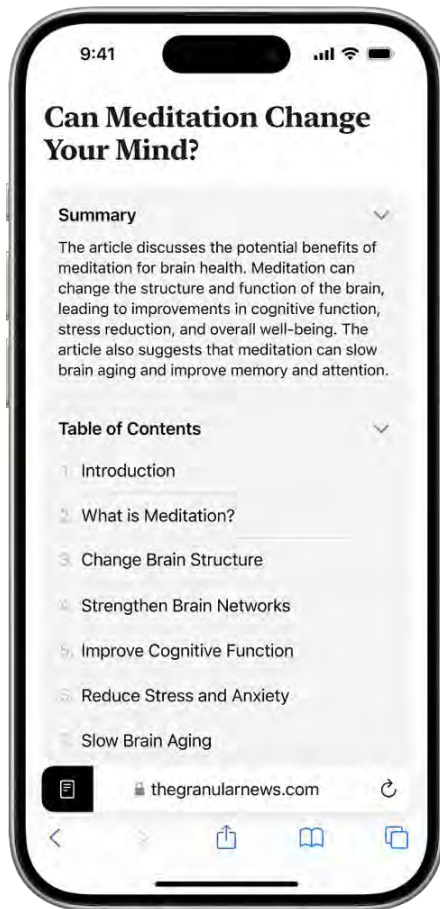
### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, use Safari Reader to hide menus and other distractions when viewing webpages.

Use Reader to hide navigation menus and other distracting items. Longer pages include a summary and table of contents.

- COMMENT - #ba #websites







[Alt text: The Safari Reader showing a summary and Table of Contents f


### Show Reader


Reader formats a webpage to show just the relevant text and images.

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. On a supported website, tap  [Alt text: the Page Settings button] , then tap Show Reader.

To return to the full page, tap  [Alt text: the Page Settings button] , then tap Hide Reader.

### Automatically use Reader for a website

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. On a supported website, tap  [Alt text: the Page Settings button] , then tap  [Alt text: the Details button] .
3. Turn on Use Reader Automatically.

To automatically use Reader for all websites that support it, go to Settings  [ALT N/A ] > Apps > Safari > Reader, then turn on All Websites.

## Related

[Get extensions to customize Safari on iPhone](#)

[Customize your Safari settings on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Block pop-ups](#)

## Block pop-ups in Safari on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, block pop-ups from websites.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Safari.
2. Turn on Block Pop-ups.

## Related

[Hide distractions when browsing webpages in Safari on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Clear your cache and cookies](#)

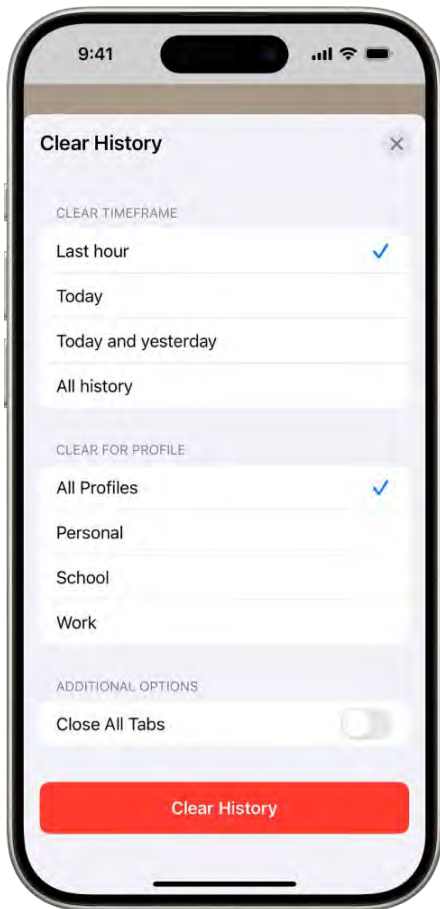
## Clear your cache and cookies on iPhone

### Metadata




**Summary:** Learn how to erase your browsing history to clear the cache in Safari on iPhone.

You can erase your browsing history and data to clear the cache on your iPhone. This action removes the history of websites you visited and recent searches from your iPhone. This process also removes the cookies and permissions you granted to websites to use your location or send you notifications.

**Note:** Clearing your browsing history in Safari doesn't clear any browsing histories kept independently by websites you visited, or your browsing history in other apps.



[Alt text: The Clear History menu. Below Clear Timeframe, Last hour is selected. All Profiles is selected below Clear For Profile. The Clear History button is at the bottom of the screen.]

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the bookmark button] , tap  [Alt text: the History button] , then tap Clear.
3. Below Clear Timeframe, choose how much of your browsing history to clear.

**Note:** If you have Safari profiles set up, select a profile to clear only the history of that profile, or select All Profiles.

4. Tap Clear History.

### Related

[Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay on iPhone](#)

[Browse the web privately in Safari on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Enable cookies](#)

# Enable cookies on iPhone

## Metadata

**Summary:** In Safari on iPhone, enable cookies so that websites that require cookies work normally.

You can enable cookies. Some websites use cookies to keep track of your activity, such as your settings. Enabling cookies allows websites that require cookies to work normally.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Safari.
2. Tap Advanced, then turn off Block All Cookies.

## Related

[Clear your cache and cookies on iPhone](#)

# Privacy and security

NAV TITLE: [Browse the web privately](#)

## Browse the web privately in Safari on iPhone

## Metadata



**Summary:** In Safari on iPhone, keep your browsing activities private and help protect yourself against malicious websites.

You can view the Privacy Report and adjust settings in the Safari app to keep your browsing activities private, and help protect yourself from malicious websites.


## Visit sites privately


You can use Private Browsing to open private tabs that don't appear in History on iPhone or in the list of tabs on your other devices. Tabs in Private Browsing aren't shared with your other Apple devices, even if you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#).

If you have a passcode set on your iPhone, Private Browsing locks when it's not in use. Private Browsing may not lock immediately.

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Tabs button] .


3. Swipe right on the tab bar at the bottom of the screen until Private Browsing opens, then tap Unlock.

To exit Private Browsing, tap  [Alt text: the Tabs button], then swipe left to open a Tab Group from the menu at the bottom of your screen. The websites you have open in Private Browsing stay open, and Private Browsing locks.

To allow Private Browsing to be locked, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Safari, then turn on Require Passcode to Unlock Private Browsing, Require Face ID to Unlock Private Browsing ([supported models](#)), or Require Touch ID to Unlock Private Browsing ([supported models](#)).





**Note:** Any Safari extensions you have installed that have access to browsing data are automatically turned off in Private Browsing. To turn on an extension in Private Browsing, see [Change Safari extension settings](#).

### Choose a search engine for Private Browsing

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Safari.
2. Turn off Also Use in Private Browsing.
3. Tap Private Search Engine, then choose a search engine.

### View the Privacy Report

Safari helps prevent trackers from following you across websites and viewing your IP address. You can review the Privacy Report to see a summary of trackers that have been encountered and prevented by Intelligent Tracking Prevention on the current webpage you're visiting. You can also review and adjust Safari settings to keep your browsing activities private from others who use the same device, and help protect yourself from malicious websites.

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Page Settings button], then tap  [Alt text: the Details button].
3. Tap Privacy Report  [ALT N/A].

### Use iCloud Private Relay to browse the web with more privacy

When you [subscribe to iCloud+](#), you can use iCloud Private Relay to help prevent websites and network providers from creating a detailed profile about you. When iCloud Private Relay is turned on, the traffic leaving your iPhone is encrypted and sent through two separate internet relays. This prevents websites from seeing your IP address and exact location while it prevents network providers from collecting your browsing activity in Safari.

See [Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay](#) to learn how to:




- Turn iCloud Private Relay completely on or off for your iPhone.
- Turn iCloud Private Relay on or off for a specific Wi-Fi or cellular network.
- Turn iCloud Private Relay off temporarily.

- Set the specificity of your IP address location.

**Note:** iCloud Private Relay isn't available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

### Temporarily allow a website to see your IP address


If a website relies on IP filtering, monitoring, or rate-limiting, it might require your IP address to be visible. You can turn off iCloud Private Relay temporarily for that website only.



1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. On the website, tap  [Alt text: the Page Settings button] on the left side of the URL field, then tap  [Alt text: the Details button] .
3. Tap Show IP Address.

Your IP address remains visible to that website until you leave the website or close its Safari tab. iCloud Private Relay remains on for other websites.

To turn off or pause iCloud Private Relay for all websites, see [Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay](#).

### Control privacy and security settings for Safari

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A ] > Apps > Safari.
2. Turn any of the following on or off:
  - *Prevent Cross-Site Tracking:* Safari limits third-party cookies and data by default. Turn this option off to allow cross-site tracking.
  - *Hide IP address:* Safari automatically protects your IP address from known trackers. For eligible iCloud+ subscribers, your IP address is protected from trackers and websites as you browse in Safari. If this option is off, your IP address isn't hidden.
  - P9
    - Fraudulent Website Warning:* Safari displays a warning if you're visiting a suspected phishing website. Turn this option off if you don't want to be warned about fraudulent websites.
    - *Camera:* Choose whether Safari websites can use your camera without asking you first. Tap Camera, then choose Ask, Deny, or Allow.
    - *Microphone:* Choose whether Safari websites can use your microphone without asking you first. Tap Microphone, then choose Ask, Deny, or Allow.
    - *Location:* Choose whether Safari websites can use your location without asking you first. Tap Location, then choose Ask, Deny, or Allow.

To set exceptions for a specific website, open the website in the Safari app, tap  [Alt text: the Page Settings button], tap  [Alt text: the Details button], then tap the setting you want to change below Website Settings For.

### Related

[Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay on iPhone](#)


[Use passkeys to sign in to apps and websites on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Sign in with passkeys in Safari](#)

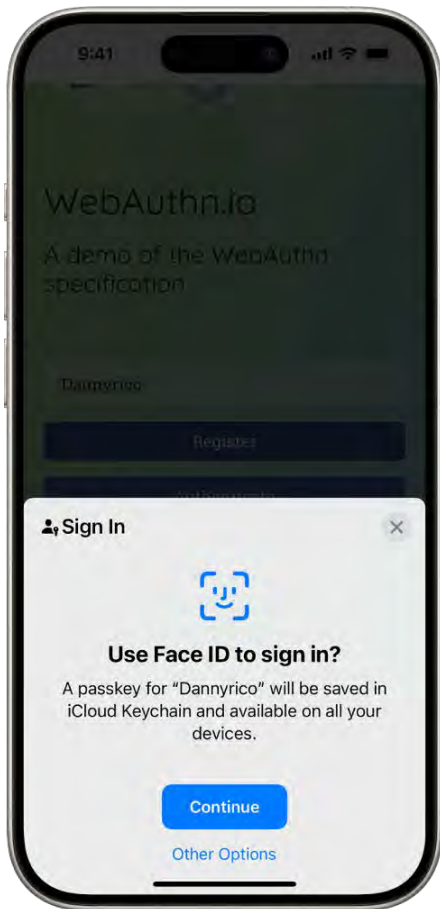
## Sign in with passkeys in Safari on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** In Safari on iPhone, use Face ID or Touch ID to securely sign in to supporting websites.

In the Safari app  [ALT N/A], you can use Face ID ([supported models](#)) or Touch ID ([supported models](#)) to securely sign in to supporting websites. See [Use passkeys to sign in to apps and websites](#).

- COMMENT - #ba #websites



[Alt text: The bottom half of the iPhone screen gives the option to use passkeys to sign in to a website. It has a Continue button to save a passkey, and an Other Options button.]

## Related

[Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay on iPhone](#)

[Browse the web privately in Safari on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use Hide My Email](#)

## Use Hide My Email in Safari on iPhone


### Metadata

**Summary:** In Safari on iPhone, use Hide My Email so you don't have to share your real email address when filling out a form or signing up for a newsletter.




When you [subscribe to iCloud+](#), you can use Hide My Email to keep your personal email address private. With Hide My Email, you can generate unique, random email addresses that forward to your personal email account, so you don't have to share your real email address when filling out forms on the web or signing up for newsletters.

- COMMENT - #ba #websites

1. Go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. When you're asked for your email address on a website, tap the email field.
3. Tap Hide My Email above the keyboard.

The Hide My Email screen suggests a new, randomly generated Hide My Email address.

4. If you don't want to use the suggested address, tap  [Alt text: the Refresh button] to get a new randomly generated email address.
5. Tap Continue.

You can delete the Hide My Email address at any time. See [Create and manage Hide My Email in Settings](#).

#### Related

[Browse the web privately in Safari on iPhone](#)

[Sign in with passkeys in Safari on iPhone](#)

---


## Shortcuts

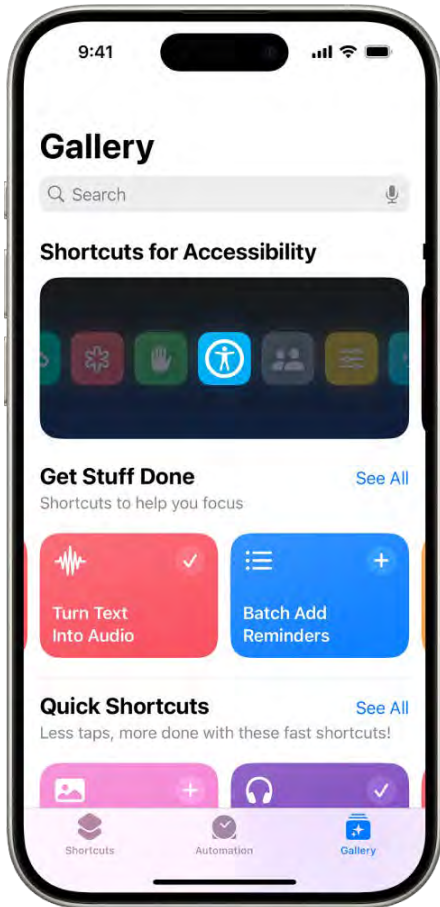
NAV TITLE: [Shortcuts](#)

### Use Shortcuts to automate tasks on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Use the Shortcuts app on iPhone to automate the tasks you do often.

The Shortcuts app  [ALT N/A ] lets you automate tasks you do often with just a tap or by asking Siri. Create shortcuts to get directions to the next event in your Calendar, move text from one app to another, and more. Choose ready-made shortcuts from the Gallery or build your own using different apps to run multiple steps in a task.



[Alt text: The Gallery screen in the Shortcuts app with a search field at the top. Below are three galleries: Shortcuts for Accessibility, Get Stuff Done, and Quick Shortcuts. At the bottom of the screen are the Shortcuts, Automation, and Gallery buttons. Gallery is selected.]

To learn more, see the [Shortcuts User Guide](#).

---

## Stocks

NAV TITLE: [Check stocks](#)

Check stocks on iPhone

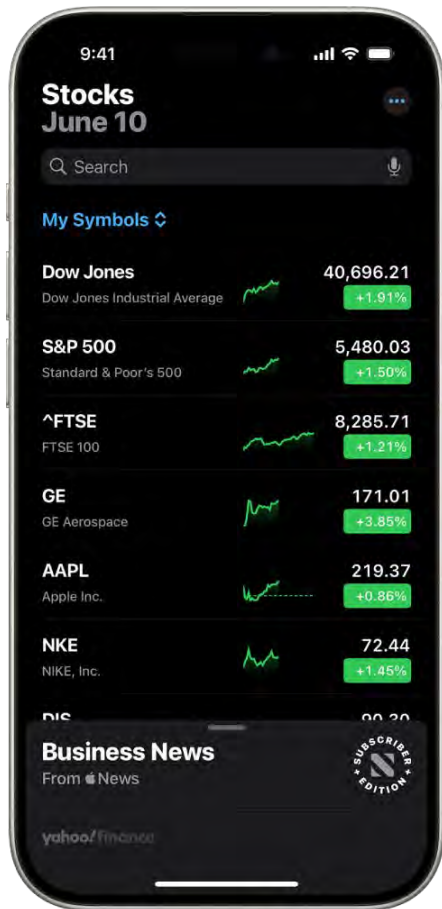
Metadata

**Summary:** Use the Stocks app on iPhone to check the market and view performance details of the stocks you follow.

Use the Stocks app to track market activity and view the performance of stocks you follow.


**Siri:** Say something like: “How are the markets doing?” or “How’s Apple stock today?” [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

- COMMENT - #ba #stocks



[Alt text: A watchlist in the Stocks app showing a list of different stocks. Each stock in the list displays, from left to right, the stock symbol and name, a performance chart, the stock price, and price change. At the top of the screen, above the My Symbols watchlist title, is the search field. At the bottom of the screen is Business News. Swipe up on Business News to display stories.]

### Check stocks





1. Go to the Stocks app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a ticker symbol in the My Symbols watchlist for more details.

3. To search for a specific stock, enter a ticker symbol, company name, fund name, or index in the search field at the top of the screen, then tap the symbol in the search results.

See [View charts, details, and news](#).


### Manage symbols in the My Symbols watchlist

When you first open the Stocks app, a list of ticker symbols appears on the screen; this is called the My Symbols watchlist. You can update and manage the My Symbols watchlist and [create your own watchlists](#).

1. Go to the Stocks app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a symbol to view its most recent price, daily percentage change, market capitalization value, and more.
3. To make changes to the My Symbols watchlist, do any of the following:
  - *Add a symbol:* In the search field, enter a ticker symbol, company name, fund name, or index. In the search results, tap  [Alt text: the Add button], then tap Done.
  - *Delete a symbol:* Swipe left on the symbol in your watchlist.  
**Note:** If you delete a symbol from the My Symbols watchlist, that symbol is also deleted from your other watchlists (see [Manage multiple watchlists](#)).
  - *Reorder symbols:* Touch and hold a symbol in your watchlist, then drag it to a new position.
  - *Show currency:* Tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Show Currency to display the currency the stock is traded in.
  - *Share a symbol:* Swipe left on a symbol in your watchlist, tap  [Alt text: the Share button], then choose a sharing option, such as Messages or Mail.

### View charts, details, and news

You can view interactive charts, performance details, and related news stories about the ticker symbols in your watchlist and the symbols you search for.

1. Go to the Stocks app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a symbol you want to see more details about, then do any of the following:
  - *View the performance over time:* Tap an option from the time range selections at the top of the chart.
  - *View the value for a specific date or time:* Touch and hold the chart with one finger.
  - *View the difference in value over time:* Touch and hold the chart with two fingers.
  - *View more details:* Swipe the data below the chart to see additional details like 52-week high and low, Beta, EPS, and average trading volume.

- *Read news:* Swipe up to see additional news stories, then tap a story.

3. To return to your watchlist, tap  [Alt text: the Dismiss Overlay button] .

**Tip:** Touch and hold a symbol in your watchlist to see a quick view of the its performance.

#### Related

[Manage multiple watchlists in Stocks on iPhone](#)

[Read or listen to business news in Stocks on iPhone](#)

[Use a Stocks widget on your iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Manage multiple watchlists](#)

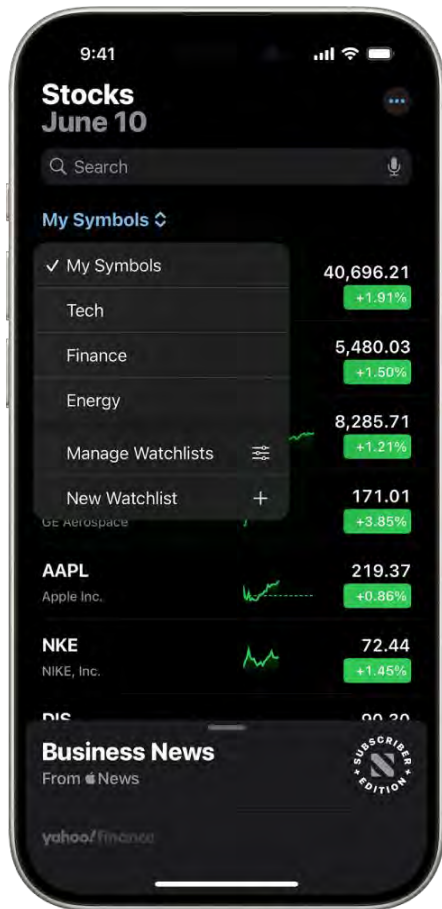
## Manage multiple watchlists in Stocks on iPhone

#### Metadata

**Summary:** Create multiple watchlists to view the stocks you follow according to their own categories in the Stocks app on iPhone.


You can create your own watchlists to organize the stocks you follow. For example, you could organize them according to categories such as entertainment or sustainability. You can switch between watchlists and view them on your other devices.

- COMMENT - #ba #stocks





[Alt text: A watchlist in the Stocks app showing a list of different stocks. Each stock in the list displays, from left to right, the stock symbol and name, a performance chart, the stock price, and price change. At the top of the screen, the My Symbols watchlist is selected and the following watchlists and options are available: Tech, Finance, Energy, Manage Watchlists, and New Watchlist.]


### Create a new watchlist

1. Go to the Stocks app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap My Symbols, then tap New Watchlist.
3. Name the watchlist, then tap Save.

To switch between your watchlists, tap My Symbols or the name of the current watchlist you're viewing, then tap the name of the watchlist you want to see.


### Add symbols to a watchlist

1. Go to the Stocks app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. In the search field, enter the name of a ticker symbol, company, fund, or index.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Add button] , then tap Done.

**Tip:** You can easily add a symbol that's in one watchlist to another watchlist. Swipe left on the symbol, tap  [Alt text: the List button] , select a watchlist, then tap Done.

Each symbol you add to a new watchlist is also added to the My Symbols watchlist. See [Manage symbols in the My Symbols watchlist](#).



### Remove symbols from a watchlist


1. Go to the Stocks app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Swipe left on the symbol.

When you remove a symbol from a watchlist that you created, that symbol remains in the My Symbols watchlist. See [Manage symbols in the My Symbols watchlist](#).

### Sort symbols in a watchlist



You can choose how the symbols in your watchlists are sorted.

1. Go to the Stocks app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Select the watchlist you want to sort, then tap  [Alt text: the More button] .
3. Tap Sort Watchlist By, then tap one of the following options:
  - Manual
  - Price Change
  - Percentage Change
  - Market Cap
  - Symbol
  - Name






To change the order of the symbols in the watchlist, tap  [Alt text: the More button] , tap Sort Watchlist By, then tap Ascending or Descending.

### Change the value displayed in a watchlist

You can change the value displayed below each symbol's price in a watchlist.



1. Go to the Stocks app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Select the watchlist you want to change, then tap  [Alt text: the More button] .
3. Tap Watchlist Shows, then tap one of the following options:
  - Price Change
  - Percentage Change
  - Market Cap

## Delete, reorder, and rename watchlists

1. Go to the Stocks app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the name of the watchlist, tap Manage Watchlists, then do any of the following:
  - *Delete a watchlist:* Tap  [Alt text: the Delete button] next to the symbol, tap  [Alt text: the Trash button], then tap Delete Watchlist.
  - *Reorder your watchlists:* Touch and hold  [Alt text: the Reorder button], then drag the watchlist to a new position.
  - *Rename a watchlist:* Tap  [Alt text: the Pencil button], type a new name, then tap Save.

## View your watchlists on all your devices

You can view your watchlists on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#).

- *On your iPhone or iPad:* Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > iCloud, tap See All (next to Saved to iCloud), then turn on Stocks.
- *On a Mac with macOS 13 or later:* Choose Apple menu  [ALT N/A] > System Settings, click your name at the top of the sidebar, click iCloud, then turn on Stocks. (If you don't see your name, click "Sign in" to sign in to your Apple Account or to create one.)
- *On a Mac with macOS 10.15–12.7:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, click Apple ID, click iCloud, then turn on Stocks.
- *On a Mac with macOS 10.14 or earlier:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, then click iCloud. Select iCloud Drive, click Options, then turn on Stocks.

## Related

[Check stocks on iPhone](#)

[Read or listen to business news in Stocks on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Read or listen to business news](#)

## Read or listen to business news in Stocks on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Read the latest business news in the Stocks app on your iPhone.








In the Stocks app, you can read and listen to business news that's driving the market. In countries where Apple News is available, you also see stories selected by the Apple News editors and stories from Apple News+.



P9 To learn more about Apple News+, see [Subscribe to Apple News+](#).

**Note:** Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

### Read a story

1. Go to the Stocks app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Swipe up on Business News or Top Stories to view stories, or tap a symbol in your watchlist to browse related stories. See [Manage symbols in the My Symbols watchlist](#).
3. Tap a story to read it. While viewing a story, you have these options:
  - *Return to your newsfeed in Stocks:* Tap  [Alt text: the Back button] or Done in the top-left corner.
  - P9  
*See more stories from the publication in Apple News:* Tap the publisher logo at the top of the screen.
  - P9  
*Save the story to Apple News:* Tap  [Alt text: the Bookmark button] at the top of the screen.  
**Note:** In order to save stories to Apple News, make sure you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#), then go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > iCloud, tap See All next to Saved to iCloud, then turn on News.
  - *Change the text size:* Do one of the following, depending on your location:
    - Tap  [Alt text: the Text Size button], then tap the smaller or larger letter to change the text size in the story.
    - Tap  [Alt text: the More Actions button], tap Text Size, then tap the smaller or larger letter to change the text size in the story.
  - *Share the story:* Tap  [Alt text: the Share button], then choose a sharing option, such as Messages or Mail.

- COMMENT - #ba #news #stocks



[Alt text: An article from Apple News. At the top-left corner of the screen is the Back button to return to the Stocks app and the Bookmark button. At the top-right corner are the Text Size and More Actions buttons.]


P9

**Note:** If you tap an Apple News+ story and you're not an Apple News+ subscriber, tap the subscribe or free trial button, then follow the onscreen instructions. To learn more about Apple News+, see [Subscribe to Apple News+](#).

P9 Stories from publications you have blocked in Apple News don't appear in the newsfeed. See [See news stories chosen just for you](#).

### Listen to audio stories

Some news stories include an audio version that you can listen to in the Stocks app or listen to later in the News app (not available in all countries or regions).



1. Go to the Stocks app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. To listen to the audio version of a story, tap Play Now. Or, tap the story to read it, then tap Play Now at the top of the story.
3. Use the mini player at the bottom of the screen to pause the story or jump back 15 seconds. To open the full-screen player, tap the mini player.

4. To return to the mini player, swipe down to minimize the full-screen player.
5. To close the mini player, tap  [Alt text: the Close button] .

P9

### Add an audio story from Stocks to your News queue

If you [subscribe to Apple News+](#), you can add an audio story from Stocks to your Up Next queue in News.

1. Make sure you're signed in to your [Apple Account](#).
2. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > iCloud, tap See All next to Saved to iCloud, then turn on News.
3. Go to the Stocks app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
4. Do either of the following:
  - *Add from a Stocks newsfeed:* Touch and hold the story, tap Play Later in News, then choose Play Next or Play Last.
  - *Add from the story:* Open the story, then touch and hold Play Now at the top of the story. Tap Play Later in News, then choose Play Next or Play Last.

**Note:** Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

### Related

[Check stocks on iPhone](#)

P9 [Get started with News on iPhone](#)

[Sign in and manage your Apple Account on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Add earnings reports to your calendar](#)

## Add earnings reports to your calendar in Stocks on iPhone


Metadata

Summary: Schedule company earnings reports as events in your calendar from the Stocks app on iPhone.

You can see when a company has an upcoming earnings report and add it as an event in the Calendar app.


### Add an earnings report event to your calendar

If a stock has an upcoming earnings report, you can add it in the Calendar app.

1. Go to the Stocks app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a ticker symbol in your watchlist, or use the search field to search for a symbol.
3. If an earnings report is upcoming, tap Add to Calendar, then tap Add.

The earnings report is saved as an all-day event in the Calendar app. Calendar sends you an event reminder on the day of the earnings report.

### Delete an earnings report event from your calendar

1. Go to the Stocks app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the ticker symbol in your watchlist or use the search field to search for the symbol.
3. Tap Edit, then tap Delete Event.

### Related

[Check stocks on iPhone](#)

[Create and edit events in Calendar on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use a Stocks widget](#)


## Use a Stocks widget on your iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Use a Stocks widget to check stocks at a glance on your iPhone Home Screen.

Use a widget to check stocks at a glance on your iPhone Home Screen. You can choose the size of the widget and the amount of information the widget displays.

### Add a Stocks widget to your Home Screen

1. Touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Add Widget button] at the top of the screen to open the widget gallery.
3. Swipe up to find Stocks, then tap it.
4. Swipe left and right to view the different widget types (Watchlist and Symbol) and sizes. When you see the option you want, tap Add Widget, then tap Done.

To move the widget on your Home Screen, touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle. Drag the widget to a new location, then tap Done.

## Change the widget display

After you add a Stocks widget to your Home Screen, you can change its appearance and the information it displays.

1. Touch and hold the Stocks widget on your Home Screen.
2. Tap Edit Widget.
3. Depending on the type of widget you chose, Watchlist or Symbol, you can make the following changes:
  - *Change the widget symbol:* Tap the current symbol, then tap the new symbol you want from the watchlist. Or use the search field to search for a new symbol.
  - *Change the widget watchlist:* Tap the name of the current watchlist, then tap the watchlist you want to display.
  - P9
    - Change when news stories appear:* Tap In Off Hours, then choose an option.
  - *Show the watchlist name:* Turn on Show Watchlist Name.
  - *Show more symbols or additional symbol information:* Turn on Show More Details.

**Tip:** You can add more than one Stocks widget to your Home Screen—and choose a different size for each—so you can quickly see updates for different symbols or watchlists.

Stocks widgets are also available for the iPhone Lock Screen. See [Create a custom Lock Screen](#).

## Related

[Check stocks on iPhone](#)

[Manage multiple watchlists in Stocks on iPhone](#)

[Move apps and widgets on the iPhone Home Screen](#)

---

# Tips

NAV TITLE: [Tips](#)

## Use the Tips app on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: See collections of tips that help you get the most from iPhone.

View collections of tips in the Tips app that help you get the most from your iPhone. You can also get notifications every once in awhile so you can keep learning new things over time.




[Alt text: A screen showing a collection of tips with arrows indicating that you can tap a collection to view the tips in it.]

### Get tips

In the Tips app, you can learn how to personalize your Lock Screen, how to schedule a text message to send later, how to mute calls with your AirPods, and much more. New tips are added frequently.

To start learning, go to the Tips app  [ALT N/A] , tap a collection, then tap a tip.





### Get notified when new tips arrive

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Notifications.
2. Tap Tips below Notification Style, then turn on Allow Notifications.

3. Choose options for the location and style of tip notifications, when they should appear, and more.



### Save tips

You can add tips to your personal Saved tips collection, so you can quickly find them later.

1. Go to the Tips app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Add a tip:* Tap  [Alt text: the Save button] .
  - *View your saved tips:* Tap  [Alt text: the Tips Collections back button] twice, then tap “Saved tips.”
  - *Remove a tip from your saved tips:* Tap  [Alt text: the Remove From Saved Tips button] .


### Share a tip

You can share a tip with a friend over Messages and Mail, or AirDrop it to someone nearby. You can also add tips to documents like Notes and Freeform boards.

1. Go to the Tips app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Share button] , then choose a share option such as Mail, Messages, or AirDrop.

### Learn more about your other Apple devices

If you have other Apple devices—like an Apple Watch, AirPods, or a HomePod—you can read about them in the Tips app.

1. Go to the Tips app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Scroll to the bottom of the Tips app, then tap the user guide you want to browse.

### Related

[Get apps in the App Store](#)

[Change notification settings](#)

---

# Translate

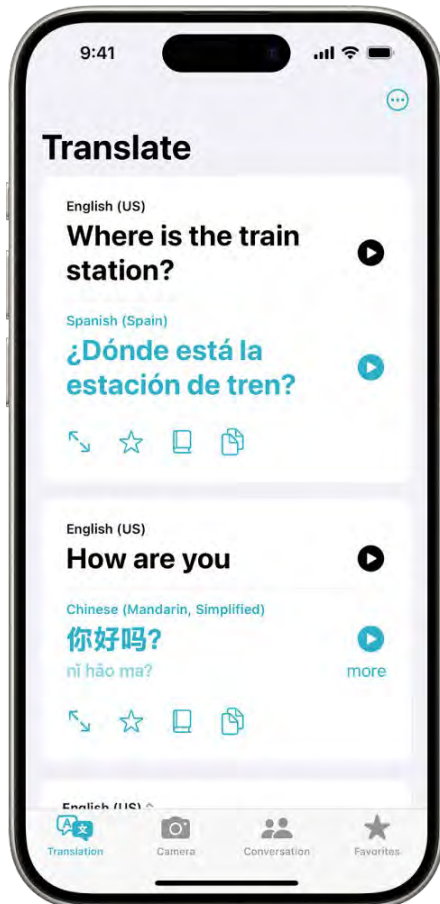
NAV TITLE: [Translate text, voice, and conversations](#)

# Translate text, voice, and conversations on iPhone

## Metadata

**Summary:** Translate text, voice, and conversations into any supported language. Download specific languages for offline translations.


You can translate text, voice, and conversations into any supported language. You can also download languages to translate entirely on a device, even without an internet connection.



[Alt text: The Translation tab, showing translated phrases from English to Spanish and English to Mandarin.]

**Note:** Translation is available for supported languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

## Translate text or your voice

1. Go to the Translate app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the language you want to translate your selected text to.



To swap languages, tap  [Alt text: the Language Swap button] .

3. Tap one of the following:


- *Translate text:* Tap “Enter text,” type a phrase (or paste text), then tap Next in the keyboard.

You can also tap Done in the top-left corner of the screen.





- *Translate your voice:* Tap  [Alt text: the Listen button] , then say a phrase.

**Note:** Words are translated as you type or speak.


4. When the translation is shown, do any of the following:

- *Play the audio translation:* Tap  [Alt text: the Play button] .

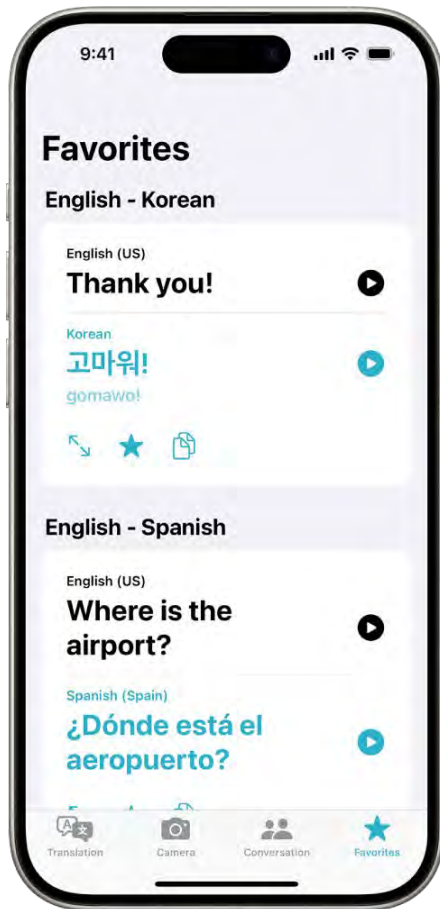
**Tip:** Touch and hold  [Alt text: the Play button] to adjust the playback speed.

- *Show the translation to someone else:* Tap  [Alt text: the Enter Full Screen button] .
- *Save the translation as a favorite:* Tap  [Alt text: the Favorite button] .
- *Look up a word in the dictionary:* Tap  [Alt text: the Dictionary button] .
- *Copy the translation:* Tap  [Alt text: the Copy Button] .


**Tip:** To view your recent history, swipe the translation down.

To delete a translation, swipe left, then tap  [Alt text: the Delete button] .

**View your favorite translations**



[Alt text: The Favorites tab, showing saved phrases translated from English to Korean and English to Spanish.]

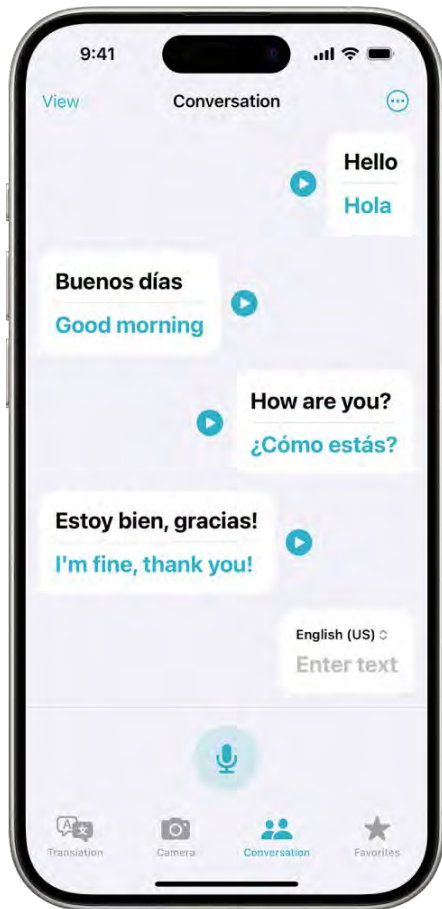
1. Go to the Translate app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Favorites, then scroll to view translations you've favorited and words and phrases you've recently translated.

To remove a translation from your favorites, swipe left, then tap  [Alt text: the Unfavorite button]

**Note:** You can see your favorite translations in the Translate app on your iPhone, iPad, or Apple Watch where you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#).

### Translate a conversation

iPhone shows the translated text bubbles from both sides of the conversation. Conversations work for downloaded languages when you don't have an internet connection or when On-Device Mode is turned on.





[Alt text: The Conversation tab, showing chat bubbles and their translations.]

1. Go to the Translate app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Conversation.
3. Tap one of the following:
  - *Type text:* Tap “Enter text,” type a phrase (or paste text), then tap Done.
  - *Use your voice:* Tap  [Alt text: the Listen button], then say a phrase.

**Note:** Words are translated as you type or speak.

4. Tap  [Alt text: the Play button] to hear the audio translation.

To hear audio translations automatically, tap  [Alt text: the More Options button], then tap Play Translations.

**Tip:** You can translate a conversation without tapping the microphone button before each person speaks. Tap  [Alt text: the More Options button], tap Auto Translate, then tap  [Alt text: the Listen button] to start the conversation. iPhone automatically detects when you start speaking and when you stop.

When chatting face to face, tap View in the top left, then tap Face to Face so that each person can see the conversation from their own side.


### Review words with multiple meanings

When translating a word that has several meanings, you can choose the one you want. You can also select feminine or masculine translations for words that have grammatical gender variations.


**Note:** When gender hasn't been specified, translations automatically default to the gender-neutral form of a word.



[Alt text: The Translation tab, showing a translated phrase from English to Spanish, and a word highlighted in gray with different gender variations listed below.]



1. Go to the Translate app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Translate a word or phrase, then tap Next in the keyboard.
3. When available, do any of the following:

- *Choose a different meaning:* When available, tap the light-colored word to select the intended meaning.
- *Choose grammatical gender translations:* When available, tap the light-colored word to select a feminine or masculine translation.

To turn off grammatical gender translations, tap  [Alt text: the More Options button], then tap Show Grammatical Gender.

### Download languages for offline translation or On-Device Mode

Download languages to translate when you don't have an internet connection or when On-Device Mode is turned on.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Translate.
2. Do any of the following:
  - Tap Downloaded Languages, then tap  [Alt text: the Download button] next to the languages you want to download.
  - Turn On-Device Mode on.

### Related

[Translate text in apps on iPhone](#)

[Translate text with the camera view in the Translate app on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Translate text in apps](#)

## Translate text in apps on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, translate text in apps such as Camera, Photos, Safari, Messages, Mail, supported third-party apps, and more.

On iPhone, you can translate text in apps such as Camera, Photos, Safari, Messages, Mail, supported third-party apps, and more.



**Note:** Translation is available for supported languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

### Translate text in apps


You can select any text to translate in apps such as Safari, Messages, Mail, supported third-party apps, and more. When you enter text on your iPhone, you can even replace what you wrote with a translation.

1. Go to an app like Safari, Message, or Mail on your iPhone.
2. Select the text you want to translate, then tap Translate.

If you don't see Translate, tap > [Alt text: the Show More Items button] to see more options.

3. Tap the language you want to translate your selected text to.
4. Below the text translation, choose any of the following:
  - *Replace with Translation*: Replace your original text with the translation (available only when translating editable text).
  - *Copy Translation*: Copy the translated text.
  - *Add to Favorites*: Add the translation to a list of favorites.
  - *Open in Translate*: Do more with the translation in the Translate app.
  - *Download Languages*: Download languages for offline translation.
  - *Listen to Original Text*: Tap more, then tap  [Alt text: the Gray Play button] to listen to the original text.
  - *Listen to Translated Text*: Tap  [Alt text: the Blue Play button] to listen to the translated text.



### Translate text in photos

On [supported models](#), when you view a photo that includes text, tap  [Alt text: the Detect Text button], touch and hold the text you want to translate, then tap Translate.

If you don't see Translate, tap > [Alt text: the Show More Items button] to see more options.

### Translate text in the Camera app

On [supported models](#), you can use the Camera app to translate text around you—like a recipe, for example.

1. Go to the Camera app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Position iPhone so that the text appears on the screen.
3. When the yellow frame appears around detected text, tap  [Alt text: the Detect Text button].
4. Select the text you want to translate, then tap Translate.

If you don't see Translate, tap > [Alt text: the Show More Items button] to see more options.

### Related

[Use Live Text to interact with content in a photo or video on iPhone](#)

[Use Live Text with your iPhone camera](#)

[Translate text with the camera view in the Translate app on iPhone](#)

## Translate text with the camera view in the Translate app on iPhone


### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, use the camera view in the Translate app to translate text around you and the text in photos from your photo library.

On iPhone, you can use the camera view in the Translate app to translate text around you—for example, a restaurant menu or street signs. You can also translate text in photos from your photo library.

**Note:** Translation is available for supported languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).




### Translate text using the camera view

1. Go to the Translate app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Camera, then choose the language you want to translate your selected text into.
3. Position iPhone so the rear camera can translate text around you.


**Note:** As you move the rear camera, text is translated in real time.



4. Tap  [Alt text: the Translate Camera button ] to pause the view.

You can zoom in to get a closer look at the overlaid translations.





5. Tap an overlaid translation to show the translation card, then do any of the following:
  - *Copy Translation:* Copy the translated text.
  - *Add to Favorites:* Add the translation to a list of favorites.
  - *Listen to Original Text:* Tap more, then tap  [Alt text: the Gray Play button ] to listen to the original text.
  - *Listen to Translated Text:* Tap  [Alt text: the Blue Play button ] to listen to the translated text.
6. When you're finished, tap  [Alt text: the End button] .

### Translate text in photos from your photo library

1. Go to the Translate app  [ALT N/A ] on iPhone.
2. Tap Camera, then choose the language you want to translate your selected text into.

3. Tap  [Alt text: the Photo Library button] , then select a photo that contains text from your photo library.
4. When you're finished, tap  [Alt text: the End button] .

### Share and save a translated image

1. Go to the Translate app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Camera, then do one of the following:
  - *Use the camera view:* Tap  [Alt text: the Translate Camera button] .
  - *Use a photo from your photo library:* Tap  [Alt text: the Photo Library button] , then tap a photo.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Share button] , then do any of the following:
  - *Share the translation:* Choose a share option.
  - *Save the translation as an image:* Tap Save Image.

### Related

[Use Live Text to interact with content in a photo or video on iPhone](#)

[Use Live Text with your iPhone camera](#)

[Translate text in apps on iPhone](#)

---

## TV

P9 NAV TITLE: [Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or a channel](#)

Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or an Apple TV channel on iPhone

#### Metadata

**Summary:** In the Apple TV app on iPhone, subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, and Apple TV channels to access content on iPhone, iPad, Mac, Apple TV, and more.




In the Apple TV app, you can subscribe to Apple TV+, [MLS Season Pass](#), and [Apple TV channels](#). A subscription gives you access to content on demand on iPhone, iPad, Mac, Apple TV, Apple Vision Pro, and supported smart TVs and streaming devices. You can also download content to watch offline on iPhone, iPad, and Mac.

You can choose to bundle your Apple TV+ subscription with other Apple services by subscribing to Apple One. See the Apple Support article [Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One](#).

**Note:** Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, Apple TV channels, and Apple One aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).


### **Subscribe to Apple TV+**

Apple TV+ is a subscription streaming service featuring Apple Originals—award-winning series, compelling dramas, groundbreaking documentaries, kids' entertainment, comedies, and more —with new items added every month.

1. Go to the Apple TV app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apple TV+, then tap the subscription button.
3. Review the free trial (if eligible) and subscription details, then follow the onscreen instructions.


### **Subscribe to MLS Season Pass**

MLS Season Pass is a subscription streaming service featuring every match of the Major League Soccer season, all in one place, with consistent match times, and no blackouts.

1. Go to the Apple TV app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Search, then tap MLS Season Pass.
3. Tap the subscription button.
4. Review the subscription details, tap a subscription option, then follow the onscreen instructions.


### **Subscribe to Apple TV channels and apps**

You can subscribe to Apple TV channels like Paramount+, Starz, and others to get the shows you want, without downloading any apps.

1. Go to the Apple TV app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Store, then scroll down to the Add Channels & Apps row.
3. Swipe left to browse, then tap an item.
4. Tap the subscription button, review the free trial (if eligible) and subscription details, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To disconnect supported streaming apps, tap your picture or initials at the top right, tap Connected Apps, then tap the button next to the streaming app to disconnect it.

### Change or cancel your subscriptions to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or Apple TV channels

1. Go to the Apple TV app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Tap Manage Subscriptions.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions to change or cancel your subscription.

### Share Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, and Apple TV channels with family members

When you subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, Apple TV channels, or Apple One, you can use [Family Sharing](#) to share your subscriptions with up to five other family members. Your family group members don't need to do anything—a shared subscription is available to them the first time they open the Apple TV app after your subscription begins.

If you [join a family group](#) that subscribes to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, Apple TV channels, or Apple One, and you already subscribe, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

**Note:** To stop sharing your subscription with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, [leave or remove a member from a Family Sharing group](#), or (if you're the family group organizer), stop using Family Sharing.

### Related

P9 [Find shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPhone](#)

P9 [Buy, rent, or pre-order items in the Apple TV app on iPhone](#)

[Watch MLS in the Apple TV app on iPhone](#)

P9 NAV TITLE: [Find shows, movies, and more](#)

## Find shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** In the Apple TV app on iPhone, browse through each tab to find TV shows, movies, and more.

You can use the Search tab in the Apple TV app to look for TV shows and movies by specific categories like title, sport, and cast. The Home tab gives you easy access to next episodes, new releases, personalized recommendations, and much more.

**Note:** The availability of Apple Media Services varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

- COMMENT - #ba #tv-movies //Ted Lasso, The Morning Show, and Hijack cleared until fall 2025 (evergreen titles) (M. E. Mason, L. O'Rourke, D. Majewski, Crystal, 2024-07-24) //




[Alt text: The Home tab showing a featured Apple Original in the center, above the Up Next row. At the bottom, from left to right, are the Home, Apple TV+, Store, Library, and Search tabs.]

[Stream \*Ted Lasso\* on the Apple TV app with a subscription](#)



### **Search for specific shows, movies, and more**

When you're looking for something specific—like a show or actor—use the Search tab.

1. Go to the Apple TV app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Search, then either tap a category, or tap the search field to see previous searches or enter a new search.

## Find content in the Home tab

When you're looking for suggestions or just want to see what's available, use the Home tab.

1. Go to the Apple TV app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then do any of the following:
  - *Get recommendations:* Get video previews of personalized recommendations based on your channel subscriptions, supported apps, purchases, and viewing interests.
  - *Browse a collection:* Swipe left on the collection or tap  [Alt text: the Forward button] to see all items.
  - *See shows, movies, and episodes sent by friends in Messages:* Scroll down to the Shared with You row. See [Share content in Messages](#).

You can also tap the Apple TV+, Store, and Library tabs to see content specific to those categories.

## Related

[Stream content and control playback in the Apple TV app on iPhone](#)

[Personalize the Home tab in the Apple TV app on iPhone](#)

[P9 Buy, rent, or pre-order items in the Apple TV app on iPhone](#)

P9 NAV TITLE: [Personalize the Home tab](#)

# Personalize the Home tab in the Apple TV app on iPhone

### Metadata


**Summary:** In the Apple TV app on iPhone, browse titles from all your supported services in one place. Add titles to Up Next and discover Apple TV channels and apps to personalize the Home tab.

The Home tab brings your favorite shows, movies, channels, and sports together in one place. Pick up where you left off with Up Next, or discover Apple TV channels and streaming apps—personalized just for you.

**Note:** The availability of Apple Media Services varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).


## Use Up Next

In the Up Next row, you can find titles you recently added, rented, or purchased, catch the next episode in a series you're watching, or resume what you're watching from the moment you left off.

1. Go to the Apple TV app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Add an item to Up Next:* Touch and hold the item, then tap Add to Up Next.
  - *Remove an item from Up Next:* Touch and hold the item in the Up Next row, then tap Remove from Up Next.
  - *Continue watching on another device:* You can see your Up Next queue in the Apple TV app on your iPhone, iPad, Mac, Apple TV, Apple Vision Pro, or supported smart TV where you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#).

### Discover channels and apps

The Apple TV app recommends new content or the next episode in a series you watch from a connected app (supported streaming apps only).

1. Go to Apple TV app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, scroll down to the Channels & Apps row, then swipe right to browse either of the following:
  - *Channels & Apps:* Directly access all the channels you subscribe to or apps you connected to the Apple TV app.
  - *More to Explore:* Find new channels or apps to subscribe to or watch.
3. Tap an item to open it.

Your channels and apps appear in the Channels & Apps row in the Home tab across all your devices where you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#).

### Related

P9 Find shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPhone

P9 Buy, rent, or pre-order items in the Apple TV app on iPhone

[Manage your library in the Apple TV app on iPhone](#)

P9 NAV TITLE: [Buy, rent, or pre-order items](#)

## Buy, rent, or pre-order items in the Apple TV app on iPhone


#### Metadata

**Summary:** Use the Apple TV app on iPhone to explore shows, movies, and sports. Browse titles from all your supported services in one place.


You can buy, rent, or pre-order TV shows and movies in the Apple TV app. Once you find something you want to watch, you can purchase it, rent it (if it's a movie), or choose how to watch it (if it's available on multiple channels and apps).

**Note:** The availability of Apple Media Services varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

### **Browse featured and recommended TV shows and movies**

1. Go to the Apple TV app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Store, then browse featured items, collections, and genres.
3. Tap an item to see previews, ratings, descriptions, and viewing information.

### **Buy, rent, or pre-order items**

1. Go to the Apple TV app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Store, then choose any of the following options (not all options are available for all titles):
  - *Buy:* Purchased items are added to your library.
  - *Rent:* When you rent a movie, you have 30 days to start watching it. After you start watching the movie, you can play it as many times as you want for 48 hours, after which the rental period ends. When the rental period ends, the movie is deleted.
  - *Pre-order:* When the pre-ordered item becomes available, your payment method is billed, and you receive an email notification. If you turned on automatic downloads, the item is automatically downloaded to your iPhone.
3. Confirm your selection, then complete the payment or pre-order.

You can [find your purchases and rentals in your library](#) and play them in the Apple TV app.

### **Related**

[Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or an Apple TV channel on iPhone](#)

[Personalize the Home tab in the Apple TV app on iPhone](#)

[Watch sports in the Apple TV app on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Stream content and control playback](#)

## Stream content and control playback in the Apple TV app on iPhone

#### Metadata

**Summary:** Use the Apple TV app on iPhone to stream shows, movies, and sports. Use the controls to play, pause, show subtitles, change the language, and more. During SharePlay,

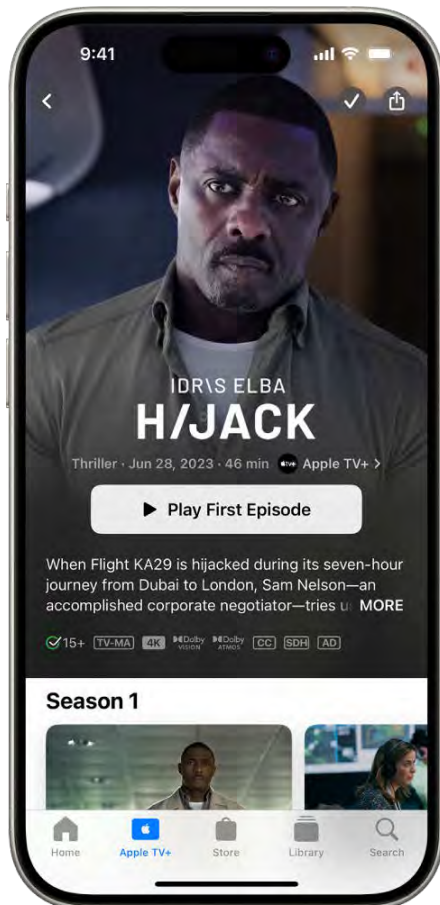
the controls are shared by everyone on the FaceTime call.

You can stream TV shows, movies, sports, and more. Content from Apple TV+ and Apple TV channels plays in the Apple TV app, while content from other providers plays in their video app. Use the playback controls to play or pause what you're watching, skip backward or forward, and more.

When you watch with your friends using SharePlay, the playback controls are shared by everyone on the FaceTime call. To learn more about using SharePlay in the Apple TV app, see [Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime](#).



### Stream or download content

- COMMENT - #ba #tv-movies // Hijack cleared until fall 2025 (evergreen title) (M. E. Mason, L. O'Rourke, Crystal, 2024-07-08) //






[Alt text: The Apple TV+ tab showing a featured Apple Original with the title, Play First Episode button, and a description of the series. At the bottom, from left to right, are the Home, Apple TV+, Store, Library, and Search tabs.

### Stream *Hijack* on the Apple TV app with a subscription

1. Go to the Apple TV app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap an item to see its details.
3. Choose any of the following options (not all options are available for all titles):
  - *Watch Apple TV+ or Apple TV channels:* Tap Play. If you're not a current subscriber, tap Try It Free (available for eligible Apple Accounts) or Subscribe.
  - *Choose a different video app:* If the title is available from multiple apps, scroll down to How To Watch, then choose an app.
  - *Download:* Tap  [Alt text: the Download button]. You can find the downloaded item in your library and watch it even when iPhone isn't connected to the internet.

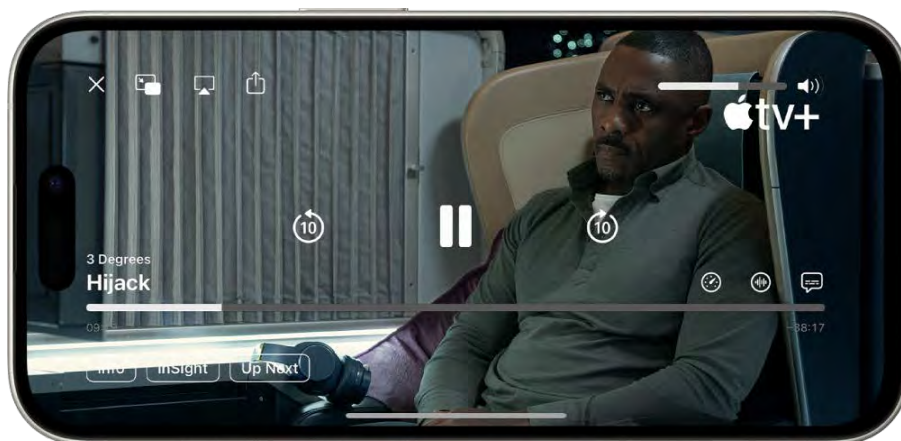
### Watch a movie you rented

1. Go to the Apple TV app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, tap Rentals, then tap a movie.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Play the movie:* Tap  [Alt text: the Play button]. The time remaining in the rental period is shown.
  - *Download the movie:* Tap  [Alt text: the Download button] to watch the item later when iPhone isn't connected to the internet.

### Use the playback controls

During playback, tap the screen to show the controls.

- COMMENT - #ba #tv-movies // *Hijack* cleared until fall 2025 (evergreen title) (M. E. Mason, L. O'Rourke, Crystal, 2024-07-08) //














[Alt text: A TV show playing, with controls visible. The Close, Picture in Picture, AirPlay, and Share buttons are at the top left. The volume slider is at the top right. At the center are buttons to skip 10 seconds backward, pause, and skip 10 seconds forward. Across the bottom center is a slider that you can drag to adjust the video position; the elapsed time and time remaining appear on either side of the slider. At the bottom right are the Info, InSight, and Up Next buttons.]

[Stream Hijack on the Apple TV app with a subscription](#)

(table aria-label=Playback controls)

Control	Description
 [Alt text: The Play button]	Play
 [Alt text: The Pause button]	Pause
 [Alt text: The Skip 10 Seconds Backwards button]	Skip backward 10 seconds; touch and hold to rewind
 [Alt text: The Skip 10 Seconds Forward button]	Skip forward 10 seconds; touch and hold to fast-forward
 [Alt text: The Playback Speed button]	Change the playback speed
 [Alt text: The Audio button]	Change the audio track and <a href="#">enhance dialogue</a>
 [Alt text: The Subtitles button]	<a href="#">Display subtitles and closed captions</a>
 [Alt text: The Share button]	Share an episode, movie, trailer, or sporting event
 [Alt text: The AirPlay button]	<a href="#">Stream the video to other devices</a>



[Alt text: The Picture in Picture button]


Start Picture in Picture—you can continue to watch the video while you use another app




[Alt text: The Close button]

Stop playback

---

When the audio is muted, subtitles automatically appear. And if you skip backward 10 seconds, subtitles appear. To turn off subtitles, tap  [Alt text: the Subtitles button], then tap Off.


### Change audio options during playback

1. During playback, tap the screen to show the playback controls.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Audio button], then tap Enhance Dialogue.
3. Tap one of the following options:
  - *Boost*: Makes dialogue very prominent in the mix.
  - *Enhance*: Makes dialogue more prominent in the mix.
  - *Off*: Turns Enhance Dialogue off.

### Go to Info, InSight, and Up Next

During playback, you can get more information about the movie or TV show you're watching or go directly to Up Next.

With InSight, you can get information in real time about actors, characters, and music currently onscreen while you're watching an Apple TV+ movie or TV show (Apple TV+ subscription required). You can tap an actor to view their background and filmography page, or quickly view a song that's playing in the background and add it to an Apple Music playlist (Apple Music subscription required).

1. During playback, tap the screen to show the playback controls.
2. Tap any of the following options:
  - *Info*: See more information about what you're watching.
  - *InSight*: Tap an actor or character to see more info. If music information appears, tap the song to add it to a playlist in the Music app  [ALT N/A] (Apple TV+ and Apple Music subscriptions required).
  - *Up Next*: Go directly to your Up Next list, then tap an item to start watching it.
  - *Live Sports*: View live and upcoming sports events.

### Related

P9 Find shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPhone

P9 Buy, rent, or pre-order items in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Manage your library in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Create, edit, and delete music playlists on iPhone

P9

## Watch sports

NAV TITLE: [Watch sports](#)

### Watch sports in the Apple TV app on iPhone


#### Metadata

**Summary:** Use the Apple TV app on iPhone to browse by sport or league, watch games, follow your favorite teams with My Sports, and get live scores and notifications for close games.


The Sports row gives you access to a wide array of live and scheduled sports events (not available in all countries or regions).

You can see live games with up-to-the-minute scores, or browse upcoming games and add them to Up Next.

#### Explore sports

1. Go to the Apple TV app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then scroll down to the Sports row.
3. Do any of the following:
  - Browse live and upcoming games.
  - Tap Live Sports, then scroll down to browse football, baseball, basketball, and more.
4. To filter by sport, tap Live Sports, scroll down to the Browse row, then tap a sport.

#### Watch a live game

1. Go to the Apple TV app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then scroll down to the Sports row.

3. Tap Live Sports, then tap a live game.
4. Tap Watch or Open In, then choose an app.

You can also scroll down to How to Watch, then choose an app.

If you want to receive live updates for a game on the Lock Screen, tap Follow Live. See [Access features from the iPhone Lock Screen](#).

Select games may also show the current score and play-by-play updates on the game page.

To hide the scores of live games, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > TV, then turn off Show Sports Scores.

### Related

[Follow teams with My Sports in the Apple TV app on iPhone](#)

[Watch MLS in the Apple TV app on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Follow your favorite teams with My Sports](#)

## Follow teams with My Sports in the Apple TV app on iPhone

### Metadata

Summary: In the Apple TV app on iPhone, follow your favorite teams with My Sports.


You can add your favorite teams to My Sports to see their games in Up Next and [receive notifications](#) when they're about to play.


When you turn on syncing for My Sports, the teams you follow in Apple TV are automatically followed in Apple News, Apple Sports, and other supported apps. If you've already set up My Sports in the News app, the teams you follow appear in the Apple TV app.

If you have an iPhone, iPad, or Mac [signed in to the same Apple Account](#), you can also see the teams you're following with My Sports in the Apple TV app and in the News app on those devices.

**Note:** My Sports isn't available in all countries or regions.

### Follow your favorite teams

1. Go to the Apple TV app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, scroll down to the Sports row, then tap Live Sports.
3. Tap Follow Your Teams.
4. Tap Turn On to sync your teams across Apple News, Apple TV, and other supported apps.

5. Tap a sports league (MLS, MLB, or NBA, for example), then tap  [Alt text: the Follow button] next to a team to follow it.
6. When you're finished, tap Done.

### Manage My Sports

You can follow and unfollow teams after you set up My Sports.

1. Go to the Apple TV app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, scroll down to the Sports row, then tap Live Sports.
3. Tap Manage My Sports at the bottom of the screen, then do any of the following:
  - *Follow teams:* Tap a league, tap  [Alt text: the Follow button] next to a team you want to follow, then tap Done.
  - *Unfollow teams:* Tap  [Alt text: the Unfollow button] next to a team you want to unfollow, tap Remove, then tap Done.

### Related

[Follow your favorite teams with My Sports on iPhone](#)

[Watch MLS in the Apple TV app on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Watch MLS](#)

## Watch MLS in the Apple TV app on iPhone

### Metadata


**Summary:** Use the Apple TV app on iPhone to watch Major League Soccer (MLS) with MLS Season Pass. Explore live and upcoming matches, follow your favorite MLS clubs, watch match highlights, and more.

MLS in the Apple TV app gives you access to Major League Soccer events when you subscribe to MLS Season Pass.



You can also follow your favorite MLS clubs using My Sports (not available in all countries or regions), catch up on key plays during a live game, and watch on-demand content—including MLS club profiles, player profiles, league and club highlights from the last season, and more.

**Note:** Some MLS games may be offered for free on a promotional basis, but full access to all games, shows, and features requires an [MLS Season Pass subscription](#). MLS Season Pass isn't available in all countries or regions.

### Browse and watch with MLS Season Pass

1. Go to the Apple TV app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Search, then tap MLS Season Pass.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Explore featured matches, pregame and postgame shows, and more:* Scroll to a category row.
  - *Browse matches, club profiles, player profiles, and more for a particular club:* Scroll down to the All Clubs row, then tap a club.
4. To start watching, tap an event or show.

### Follow your favorite MLS clubs

1. Go to the Apple TV app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Search, then tap MLS Season Pass.
3. Scroll down to the All Clubs row, tap a club, then tap  [Alt text: the Favorite button] at the top right.

**Tip:** You can also touch and hold a club in the All Clubs row, then tap Follow Team.


Clubs you follow appear at the front of the All Clubs row with a star  [ALT N/A ] next to the club's name.

You can also follow MLS clubs with My Sports. See [Follow teams with My Sports](#).

**Note:** When you follow a club, their matches automatically appear in Up Next.

### Catch up with Key Plays




When you start watching a live match in progress, you can catch up to the action by watching all the key plays you missed. You can also browse and watch key plays at any time during the match.

1. Go to the Apple TV app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Search, then tap MLS Season Pass.
3. Do either of the following:
  - *Catch up to a match in progress:* Tap a match, then tap Catch Up.
  - *Go to key plays during a match:* While watching a match, tap the screen to show the playback controls, tap Key Plays, then select a key play from the collection row.

Key plays start playing in order from the beginning of the match if you're catching up, or from the key play you select from the Key Play menu.
4. While watching key plays, you can do either of the following:
  - *Browse the collection:* Swipe left or right.

- *Return to the match:* Tap Jump to Live in the lower-left corner of the screen, or to resume playback from the last spot you were watching, tap < [Alt text: the Back button] .

### Add or remove an event from Up Next

1. Go to the Apple TV app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Search, then tap MLS Season Pass.
3. Tap an event, then do either of the following:
  - *Add the item to Up Next:* Tap  [Alt text: the Add button] .
  - *Remove the item from Up Next:* Tap  [Alt text: the Checkmark button] .

### Related

[Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or an Apple TV channel on iPhone](#)

[Find shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPhone](#)

[Stream content and control playback in the Apple TV app on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Manage your library](#)


## Manage your library in the Apple TV app on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** See your purchases, rentals, and downloads in the Apple TV app on iPhone. If you download a movie or TV show, you can watch it when iPhone isn't connected to the internet.

Your library contains shows and movies you purchased, rented, and downloaded. If you [use Family Sharing](#), you can also view purchases made by family members.

### Browse your library


1. Go to the Apple TV app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap TV Shows, Movies, or Genres.

### Share purchases made by family members

If you [use Family Sharing](#), you and your family members can share purchases in the Apple TV app.

Tap Library, tap Family Sharing, then choose a family member.

### Remove a downloaded item

1. Go to the Apple TV app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Downloaded.
3. Swipe left on the item you want to remove, then tap Delete.

Removing an item from iPhone doesn't delete it from your purchases in iCloud. You can download the item to iPhone again later.

### Related

- [P9 Buy, rent, or pre-order items in the Apple TV app on iPhone](#)
- [P9 Find shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPhone](#)
- [Change the Apple TV app settings on iPhone](#)

P9 NAV TITLE: [Add your TV provider](#)

## Add your TV provider to the Apple TV app on iPhone


### Metadata

**Summary:** [With the Apple TV app on iPhone, watch content from and cable and satellite providers.](#)

You can add your cable or satellite service to the Apple TV app and watch shows and movies on your iPhone, iPad, Mac, Apple TV, Apple Vision Pro, and supported smart TVs and streaming devices.

### Add your cable or satellite service to the Apple TV app

Single sign-on provides immediate access to all the supported video apps in your subscription package.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > General > TV Provider.
2. Choose your TV provider, then sign in with your provider credentials.

If your TV provider isn't listed, sign in directly from the app you want to use.

### Related

- [Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or an Apple TV channel on iPhone](#)
- [Personalize the Home tab in the Apple TV app on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Change the settings](#)



# Change the Apple TV app settings on iPhone

## Metadata

**Summary:** Change streaming and download options for the Apple TV app on iPhone.

You can adjust streaming and download settings for the Apple TV app. You can also change how the Apple TV app uses your viewing history to provide personalized recommendations and choose what appears in the Apple TV app, including live sports scores and items in Up Next.

## Change streaming and download options

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > TV.

2. Choose streaming options:

- *Use Cellular Data:* Turn off to limit streaming to Wi-Fi connections.
- *Wi-Fi:* Choose High Quality or Data Saver.

High Quality requires a faster internet connection and uses more data.

3. Choose download options:

- *Use Cellular Data:* Turn off to limit downloads to Wi-Fi connections.
- *Wi-Fi:* Choose High Quality or Fast Downloads.

High Quality results in slower downloads and uses more data.



- *Languages:* Choose a language. Each added audio language increases the download size. To remove a language, swipe left on the language you want to remove, then tap Delete.

The default language is the primary language for your country or region. If you turned on Audio Descriptions in Settings > Accessibility, audio descriptions are also downloaded.


## Change how your viewing history is used

By default, what you watch on your iPhone affects your personalized recommendations and Up Next queue on all your devices where you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#).

You can do any of the following:

- *Clear your viewing history:* Go to the Apple TV app  [ALT N/A], tap Home, tap your picture or initials at the top right, then tap Clear Play History.
- *Turn off personalization features based on your viewing history:* Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > TV, then turn off Use Play History.

## Change your device preferences

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > TV.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Show or hide live sports scores:* Turn off Show Sports Scores.
  - *Use your viewing history for personalized recommendations and Up Next:* Turn on Use Play History.
  - *Choose the art you want to see in Up Next:* Tap Up Next Display, then tap Still Frame to see paused images from what you're watching, or Poster Art to show main title images for shows or movies.
  - *Prevent the next episode or trailer from automatically playing:* Turn off Auto-Play Next Video.

P9

[Add your TV provider to the Apple TV app on iPhone](#)

[Find shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPhone](#)

[Personalize the Home tab in the Apple TV app on iPhone](#)

---

## Voice Memos

NAV TITLE: [Make a recording](#)

### Make a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

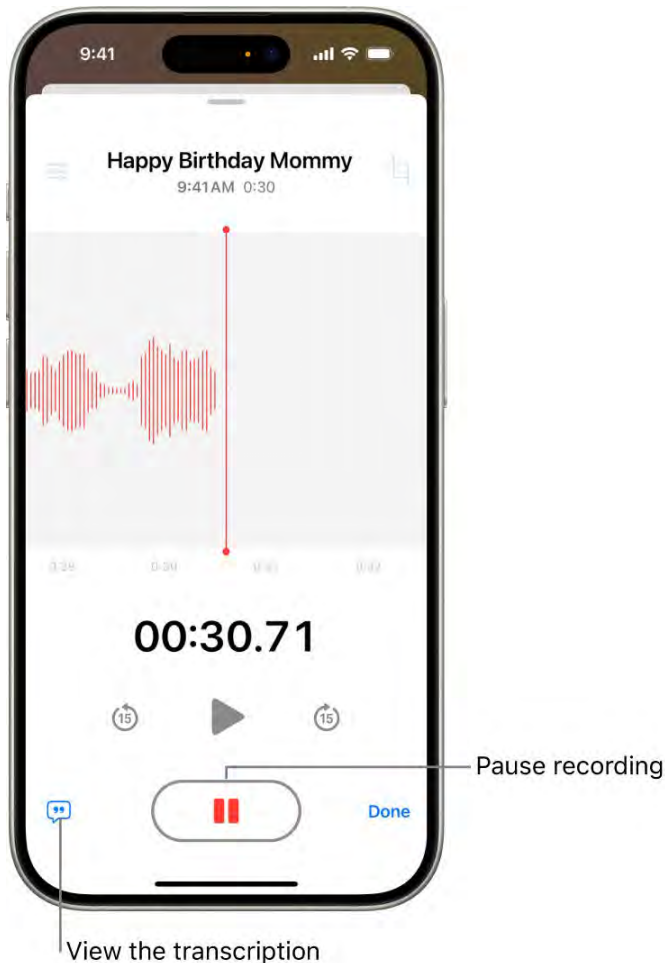
Metadata

Summary: With Voice Memos, use iPhone as a portable recording device.

You can use iPhone as a portable recording device to record personal notes, classroom lectures, musical ideas, and more. You can also fine-tune your recordings with editing tools like trim, replace, and resume.

Record voice memos using the built-in microphone, a supported headset, or an external microphone.

When Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings or iCloud preferences, your recordings [appear and update automatically](#) on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#).




[Alt text: A Voice Memos recording, showing a waveform of the recording that's in progress, along with a time indicator and a button to pause the recording.]

### Make a basic recording


1. Go to the Voice Memos app  [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

**Note:** To make it easier to find and open the Voice Memos app, you can [move it from the Utilities folder to the Home Screen](#).

2. Tap  [Alt text: the Record button] to begin recording, .

To adjust the recording level, move the microphone closer to or farther from what you're recording.

3. Tap  [Alt text: the Stop Recording Video button] to stop recording.


Your recording is saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if [Location Services is turned on](#) in Settings  [ALT N/A] > Privacy & Security. To change the name, tap the recording, then tap the name and type a new one.

To fine-tune your recording, see [Edit or delete a recording](#).

**Note:** For your privacy, when you use Voice Memos to make recordings, an orange dot appears at the top of your screen to indicate your microphone is in use.

### Record in stereo

You can record in stereo in Voice Memos.



1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Voice Memos.
2. Turn on Stereo Recording.

When Stereo Recording is on, Voice Memos records using multiple microphones on your iPhone and with right and left audio channels. If you listen to the recording through headphones, you hear different sounds from different microphones; however, the waveform display still looks the same.

**Note:** Stereo recording isn't available on all devices.



### Use the advanced recording features


You can make a recording in parts, pausing and resuming as you record.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Record button] to begin a recording, .


To adjust the recording level, move the microphone closer to or farther away from what you're recording.

To see more details while you're recording, swipe up from the top of the waveform.

3. Tap  [Alt text: the Pause button] to stop recording; tap Resume to continue.
4. To review your recording, tap  [Alt text: the Play button] .



To change where playback begins, drag the waveform left or right across the playhead before you tap  [Alt text: the Play button] .

5. To save the recording, tap Done.

Your recording is saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if [Location Services is turned on](#) in Settings  [ALT N/A] > Privacy & Security. To change the name, tap the recording, tap the name, then type a new name.



To fine-tune your recording, see [Edit or delete a recording](#).

### Mute the start and stop tones

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Record button] to begin recording.
3. While recording, use the iPhone volume down button to turn the volume all the way down.

## Use another app while recording

While you're recording, you can use another app as long as it doesn't play audio on your iPhone.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Record button] to begin recording.
3. While you're recording, [go to the Home Screen](#), then open another app.

If the other app starts playing audio, Voice Memos stops recording.

On [supported models](#), you can see your recording in progress in the Dynamic Island at the top of the Home Screen and in other apps. Tap the Dynamic Island to expand it, or navigate back to Voice Memos. See [Use the Dynamic Island](#).



[Alt text: The iPhone Home Screen, showing a Voice Memos recording in the Dynamic Island.]

If Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings or iCloud preferences, your recording is saved in iCloud and appears automatically on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're signed in to the same Apple Account. See [Keep recordings up to date](#).

Recordings using the built-in microphone are mono, unless you turn on [turn on Stereo Recording](#) in Settings. You can also use an external stereo microphone that works with iPhone to record stereo. Look for accessories marked with the Apple “Made for iPhone” or “Works with iPhone” logo.

### Related

[Play a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone](#)

[View a Voice Memos transcription on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [View a transcription](#)

## View a Voice Memos transcription on iPhone




### Metadata


Summary: In Voice Memos on iPhone, view a transcription of an audio recording.


Speech in your audio recordings can be recognized and transcribed to text in Voice Memos (not available in all countries or regions). You can view the transcription while you're recording or after.

If you open a recording made in an earlier version of Voice Memos (iOS 17 or earlier), Voice Memos will transcribe it automatically if it includes recorded speech.



### View a transcription while recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Record button] to begin recording.
3. Swipe up from the top of the waveform, then tap  [Alt text: the Transcription button] to watch the transcription live.

The waveform disappears temporarily, and the transcription appears, with the current word highlighted. To return to the waveform view, tap  [Alt text: the Selected Transcription button] .


4. Tap  [Alt text: the Pause button] to pause recording; tap Resume to continue.
5. To save the recording, tap Done.

### View or copy transcribed text after recording


1. Go to the Voice Memos app  [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap the recording with the transcript you want to view.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More Actions button], then do one of the following:
  - *Copy part of the transcript:* Choose View Transcript, select the text you want to copy, then tap Copy.
  - *Copy the entire transcript:* Choose Copy Transcript.

You can open another document—a Mail message or text file, for example—and paste the text into it.

### Search for text in titles and transcriptions

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Swipe down from the top of the list of recordings to show the search field.
3. In the search field, enter the text you want to find.

The list shows only recordings with that text—either in the title or in the audio transcription.

When you select a term in the transcription, the playhead appears at that location in the audio waveform. To return to the waveform, tap  [Alt text: the Selected Transcription button].

### Related

[Play a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Play it back](#)

## Play a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

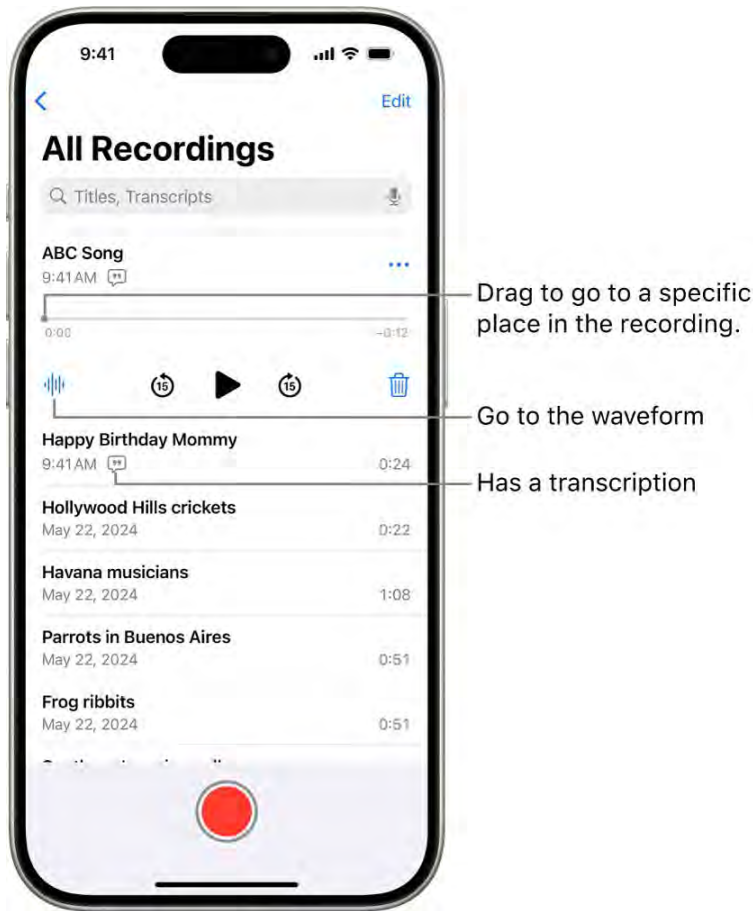
Metadata

Summary: In Voice Memos on iPhone, play back a recording.

You can play audio you recorded on your iPhone using the playback controls.





You can also adjust settings to change playback speed, reduce background noise, and fill in silences.

**Note:** Changing these settings doesn't affect the recording itself. The setting you choose for a recording stays with that specific recording and is applied each time you play the recording. It doesn't apply to other recordings, and isn't included with the recording when you share it.



[Alt text: The Voice Memos list screen with a selected recording at the top. The recording timeline has a playhead, which you can drag to go to a specific place in the recording. The play controls are below the timeline.]

(table aria-label=Playback controls)

Control	Description
 [Alt text: The Play button.]	Play
 [Alt text: The Pause button.]	Pause
 [Alt text: The Rewind Fifteen Seconds button.]	Skip backward 15 seconds
	Skip forward 15 seconds










[Alt text: The Fast Forward Fifteen Seconds button.]

---

**Tip:** While the recording is open, you can tap its name to rename it.





### Change the playback speed

You can play a recording at a faster or slower speed.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to play, then tap  [Alt text: the More Actions button] .
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Playback Settings button] , then drag the slider toward the tortoise  [ALT N/A] for a slower speed, or toward the rabbit  [ALT N/A] for a faster speed.
4. Tap  [Alt text: the Close button] , then tap  [Alt text: the Play button] to play the recording.





### Enhance a recording

You can turn on Enhance Recording to reduce background noise and echo when you play the recording.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to enhance, then tap  [Alt text: the More Actions button] .
3. Tap Options, then turn on Enhance Recording.
4. Tap  [Alt text: the Close button] , then tap  [Alt text: the Play button] to play the recording.



### Skip over gaps when playing back a recording

Voice Memos can analyze your audio and automatically skip over gaps when playing it.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap the recording you want to play, then tap  [Alt text: the More Actions button] .
3. Tap Options, then turn on Skip Silence.
4. Tap  [Alt text: the Close button] , then tap  [Alt text: the Play button] to play the recording.

### Reset the playback options

You can return all the playback options for a recording to their original settings at the same time.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap the recording you want to turn off playback options for, then tap  [Alt text: the Options button] .

3. Tap Options, then tap Reset.

### Related

[Edit or delete a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Edit or delete a recording](#)





## Edit or delete a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** In Voice Memos on iPhone, use the editing tools—including trim, insert, and resume—to fine-tune your recording.

You can fine-tune your recordings using the editing tools. Remove parts, record over parts, or replace an entire recording. You can also delete a recording you no longer need.

### Edit a voice recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to edit, tap  [Alt text] the More Actions button , then tap Edit Recording.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Trim button] at the top right, then drag the yellow trim handles to enclose the section you want to keep or delete.

You can pinch open to zoom in on the waveform for more precise editing.







[Alt text: A recording being edited, with the yellow trim handles enclosing a portion of the audio waveform at the bottom of the screen. A Play button and a recording timer appear below the waveform. The trim handles are below the Play button. On either side of the Play button are the Trim button (for deleting the part of the recording outside the handles) and the Delete button (for deleting the part of the recording inside the handles).]

To check your selection, tap ► [Alt text: the Play button] .




4. To keep the selection (and delete the rest of the recording), tap Trim, or to delete the selection, tap Delete.
5. Tap Apply, then tap Done.
6. Tap Save Recording to overwrite the original recording, or tap Save as New Recording to save the edited version as a new recording (leaving the original as it was).


### Replace a recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to replace, tap  [Alt text: the More Actions button] , then tap Edit Recording.



3. Drag the waveform to position the playhead where you want to start recording new audio.  
You can pinch open to zoom in on the waveform for more precise placement.
4. Tap Replace to begin recording (the waveform turns red as you record).  
Tap  [Alt text: the Pause button] to pause; tap Resume to continue.
5. To check your recording, tap  [Alt text: the Play button] .
6. Tap Done, then tap Save Recording to replace the original recording, or tap Save as New Recording to save the changes as a new recording (leaving the original as it was).

### Delete a recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to delete, then tap  [Alt text: the Delete button] .
  - Tap Edit above the list of recordings, select one or more recordings, then tap  [Alt text: the Delete button] .

Deleted recordings move to the Recently Deleted folder, where they're kept for 30 days by default. To change how long deleted recordings are kept, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Voice Memos > Clear Deleted, then select an option.

### Recover or erase a deleted recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Recently Deleted folder, then tap the recording you want to recover or erase.  
If you don't see the Recently Deleted folder, tap  [Alt text: the Back button] at the top left.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Recover the selected recording:* Tap Recover.
  - *Delete the selected recording:* Tap Delete.
  - *Recover everything in the Recently Deleted folder:* Tap Edit above the Recently Deleted list, then tap Recover All.
  - *Delete everything in the Recently Deleted folder:* Tap Edit above the Recently Deleted list, then tap Delete All.

### Related

[Organize recordings in Voice Memos on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Keep recordings up to date](#)



## Keep recordings up to date in Voice Memos on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** In Voice Memos on iPhone, keep your recordings up to date on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

You can keep your audio recordings up to date automatically on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) and Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings.

To turn on Voice Memos in iCloud on your devices, do the following:

- *iOS or iPadOS:* Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > iCloud > See All, then scroll down and turn on Voice Memos.
- *macOS Sequoia:* Choose Apple menu  [ALT N/A] > System Settings, then click your name in the sidebar. If you don't see your name in the sidebar, click "Sign in" to sign in to your Apple Account or create one. Click iCloud, click See All, then scroll down and turn on Voice Memos.

### Related

[Sync content between your Mac and iPhone or iPad](#)

NAV TITLE: [Organize recordings](#)

## Organize recordings in Voice Memos on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** In Voice Memos on iPhone, mark recordings as favorites and organize recordings into folders.




You can mark audio recordings as favorites and organize your recordings into folders.

**Note:** Apple Watch recordings, recently deleted recordings, and favorites are grouped into Smart Folders, which automatically gather files by type and subject matter.

### Mark recordings as favorites

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.



2. In the list of recordings, do any of the following:

- Tap the recording you want to mark as a favorite, tap  [Alt text: the More Actions button], then tap  [Alt text: the Favorite button].
- Tap Edit above the list of recordings, select one or more recordings, tap  [Alt text: the Share button], tap Move to Folder, then tap Favorites. (If there isn't a Favorites folder, create one by entering Favorites in the field.)


Recordings marked as favorites automatically appear in the Favorites folder.

### Organize recordings into folders

You can group related recordings together into folders so you can locate them easily.






1. Go to the Voice Memos app  [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap Edit above the list of recordings.
3. Select one or more recordings, tap  [Alt text: the Share button], tap Move to Folder, then choose a folder.

To create a new folder, tap  [Alt text: the New Folder button], type a name for the folder, then tap Save.

To view your folders, tap  [Alt text: the Back button]; tap a folder to check its contents.

To return to the list of recordings, tap All Recordings.

### Delete or reorder folders

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Back button] to go to the list of folders.
3. Tap Edit above the folders, then do any of the following:
  - *Delete a folder:* Tap  [Alt text: the Delete button] next to the folder, then tap  [Alt text: the Trash button].
  - *Change the order of the folders:* Drag  [Alt text: the Reorder button] next to any folder.
4. Tap Done.

### Related

[Edit or delete a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Search for or rename a recording](#)

# Search for or rename a recording in Voice Memos on


# iPhone

## Metadata

**Summary:** In Voice Memos on iPhone, you can search for and rename a recording.


You can search for recordings or rename any recording.


### Search for a recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Swipe down from the middle of the list of recordings to reveal the search field.
3. Tap the search field, enter part or all of the recording name, then tap Search.

**Note:** You can also search for a word or phrase in a transcript by entering it in this field.

### Rename a recording

A recording is initially saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if [Location Services is turned on](#) in Settings  [ALT N/A] > Privacy & Security. You can change the name.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap the recording, tap the name, then type a new one.

### Related

[Organize recordings in Voice Memos on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Share a recording](#)




## Share a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

## Metadata




**Summary:** In Voice Memos on iPhone, share a recording with another device via AirDrop, Messages, Mail, and more.

You can share one or more audio recordings with others (or send it to your Mac or another device) using AirDrop, Mail, Messages, and more.

### Share a recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to share, then tap  [Alt text: the More Actions button] .
3. Tap Share, choose a sharing option, select or enter a recipient, then tap Done or  [Alt text: the Send button] .

### Share more than one recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap Edit above the list of recordings, then select the recordings you want to share.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Share button] , choose a sharing option, select or enter a recipient, then tap  [Alt text: the Send button] or Done.

### Related

[Make a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone](#)



NAV TITLE: [Duplicate a recording](#)

## Duplicate a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

### Metadata

Summary: In Voice Memos on iPhone, duplicate a recording.

You can duplicate a recording if you need another copy of it. You can also make changes to the copy, save it, and [give it a new name](#).

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. In the list of recordings, tap a recording, tap  [Alt text: the More Actions button] , then tap Duplicate.

The duplicate appears right below the original version in the list and has “copy” added to its name. To change the name, tap it, then type a new one.

### Related

[Share a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone](#)



---


# Wallet

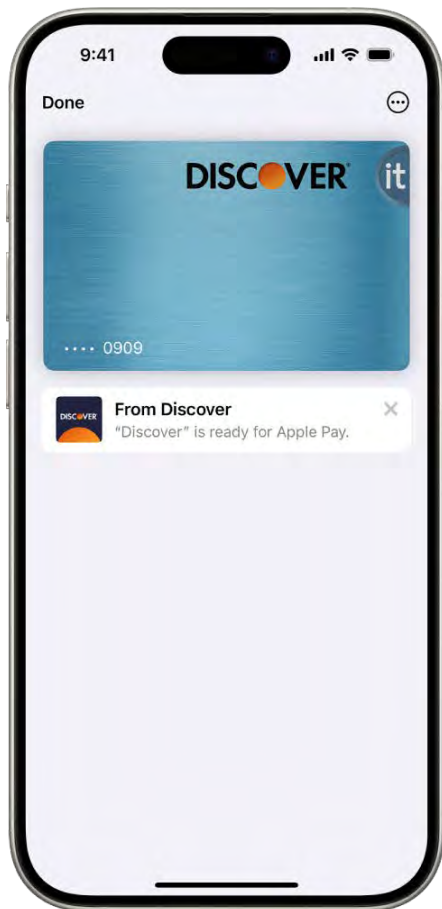
NAV TITLE: [About Apple Wallet](#)

## About Apple Wallet on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, use Wallet to keep cards and passes in one place for easy access.

Use the Wallet app  [ALT N/A] to securely keep your credit and debit cards for Apple Pay, driver's license or state ID, transit cards, event tickets, keys, and more—in one convenient place for easy access.



[Alt text: Apple Card in Wallet, showing the More button at the top right. Below the card image are the card balance, weekly activity, and the payment button. The Savings Account current balance and latest card

transactions are at the bottom.]

## Payment cards for Apple Pay

- COMMENT - #ba #wallet - Discover Card; approved 2024-07 [Crystal]

- [Credit and debit cards](#)

- P9

[Apple Cash \(U.S. only\)](#)

- P9

[Apple Card \(U.S. only\)](#)



[Alt text: A transit card in the Wallet app, showing the balance in the account and the Add Money button.]

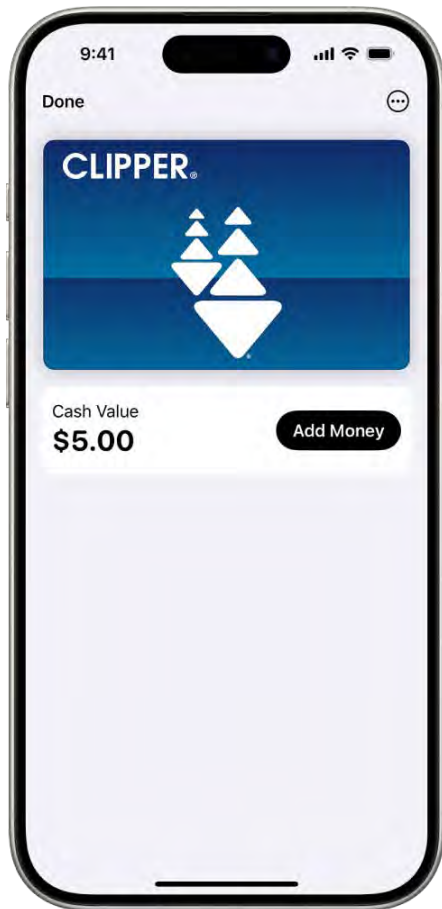
## Identity cards

- COMMENT - #ba #wallet - Drivers license; approved 2024-07 [Crystal]

- [Driver's license or state ID](#)

- [Employee badge](#)

- [Student ID card](#)

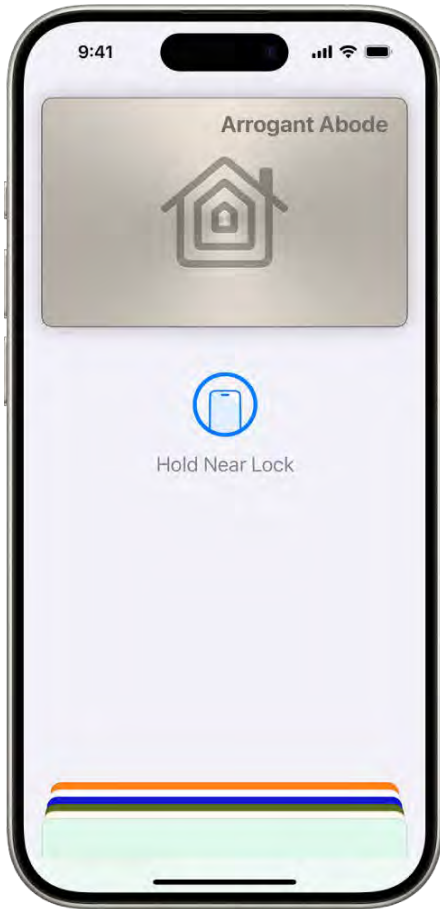


[Alt text: A transit card in the Wallet app, showing the balance in the account and the Add Money button.]

### **Transit and tickets**

- COMMENT - #ba #wallet - Clipper; approved 2024-07 [Crystal]

- [Transit cards](#)
- [Boarding passes and tickets](#)



[Alt text: A transit card in the Wallet app, showing the balance in the account and the Add Money button.]

### Keys

- COMMENT - #ba #wallet - home key; approved 2024-07 [Crystal]

- Home keys
- Resident keys
- Hotel keys
- Car keys
- Scooter keys



[Alt text: A boarding pass in the Wallet app, showing the flight information and a QR code.]

### And more

- [Passes, coupons, reward cards, and loyalty cards](#)
- [Verifiable COVID-19 vaccination cards](#)
- [Apple Account](#)

In the U.S., Apple Pay is a service provided by Apple Payments Services LLC, a subsidiary of Apple Inc. In other countries and regions, Apple Pay is a service provided by certain Apple affiliates, as designated by the [Apple Pay privacy notice](#). Neither Apple Inc. nor Apple Payments Services LLC nor any Apple affiliate is a bank. Any card used in Apple Pay is offered by the card issuer.

NAV TITLE: [Set up Apple Pay](#)

## Set up Apple Pay in Wallet on iPhone

Metadata

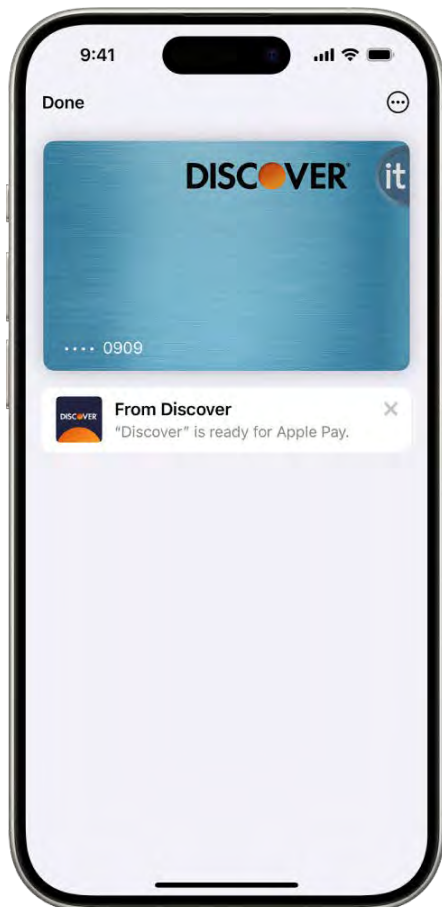
**Summary:** Add your debit, credit, or prepaid cards to Wallet on iPhone, then use Apple Pay to make secure payments in stores, for transit, in apps, and on websites.

Using Apple Pay can be simpler than using a physical card, and safer too. With your cards stored in the Wallet app, you can use Apple Pay to make secure payments in stores, for transit, in apps, and on websites that support Apple Pay.

**Note:** The availability of Apple Pay and its features varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Countries and regions that support Apple Pay](#).

To set up Apple Pay, add your debit, credit, and prepaid cards to Wallet.

- COMMENT - #ba #wallet - Discover Card; approved 2024-07 [Crystal]




[Alt text: The Wallet screen, showing a credit card.]

(Apple Card and Apple Cash are available only in the U.S.)

### Add a debit or credit card


1. Go to the Wallet app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap  [Alt text: the Add Card button] . You may be asked to [sign in to your Apple Account](#).
3. Add any of the following types of cards:
  - *An NFC-enabled card:* Tap Debit or Credit Card, tap Continue, then hold your iPhone near the chip on the card.
  - *A card without a chip:* Tap Debit or Credit Card, tap Continue, then position your card so that it appears in the camera frame, or enter the card details manually.
  - P9  
*Apple Card:* See [Use Apple Card on iPhone](#).
  - *Your previous cards:* Tap Previous Cards, then choose any cards you previously used. These cards may include the card associated with your Apple Account, cards you use with Apple Pay on your other devices, cards you [added to Safari AutoFill](#), or cards you removed from Wallet. Tap Continue, authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID, then follow the onscreen instructions.
  - *A card from a supported app:* Tap the app of your bank or card issuer (below From Apps on Your iPhone).

The card issuer determines whether your card is eligible for Apple Pay, and may ask you for additional information to complete the verification process.


### **Set the default card for payments**

The first debit or credit card you add to Wallet becomes the default card. To choose a different card, do the following:

1. Go to the Wallet app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the card you want to set as the default, then drag it to the front of the stack.

### **Connect your account to Wallet**

With participating card issuers, you can connect your account to Wallet. When your account is connected, you can see your account balance, full transaction history, and more in Wallet.

1. Go to the Wallet app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the card you want to connect.
3. Tap Get Started, then follow the onscreen instructions to connect your account.

If you don't see Get Started below the card, the card issuer doesn't support this feature. See the Apple Support article [View your account balance and full transaction history in the Wallet app](#).


### **View and manage card details**

P9

If you have Apple Card, see [Use Apple Card on iPhone](#). For other cards, do the following:

1. Go to the Wallet app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the card.

**Note:** The latest transactions may appear, showing authorized amounts that may differ from the amount of the payment charged to your account. For example, a gas station may request an authorization of \$99, even though you pumped only \$25 worth of gasoline. To see the final charges, see the statement from your card issuer, which includes all Apple Pay transactions.

3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button ] , then tap any of the following:
  - **Card Number:** View the last four digits of the card number and Device Account Number—the number transmitted to the merchant.
  - **Card Details:** See more information; change the billing address; turn the transaction history on or off; or remove the card from Wallet.
  - **Notifications:** Turn notifications on or off.

In the U.S., Apple Pay is a service provided by Apple Payments Services LLC, a subsidiary of Apple Inc. In other countries and regions, Apple Pay is a service provided by certain Apple affiliates, as designated by the [Apple Pay privacy notice](#). Neither Apple Inc. nor Apple Payments Services LLC nor any Apple affiliate is a bank. Any card used in Apple Pay is offered by the card issuer.

## Related

- [Use Apple Pay for contactless payments on iPhone](#)
- [Use Apple Pay in apps and on the web on iPhone](#)
- [Change your Wallet & Apple Pay settings on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use Apple Pay for contactless payments](#)

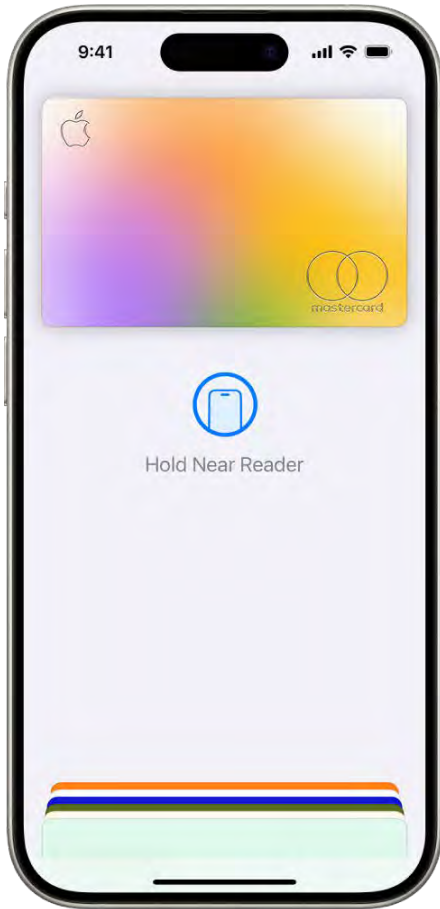
# Use Apple Pay for contactless payments on iPhone

## Metadata

**Summary:** Store your cards in Wallet on iPhone and use Apple Pay for contactless payments in stores, restaurants, and more.

With your payment cards stored in the Wallet app on iPhone, you can use Apple Pay for secure, contactless payments in stores, restaurants, and more.



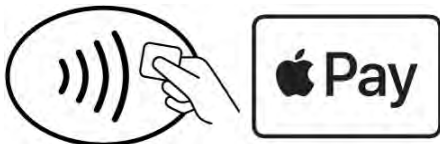


[Alt text: A credit card on the Wallet screen. Below the card is “Hold Near Reader.”]

**Note:** Apple Pay is available in certain countries and regions; see [Countries and regions that support Apple Pay](#).

### Find places that accept Apple Pay

You can use Apple Pay where you see contactless payment symbols such as the following:



[Alt text: Symbols on contactless readers.]

**Note:** In addition to accepting Apple Pay, the merchant must accept your payment card and payment network.

In other countries and regions, you may see different contactless payment symbols. See [Learn where to use Apple Pay](#).

### Pay with your default card on an iPhone with Face ID

1. Double-click the side button.
2. When your default card appears, authenticate with Face ID or your passcode.
3. Hold the top of your iPhone near the card reader until you see Done or a checkmark on the screen.

#### **Pay with your default card on an iPhone with Touch ID**


1. Rest your finger on Touch ID.
2. Hold the top of your iPhone near the card reader until you see Done or a checkmark on the screen.

#### **Pay with a different card instead of your default card**

1. When your default card appears, tap it, then choose another card.
2. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
3. Hold the top of your iPhone near the card reader until you see Done or a checkmark on the screen.

#### **Use a loyalty or rewards card and Apple Pay**

At participating stores, you can receive or redeem rewards when you use Apple Pay.

1. [Add your rewards card](#) to the Wallet app.
2. To have your rewards card appear automatically when you're in the store, tap  [Alt text: the More button] on the card, tap Pass Details, then turn on Automatic Selection.
3. At the payment terminal in the store, present your rewards card by holding iPhone near the contactless reader.

Apple Pay then switches to your default payment card to pay for the purchase. In some stores, you can apply your rewards card and payment card in one step. In other stores, you need to wait until the terminal or cashier asks for payment.

**Note:** If you have Location Services turned on, the location of your iPhone at the time you make a payment may be sent to Apple and the card issuer to help prevent fraud. See [Control the location information you share](#).

In the U.S., Apple Pay is a service provided by Apple Payments Services LLC, a subsidiary of Apple Inc. In other countries and regions, Apple Pay is a service provided by certain Apple affiliates, as designated by the [Apple Pay privacy notice](#).

Neither Apple Inc. nor Apple Payments Services LLC nor any Apple affiliate is a bank. Any card used in Apple Pay is offered by the card issuer.

#### **Related**

[Use Apple Pay in apps and on the web on iPhone](#)

[Change your Wallet & Apple Pay settings on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use Apple Pay in apps and on the web](#)

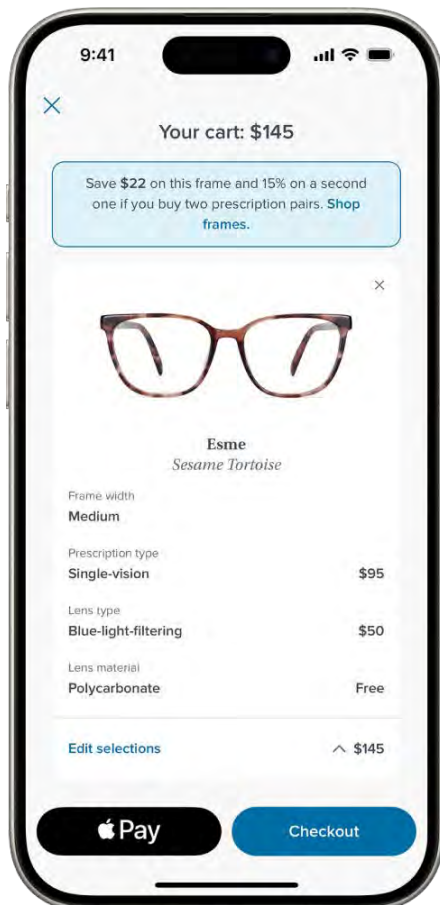
## Use Apple Pay in apps and on the web on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** Make Apple Pay purchases on iPhone in apps, App Clips, and on the web using Safari wherever you see the Apple Pay button.

You can make purchases using Apple Pay in apps, in App Clips, and on the web wherever you see the Apple Pay button. (Available in certain countries and regions; see [Countries and regions that support Apple Pay](#).)

- COMMENT - #ba #wallet - Warby Parker screen; approved 2024-07 [Crystal]



[Alt text: The shopping cart of an app showing the prices of selected items. The Apple Pay button is at the bottom left.

**Pay in an app, an App Clip, or Safari**

1. During checkout, tap the Apple Pay button.
2. Review the payment information and set any of the following:

- Payment method

You can choose a different payment card; if available, you can also pay with rewards or installments (available on cards from participating banks and card providers in certain markets; subject to eligibility and approval).

- Billing and shipping addresses
- Contact information

**Tip:** If you subscribe to iCloud+, you can [use Hide My Email](#) to keep your real email address private.

3. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to complete the payment.

See the Apple Support articles [Pay with rewards using Apple Pay](#) and [Pay with installments using Apple Pay](#).

### **Use Apple Pay in third-party browsers on Mac, PC, and other devices**

When you shop in a supported third-party web browser, you can complete the purchase with Apple Pay using the payment information on your iPhone. (Not available in all countries or regions.)

1. At checkout, click Apple Pay, then [scan the code](#) using your iPhone camera.
2. On your iPhone, review the payment information and set any of the following:

- Payment method
- Billing and shipping addresses
- Contact information

3. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to complete the payment.

In the U.S., Apple Pay is a service provided by Apple Payments Services LLC, a subsidiary of Apple Inc. In other countries and regions, Apple Pay is a service provided by certain Apple affiliates, as designated by the [Apple Pay privacy notice](#). Neither Apple Inc. nor Apple Payments Services LLC nor any Apple affiliate is a bank. Any card used in Apple Pay is offered by the card issuer.

### **Related**

[Use Apple Pay for contactless payments on iPhone](#)

[Change your Wallet & Apple Pay settings on iPhone](#)

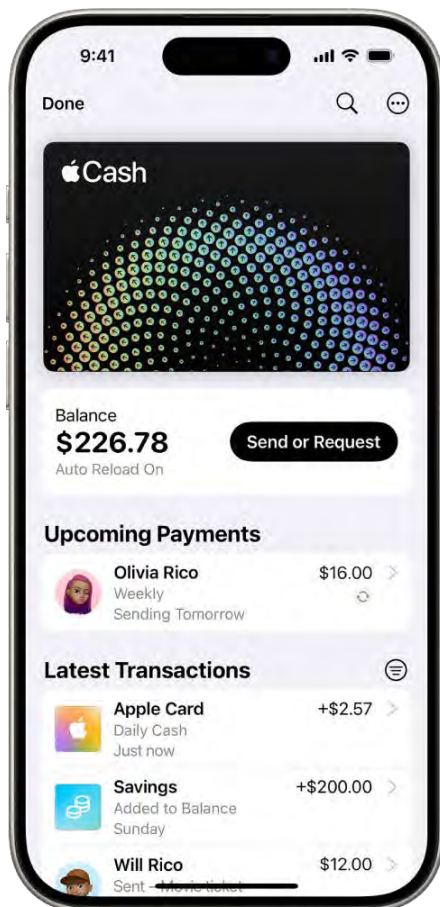
[Apple Support article: Track orders and purchases in Apple Wallet](#)

# Use Apple Cash in Wallet on iPhone

## Metadata

**Summary:** With Apple Cash on iPhone, make purchases using Apple Pay or the virtual card number, send and receive money, transfer your Apple Cash balance to your bank account.

With Apple Cash (available in the U.S.), you can send and receive money, get cash back from Apple Card transactions, make purchases, and transfer your Apple Cash balance to your bank account.





[Alt text: The Apple Cash card in Wallet, showing the More button at the top right, the current balance and the Send or Request button in the middle, and the latest transactions at the bottom.]

## Set up Apple Cash

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Wallet & Apple Pay.
2. Tap Apple Cash, then follow the onscreen instructions.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [Set up Apple Cash](#).




### **Make purchases with Apple Cash**

- *At payment terminals:* At locations that accept Visa, you can use [Apple Pay](#) for contactless payments.
- *In apps or on the web:* Use [Apple Pay](#) in apps and on the web.
- *With the virtual card number:* Go to the Wallet app  [ALT N/A], tap the Apple Cash card, tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Card Number.

See the Apple Support article [Use your virtual card number for Apple Cash](#).

### **Send and receive payments with Apple Cash in Messages**

You can start a person-to-person payment in the following ways:

- *In Wallet:* Go to the Wallet app  [ALT N/A], tap the Apple Cash card, tap Send or Request, then follow the prompts.
- *In Messages:* Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A], start a new message or tap an existing conversation, tap  [Alt text: the Apps button], tap Apple Cash, then follow the prompts.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [Send and receive money with Apple Cash](#).


### **Send Apple Cash with Tap to Cash**

With Tap to Cash, you can send Apple Cash to someone by holding your iPhone or Apple Watch near their iPhone or Apple Watch, without having to share your phone number or email address.

**Note:** Tap to Cash is supported on all iPhone models with iOS 18 and all Apple Watch models with watchOS 11.



[Alt text: The Tap to Cash screen in Wallet, showing \$20 being transferred, and the Decline and Accept buttons at the bottom of the screen.]

1. Go to the Wallet app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Apple Cash card, tap Send or Request, then tap Tap to Cash.
3. Enter the amount, add a note (optional), then tap Next.
4. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
5. Hold your iPhone near the recipient's iPhone or Apple Watch.
6. Continue holding the devices near each other until the payment information appears on the recipient's screen.
7. The recipient can choose Accept or Decline.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [Use Tap to Cash](#).

### **Manage your Apple Cash**

1. Go to the Wallet app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.

2. Tap the Apple Cash card, then tap  [Alt text: the More button] .

3. Do any of the following:

- *Add money or set up Auto Reload:* See the Apple Support article [Add money to Apple Cash](#).
- *Transfer funds to your bank:* See the Apple Support article [Transfer money in Apple Cash to your bank account or debit card](#).
- *Set up and manage recurring payments:* See the Apple Support article [Send and receive money with Apple Cash](#).
- *See the virtual card number:* Tap Card Number, then use the information for purchases in apps or on the web.
- *View card details:* Update your bank account information, request transaction statements, contact support, and more.

Apple Cash and sending and receiving payments through Apple Pay are services provided by Green Dot Bank, member FDIC.

In the U.S., Apple Pay is a service provided by Apple Payments Services LLC, a subsidiary of Apple Inc. In other countries and regions, Apple Pay is a service provided by certain Apple affiliates, as designated by the [Apple Pay privacy notice](#). Neither Apple Inc. nor Apple Payments Services LLC nor any Apple affiliate is a bank. Any card used in Apple Pay is offered by the card issuer.

## Related

[Apple Cash Support website](#)

[Use Apple Cash with Family Sharing on iPhone \(U.S. only\)](#)

[Use Apple Card on iPhone](#)

P9 NAV TITLE: [Apple Card](#)

## Use Apple Card on iPhone

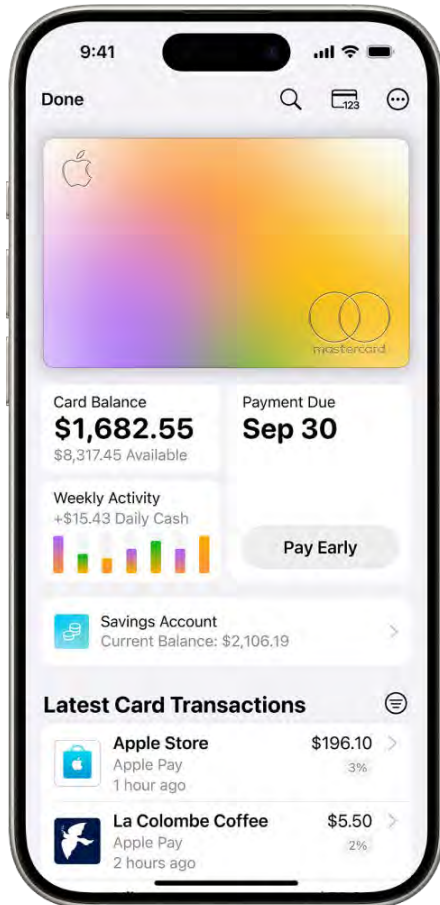
### Metadata

**Summary:** In the Wallet app on iPhone, use Apple Card to make purchases, review transactions, schedule payments, and more.





Apple Card (available in the U.S.) is a credit card created by Apple and designed to help you lead a healthier financial life. You can sign up for Apple Card in the Wallet app on iPhone in minutes and start using it with Apple Pay right away in stores, in apps, or online worldwide. Apple Card gives you easy-to-understand, real-time views of your latest transactions and balance right in Wallet, and Apple Card support is available anytime by simply sending a text from Messages.

- COMMENT - #ba #business or #locations La Colombe Coffee; approved 2024-07 [Crystal]



[Alt text: Apple Card in Wallet, showing the More button at the top right. Below the card image are the card balance, weekly activity, and the payment button. The Savings Account current balance and latest card transactions are at the bottom.]



### Apply for Apple Card

1. Go to the Wallet app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Add Card button], then tap Apply for Apple Card.





For more information, see the Apple Support article [How to apply for Apple Card](#).

### Make purchases with Apple Card

You can make purchases with Apple Card in the following ways:

- *With Apple Pay:* At contactless payment terminals and in apps and on the web.
- *With the virtual card number:* In the Wallet app  [ALT N/A], tap Apple Card, then tap  [Alt text: the Card Number button] to see the card number, expiration date, and security code.
- *With the titanium card:* In stores, restaurants, and other locations where Apple Pay isn't yet accepted, use the physical card.

### **View transactions, make payments, and manage your Apple Card**

1. Go to the Wallet app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apple Card.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Review your spending:* Scroll down to see recent transactions or tap  [Alt text: the Search button] to search. Tap Weekly Activity or Monthly Activity to see your spending for that period.  
  
See the Apple Support article [See your Apple Card spending history](#).
  - *Make a one-time payment or schedule automatic payments:* Tap the payment button. See the Apple Support article [How to make Apple Card payments](#).
  - *See the virtual card number:* Tap  [Alt text: the Card Number button] to see the card number, expiration date, and security code.
  - *Manage your account:* Tap  [Alt text: the More button] to review rewards and offers, see account details, contact support, manage notifications, and more.

**Tip:** Add the [Apple Card widget](#) to your Home Screen to see your balance, available credit, and spending activity at a glance.

1. Daily Cash may not be divided between Apple Cash and a Savings account. Apple Card owners and co-owners may individually change where their Daily Cash is deposited at any time. To open Savings, you must add Apple Card to Wallet on an iPhone or iPad with the latest version of iOS or iPadOS. Apple is not a financial institution. Apple Card and Savings are issued and provided by Goldman Sachs Bank USA, Salt Lake City Branch. Member FDIC.

2. Apple Cash is provided by Green Dot Bank. Member FDIC.

In the U.S., Apple Pay is a service provided by Apple Payments Services LLC, a subsidiary of Apple Inc. In other countries and regions, Apple Pay is a service provided by certain Apple affiliates, as designated by the [Apple Pay privacy notice](#).

Neither Apple Inc. nor Apple Payments Services LLC nor any Apple affiliate is a bank. Any card used in Apple Pay is offered by the card issuer.

### **Related**

[Apple Card Support website](#)

[Apple Support article: Set up and use Savings in Apple Wallet](#)

[Use Apple Card with Family Sharing on iPhone \(U.S. only\)](#)

NAV TITLE: [Passes, loyalty cards, tickets, and more](#)

## Use passes in Wallet on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** In Wallet on iPhone, keep your rewards cards, boarding passes, movie and event tickets, and more in one place for easy access. Earn points on a loyalty card, use a coupon at a store, board a flight, and more.

Use the Wallet app to keep all your passes—such as loyalty and rewards cards, coupons, boarding passes, movie and event tickets, and more—in one convenient place for easy access. Passes can include useful information, such as the points on a loyalty card, the balance on your coffee card, a coupon’s expiration date, or boarding information for a flight.

- COMMENT - #ba #wallet - UA pass; approved 2024-07 [Crystal]

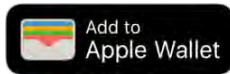


[Alt text: A boarding pass in the Wallet app, showing flight information and the QR code at the bottom.]

## Add a pass to Apple Wallet

When you do something like purchase a ticket, you often have the option to add it to Apple Wallet. You may also get a supported pass from a website or app, a QR code, AirDrop sharing, or after you use Apple Pay with a participating merchant.

1. Tap Add to Apple Wallet.




[Alt text: The Add to Apple Wallet button.]

**Note:** If you don't see Add to Apple Wallet, contact the merchant or company that issued it to make sure they support passes in the Wallet app.

2. Follow the onscreen instructions or tap Add in the upper-right corner.

## Use a pass

1. Access the pass on your iPhone in any of the following ways:
  - On the Lock Screen, tap the pass notification. If prompted, authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
  - If Automatic Selection is turned on for the pass, double-click the side button ([on an iPhone with Face ID](#)) or double-click the Home button ([on other iPhone models](#)). If prompted, authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
  - Go to the Wallet app  [ALT N/A], then tap the pass.
2. To use the pass, do one of the following:
  - *Contactless pass:* Hold the top of your iPhone near the pass reader until Done or a checkmark appears on the screen.
  - *Pass with a barcode or QR code:* Scan the code using the reader.

## Related

[Apple Support article: Add, use, and share boarding passes, tickets, and other passes in Apple Wallet](#)

[Apple Support article: Use Express Mode with transit cards, passes, and keys in Apple Wallet](#)  
[Change your Wallet & Apple Pay settings on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Apple Account](#)

# Check your Apple Account balance in Wallet on iPhone

Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, add your Apple Account to Wallet to check the balance, add money, redeem Apple Gift Cards, and buy Apple products, accessories, apps, games, and more online.


In the Wallet app, you can check the balance of your Apple Account, add money, and redeem Apple Gift Cards. Use your Apple Account balance to buy products, accessories, games, apps, subscriptions like iCloud+ and Apple Music, and more. You can even use your Apple Account balance as a quick, convenient way to pay at the Apple Store (not available in all countries and regions) or apple.com.

### **Add Apple Account to Apple Wallet and see the account balance**

1. Go to the Wallet app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Add Card button ], then tap Add Apple Account.



The account balance appears below the card.

### **Add money to your Apple Account balance**

1. Go to the Wallet app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apple Account, then tap Add Money.
3. Choose the amount, then follow the onscreen instructions to complete the payment.

### **Redeem an Apple Gift Card or code**


When you receive an Apple Gift Card or code, you can add the funds to your Apple Account balance.

1. Go to the Wallet app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apple Account, tap  [Alt text: the More button ], then tap Redeem.
3. Tap Use Camera, then position iPhone so that the gift card appears in the frame.

Alternatively, you can tap Enter Code Manually, then follow the onscreen instructions.

### **Use your Apple Account balance at the Apple Store**

During checkout at the Apple Store (not available in all countries and regions), you can pay with your Apple Account balance using Apple Pay.

1. Go to the Wallet app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apple Account, then double-click the side button.
3. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
4. Hold the top of your iPhone near the card reader until you see Done or a checkmark on the screen.

## Related

[Apple Support article: What you can buy with your Apple Gift Card or Apple Account balance](#)

[Sign in and manage your Apple Account on iPhone](#)

[About Apple Wallet on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Organize your Wallet](#)


# Organize your cards, keys, and passes in Wallet on iPhone

## Metadata

**Summary:** In Wallet on iPhone, you can set the default payment card, reorder the cards, archive expired passes, and remove the cards you don't need anymore.

In the Wallet app, you can easily organize the cards, keys, and passes for your convenience. Set the default payment card, reorder the cards, archive expired passes, and remove the cards you don't need anymore.

## Rearrange your cards, keys, and passes


1. Go to the Wallet app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold a card you want to move.
3. Drag the card to a new position in the stack.


## Hide or archive expired passes

Go to Settings  [ALT N/A ] > Wallet & Apple Pay, then turn on Hide Expired Passes.

## Unhide or restore expired passes



To restore an expired pass to the Wallet stack, do the following:

1. Go to the Wallet app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down to the bottom of the stack, then tap View Expired Passes.
3. Choose the pass you want to restore, then tap Unhide.

To unhide all your expired passes, go to Settings  [ALT N/A ] > Wallet & Apple Pay, then turn off Hide Expired Passes.

## Permanently remove a pass from Wallet

1. Go to the Wallet app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.

2. Tap the pass you want to remove, then tap  [Alt text: the More button] or  [Alt text: the More Info button] .
3. Tap Remove Pass.

### Related

[Set up Apple Pay in Wallet on iPhone](#)

[Use passes in Wallet on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Remove payment cards](#)

## Remove payment cards from Apple Wallet on iPhone



### Metadata

**Summary:** Remove cards that you don't use anymore on iPhone. You can also remove debit and credit cards from Apple Pay if your iPhone is lost or stolen.

In the Wallet app, you can remove cards that you don't use anymore. You can also remove debit and credit cards from Apple Pay if your iPhone is lost or stolen.

**Note:** If you sign out of iCloud in Settings > [your name], all your credit and debit cards for Apple Pay are removed from iPhone. You can add the cards again the next time you sign in to your Apple Account.

### Remove a debit or credit card from your iPhone


1. Go to the Wallet app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the card you want to remove, then tap  [Alt text: the More button] .
3. Tap Card Details, then tap Remove Card.

If you remove a card, you can add it again later.

### Remove your cards from Apple Pay if your iPhone is lost or stolen

If you turned on [Find My iPhone](#), you can use it to help locate and secure your iPhone.

To remove your cards from Apple Pay, do any of the following:

- *On another iPhone or iPad:* Go to Settings  [ALT N/A ] > [your name], select the lost iPhone, then tap Remove Items (below Wallet & Apple Pay).
- *Using a web browser:* Sign in to your [Apple Account](#). Click Devices, then select the lost device. In the Wallet & Apple Pay section, click Remove Items.
- Call the issuers of your cards.

## Related

[Mark a device as lost in Find My on iPhone](#)

[Organize your cards, keys, and passes in Wallet on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Change Wallet & Apple Pay settings](#)


# Change your Wallet & Apple Pay settings on iPhone

## Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, customize your preferences for Wallet & Apple Pay in Settings.

In Settings, you can customize your preferences for Wallet & Apple Pay.


## Customize your Wallet & Apple Pay settings

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Wallet & Apple Pay.
2. Adjust any of the following:
  - *Location:* Control the [location information you share](#).
  - *Siri & Search:* Allow [Siri](#) to make suggestions across apps based on the way you use Wallet & Apple Pay. You can also allow suggestions and content from Wallet & Apple Pay to appear in [Search](#) and [widgets](#).
  - *Notifications:* Change [notification settings](#).
  - *Live Activities:* Turn on or off [Live Activities on the Lock Screen](#).
  - *Cellular Data:* Turn on or off [cellular data usage](#).
  - P9
    - *Apple Cash:* Turn on or off [Apple Cash](#).
  - *Double-Click Side Button:* (on an iPhone with Face ID) Your cards and passes appear on the screen when you double-click the side button.
  - *Double-Click Home Button:* (on an iPhone with a Home button) Your cards and passes appear on the screen when you double-click the Home button.
  - *Hide Expired Passes:* Turn on to [archive old passes](#).
  - *Express Transit Card:* Choose a card to pay for transit automatically without requiring authentication. See the Apple Support article [Use Express Mode with transit cards, passes, and keys in Apple Wallet](#).
  - *Transaction Defaults:* Enter your default information for [Apple Pay in apps and on the web](#).




- *Pay Later*: Shows available payment options from your cards in Wallet when you check out with Apple Pay.
- *Rewards*: Shows rewards from your cards in Wallet when you check out with Apple Pay.
- *Compatible Cards*: Checks your [saved cards in Safari AutoFill](#) for compatibility with Apple Pay and allows you to use them in Wallet.
- *Allow Payments on Mac*: Allows iPhone to confirm payments on your nearby Mac.
- *Add Orders to Wallet*: Orders from participating merchants are automatically added to Wallet for [order tracking](#).
- *Order Notifications*: Receive notifications for order tracking.
- *Other Pay Later Options*: See additional pay later services not associated with your cards in Wallet when you check out with Apple Pay.


### Change your default shipping and contact information

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Wallet & Apple Pay.
2. Below Transaction Defaults, set your shipping address, email, and phone number.

### Keep your passes up to date on your other devices

Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > iCloud, then turn on Wallet.

### Allow access to passes when iPhone is locked

Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Face ID & Passcode or Touch ID & Passcode, then turn on Wallet (below Allow Access When Locked).

### Related

[Set up Apple Pay in Wallet on iPhone](#)

---

# Weather

NAV TITLE: [Check the weather](#)

## Check the weather on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, check the weather and forecast in your current location.

Check the weather for your current location. View the upcoming hourly and 10-day forecast, see severe weather information, and more.




[Alt text: The Weather screen showing, from top to bottom: the location, current temperature, the high and low temperatures for the day, hourly forecast, and 10-day forecast. A row of dots at the bottom center shows how many locations are in the location list. At the bottom-right corner is the Location List button and at the bottom-left corner is the Show Map button.]

**Note:** Weather uses Location Services to get the forecast for your current location. To make sure Location Services is turned on, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Weather. Turn on Precise Location to increase the accuracy of the forecast in your current location.


### Check the local forecast and conditions

1. Go to the Weather app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. The details for your current location are shown. If you don't see them, tap  [Alt text] the Edit Cities button , then tap My Location.

Swipe up to view weather details such as:

- *Hourly forecast:* Swipe the hourly display left or right.

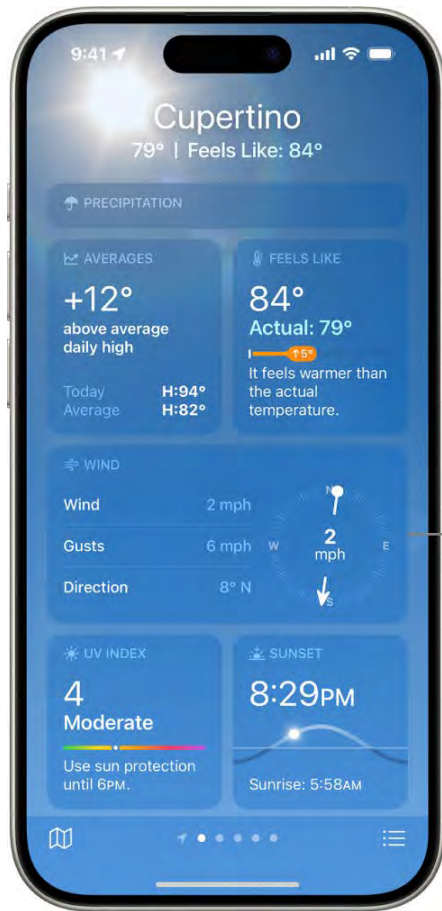
**Tip:** Tap the hourly forecast to see the hourly temperature forecast, chance of precipitation, high and low temperatures, and more. Tap  [Alt text] the Chart Condition button to change the displayed weather condition. Swipe left to see the same information for the days ahead.

- *10-day forecast:* View weather conditions, chance of precipitation, and high and low temperatures for the coming days.
- *Severe weather alerts:* View updates for weather events such as winter storms and flash floods. Tap the alert to read the full government-issued alert.
- *Maps:* View a map that displays the temperature, precipitation, air quality, or wind conditions in the area. Tap the map to view it in full screen or to change the map view between temperature, precipitation, air quality, and wind. See [View weather maps](#).
- *Air quality:* Tap to view health information and details about air pollutants.

**Note:** The air quality scale appears above the hourly forecast when air quality reaches a particular level for that location. For some locations, the air quality scale always appears above the hourly forecast.

- *News:* Read a news article when there's a story relevant to the weather in that location.
- *Additional weather details:* View additional weather information such as the UV index, wind, visibility, moon phases, and more. Tap a weather detail for more features and information specific to that detail.

**Tip:** The Averages weather detail shows how today's temperature or precipitation compares to the historical average; tap it for additional information.






Tap a weather detail for more information.


[Alt text: The Weather screen showing the location at the top, and the current temperature and weather condition. The rest of the screen contains weather details for the following elements: air quality, precipitation, UV index, and sunset.]

Some Weather app features—such as severe weather alerts, air quality, next-hour precipitation, and news—aren’t available in all countries and regions. To learn about the data sources for the Weather app, see the Apple Support article [Feature availability and data sources in the Weather app](#).

### Customize the weather units




You can change the units used in weather data. This includes Fahrenheit or Celsius for temperature, and miles per hour, kilometers per hour, knots, or Beaufort for wind.

1. Go to the Weather app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Edit Cities button] .
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More button] , tap Units, then do any of the following:
  - *Change temperature units:* Tap Fahrenheit, Celsius, or “Use system setting.”

- *Change wind, precipitation, pressure, or distance units:* Tap  [Alt text: the Action Button menu] next to the current measurement unit, then choose an option.

### Send a report about the weather

You can report the weather in your location if it doesn't match what's shown in the Weather app.

1. Go to the Weather app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Edit Cities button], tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Report an Issue.
3. Tap the options that best describe the weather conditions in your location, then tap Submit.

The information you share with Apple isn't associated with your [Apple Account](#).

### Related

[Check the weather in other locations on iPhone](#)

[Use Weather widgets on iPhone](#)

[Learn the weather icons on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Check the weather in other locations](#)

## Check the weather in other locations on iPhone

### Metadata



**Summary:** Check the weather in other cities and locations with the Weather app on your iPhone.


Check the weather for any location around the world and quickly access forecasts for locations you save to your list.



[Alt text: The Weather screen showing a list of cities with the current time, temperature, forecast, and high and low temperatures. At the top of the screen is the search field and in the top-right corner is the More button.]

### Check the weather in another location

1. Go to the Weather app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Favorite Locations button] in the bottom-right corner of the screen.
3. Tap the search field at the top of the screen, then enter the name of the city, neighborhood, or location.




**Tip:** To see your Home and Work locations in search results, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Weather, then turn on Home and Work. Also make sure to [turn on Location Services](#) for Weather.


4. Tap the location in the search results to display the forecast.
5. Tap Cancel to close the forecast, then tap Cancel to clear the search results and return to the list.

**Note:** Neighborhood search results aren't available in all locations.






## Add a location to your list

You can add locations to the list to quickly check the weather in places important to you.

1. Go to the Weather app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
  - *While looking at the location list:* Tap the search field at the top of the list, enter the name of a city, neighborhood, or location that you want to add to your list, tap the location in the search results, then tap Add.
  - *While looking at one location's forecast:* Tap  [Alt text: the Weather Map button ] in the bottom-left corner of the screen, [change the location of the weather map](#), touch and hold where you want to add a location, then tap  [Alt text: the Add button ] .

To check the weather in locations you added to your list, swipe the iPhone screen left or right when viewing a location, or tap  [Alt text: the Favorite Locations button ], then tap a location.

## Delete and rearrange locations in your list

1. Go to the Weather app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Edit Cities button ] to display your list.
3. Do either of the following:
  - *Delete a location:* Swipe left on the location, then tap  [Alt text: the Delete button ] . Or, tap  [Alt text: the More button ], then tap Edit List.
  - *Rearrange the order of locations on your list:* Touch and hold the location, then move it up or down. Or, tap  [Alt text: the More button ], then tap Edit List.

Your list of locations stays up to date across your devices when you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#).

## Related

[Check the weather on iPhone](#)

[View weather maps on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [View weather maps](#)

## View weather maps on iPhone

### Metadata



**Summary:** On your iPhone, view full-screen temperature, precipitation, and air quality maps using the Weather app.

You can view full-screen precipitation, temperature, air quality, and wind maps in your location or other areas.



[Alt text: A temperature map of the surrounding area fills the iPhone screen. In the top-right corner, from top to bottom, are the Current Location, Favorite Locations, and Overlay Menu buttons. The Overlay Menu button is selected and displays the Precipitation, Temperature, Air Quality, and Wind buttons. The Precipitation button is selected. In the top-left corner is the Done button and the Precipitation Map Overlay Scale.]



### View a full-screen weather map

1. Go to the Weather app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Select a location, then do either of the following:
  - Tap  [Alt text: the Show Map button] at the bottom of the screen.
  - Scroll down, then tap the weather map.
3. Tap Done to close the map.




### Switch to a precipitation, temperature, air quality, or wind map

1. Go to the Weather app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.



2. View a full-screen map, then tap  [Alt text: the Overlay Menu button]
3. In a precipitation or wind forecast map, do any of the following:
  - *Show the timeline:* Tap near the bottom of the map.
  - *Change the duration of the timeline:* While viewing a precipitation map, tap  [Alt text: the Menu button] , then switch between 12-Hour Forecast and Next-Hour Forecast.
4. Tap Done to close the map.

### Change the location of the weather map

1. Go to the Weather app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. View a full-screen map, then do any of the following:
  - *Move the map:* Touch the screen and drag your finger.
  - *Zoom in and out:* Pinch the screen.
  - *View another location from your list:* Tap  [Alt text: the Favorite Locations button] .
  - *Return to your current location:* Tap  [Alt text: the Current Location button] .
  - *Add a location to your list, view its current conditions, or view it in Maps:* Touch and hold the location.
3. Tap Done to close the map.

### Related

[Check the weather on iPhone](#)

[Check the weather in other locations on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Manage weather notifications](#)





## Manage weather notifications on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** Manage the weather notifications you receive from the Weather app on your iPhone.

You can receive notifications when precipitation or certain severe weather events are forecasted in your current location. You can also receive notifications for locations you saved in your list.




### Turn on weather notifications for your location

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Privacy & Security > Location Services.
2. Tap Weather, then tap Always.
3. Turn on Precise Location to receive the most accurate notifications for your current location.
4. Go to the Weather app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
5. Tap  [Alt text: the Edit Cities button] to display your list, then tap  [Alt text: the More Options button], then tap Notifications.

If prompted, allow notifications from the Weather app.

6. Below Current Location, turn on notifications for Severe Weather and Next-Hour Precipitation (green is on).
7. Tap Done.

#### Turn on weather notifications for locations in your list

1. Go to the Weather app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Edit Cities button] to display your list.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the More Options button], then tap Notifications.

If prompted, allow notifications from the Weather app.

4. Below Your Locations, tap a location, then turn on notifications for Severe Weather and Next-Hour Precipitation (green is on).
5. Tap Done.

**Note:** Weather notifications aren't available in all countries or regions.

#### Related

[Check the weather on iPhone](#)

[Check the weather in other locations on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use Weather widgets](#)

## Use Weather widgets on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Use the Weather widget to check the weather at a glance on your iPhone Home Screen.

Use Weather widgets to check the forecast and other weather conditions at a glance on your iPhone Home Screen. You can choose from a variety of widget sizes and displays.

**Tip:** You can add more than one Weather widget to your Home Screen so you can quickly see weather conditions and forecasts in different locations.

### Change the location shown in the Weather widget

You can change the location that a Weather widget displays on your iPhone Home Screen.

1. [Add a widget to your Home Screen.](#)
2. Touch and hold the Weather widget on your Home Screen.
3. Tap Edit “Weather” or Edit Widget.
4. Tap My Location, then search for a city or tap [a location from your list](#) that you want to display.
5. Tap the screen outside the widget to return to your iPhone Home Screen.

Weather widgets are also available for the iPhone Lock Screen. See [Create a custom Lock Screen.](#)

### Related

[Check the weather on iPhone](#)

[Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPhone](#)

[Move apps and widgets on the iPhone Home Screen](#)


[Customize apps and widgets on the iPhone Home Screen](#)

NAV TITLE: [Learn the weather icons](#)

## Learn the weather icons on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On your iPhone, learn icons for different weather conditions in the Weather app.

The icons in the Weather app  [ALT N/A] indicate different weather conditions, like fog or haze. Here’s a list of some of the weather icons and what they mean.

(table aria-label=Basic gestures)

Icon	Description
	Sunrise

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing sunrise.]



Sunset

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing sunset.]



Clear / Mostly clear

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing clear or mostly clear.]



Partly cloudy

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing partly cloudy.]



Haze

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing haze.]



Fog

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing fog.]



Windy / Breezy

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing windy or breezy.]



Cloudy

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing cloudy.]



Thunderstorm

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing thunderstorm.]



Rain

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing rain.]



Heavy rain

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing heavy rain.]

---



Drizzle / Freezing drizzle

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing drizzle or freezing drizzle.]

---



Snow

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing snow.]

---



Heavy snow / Blizzard

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing heavy snow or blizzard.]

---



Freezing rain / Sleet / Wintry mix

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing freezing rain or sleet.]

---



Clear / Mostly clear (night)

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing nighttime clear.]

---



Partly cloudy (night)

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing nighttime partly cloudy.]

---



Drizzle (night)

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing nighttime drizzle.]

---

## Related

[Check the weather on iPhone](#)

[Check the weather in other locations on iPhone](#)

# Siri

NAV TITLE: [Use Siri](#)

## Use Siri on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, use Siri to translate, set a timer, find a location, book a reservation, report on the weather, and more.


Get everyday tasks done with just your voice. Use Siri to translate a phrase, set an alarm, find a location, report on the weather, get summarized knowledge from the web, and more.



[Alt text: An iPhone screen. Near the top of the screen, a notification from the Clock app shows that an alarm is turned on for 8:00 a.m. An icon at the bottom of the screen indicates that Siri is listening.]

## Set up Siri

If you didn't set up Siri when you first set up your iPhone, do the following:

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Siri, then tap Talk to Siri.
2. Choose "Hey Siri" or "Siri" (if you have that option).

**Note:** The option to say just "Siri" is available on [supported iPhone models](#) in some languages and regions.


To change additional Siri settings, see [Change Siri settings on iPhone](#).

## Activate Siri with your voice

When you activate Siri with your voice, Siri responds out loud.

Say "Siri" or "Hey Siri," then ask a question or make a request.

For example, say something like "Hey Siri, what's the weather for today?" or "Siri, set an alarm for 8 a.m."

**Tip:** To prevent iPhone from responding to "Siri" or "Hey Siri," place your iPhone face down, or go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Siri, tap "Listen for," then choose Off.

You can also activate Siri with your voice while you're wearing supported AirPods. See [Set up Siri](#) in the AirPods User Guide.

## Activate Siri with a button

When you activate Siri with a button, Siri responds silently when iPhone is in [silent mode](#).

When silent mode is off, Siri responds out loud. To change this behavior, see [Change how Siri responds](#).

1. Do one of the following:
  - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Press and hold the side button.
  - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Press and hold the Home button.
  - *With EarPods:* Press and hold the center or call button.
  - *With CarPlay:* Press and hold the voice command button on the steering wheel, or touch and hold the Home button on the CarPlay Home Screen. (See [Use Siri to Control CarPlay](#).)
  - *With Siri Eyes Free:* Press and hold the voice command button on your steering wheel.
2. Ask a question or make a request.

For example, say something like "What's 18 percent of 225?" or "Set the timer for 3 minutes."

You can also activate Siri with a touch on supported AirPods. See [Set up Siri](#) in the AirPods User Guide.

### Make back-to-back requests



After you activate Siri, you can make follow-up requests without reactivating it. (Available on [supported iPhone models](#) in some countries or regions.)

1. Activate Siri, then make a request.
2. Immediately after you make the request, make another one.

To override a request, interrupt Siri while it is speaking.


For example, say “Hey Siri, what’s the weather like in San Francisco? What about Cupertino?”

### Make a correction if Siri misunderstands you

- *While making back-to-back requests:* Repeat your request in a different way.
- *If you aren’t making back-to-back requests:* Tap  [Alt text: the Listen button], then repeat your request in a different way.
- *Spell out part of your request:* Tap  [Alt text: the Listen button], then repeat your request by spelling out any words that Siri didn’t understand. For example, say “Call,” then spell the person’s name.
- *Change a message before sending it:* Say “Change it.”
- *Edit your request with text:* If you see your request onscreen, you can edit it. Tap the request, then use the onscreen keyboard.

**Tip:** To correct your request without reactivating Siri, make the corrected request immediately after the original one. (Available on supported iPhone models in some countries and regions.)

### Type instead of speaking to Siri

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Type to Siri.
2. To type a request, activate Siri, then use the keyboard and text field to ask a question or make a request.

### More about Siri

Siri is designed to protect your information and to let you choose what you share. To learn more, see the [Ask Siri, Dictation & Privacy website](#) and the [Improve Siri and Dictation & Privacy website](#).

For some requests, iPhone must be [connected to the internet](#). Cellular charges may apply.

If Siri doesn’t work as expected on your iPhone, see the Apple Support article [If Siri isn’t working on your iPhone](#).

### Related

[Find out what Siri can do on iPhone](#)



## Find out what Siri can do on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** Use Siri on iPhone to find answers to questions and to perform tasks.

Use Siri on iPhone to get information and perform tasks. Siri and its response appear on top of what you're currently doing, allowing you to refer to information onscreen.

Siri is interactive. When Siri displays a web link, you can tap it to see more information in your default web browser. When the onscreen response from Siri includes buttons or controls, you can tap them to take further action. And you can tap Siri again to ask another question or do an additional task for you.

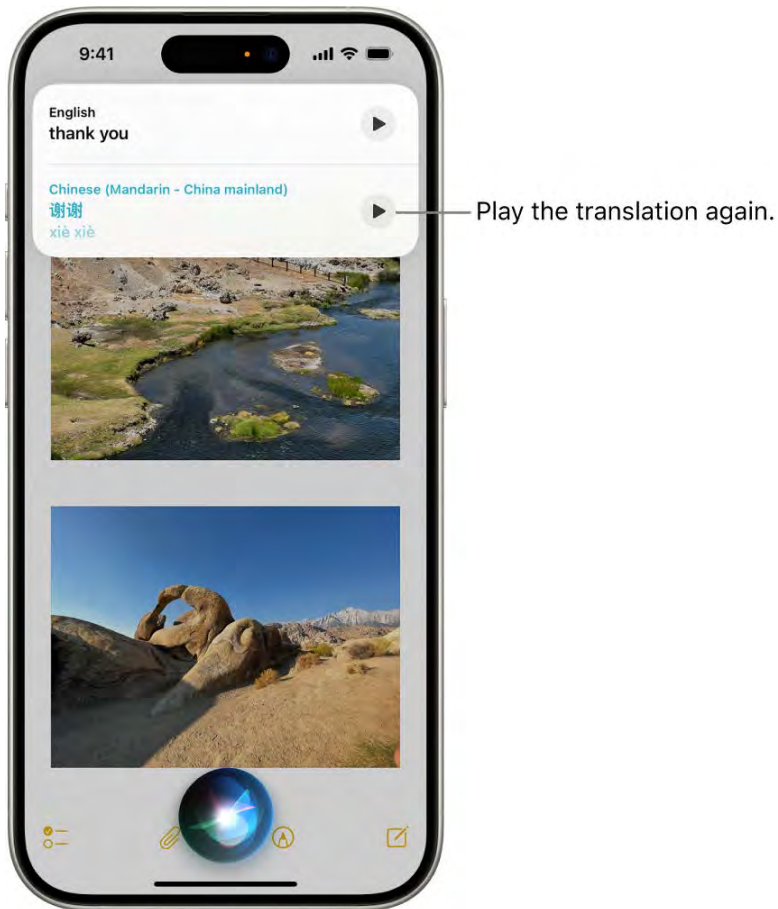
Below are some examples of what you can use Siri to do. Additional examples appear throughout this guide. You can also discover Siri capabilities on your iPhone and in apps by asking "What can I do here?"

### **Use Siri to answer questions**

Use Siri to quickly check facts, do calculations, or translate a phrase into another language. Get Siri's attention, then say something like:

- "What causes a rainbow?"
- "What does a cat sound like?"
- "What's the derivative of cosine x?"
- "Who made the first rocket that went to space?"
- "How do you say Thank You in Mandarin?"

- COMMENT - [#ba](#) [#siri](#) [#queries](#)



[Alt text: An iPhone screen with, at the bottom, the Siri listening indicator and, at the top, a response from Siri in the form of a translation [from English to Mandarin].]

### Use Siri with apps

You can use Siri to control apps with your voice. With Siri activated, say something like:

- “Set up a meeting with Gordon at 9” to create an event in Calendar.
- “Add artichokes to my groceries list” to add an item to Reminders.
- “Send a message to PoChun saying love you heart emoji” to send a text using Messages.
- “What’s my update?” to get an update about the weather in your area, the news, your reminders and calendar events, and more.

For more examples, see any of the following:

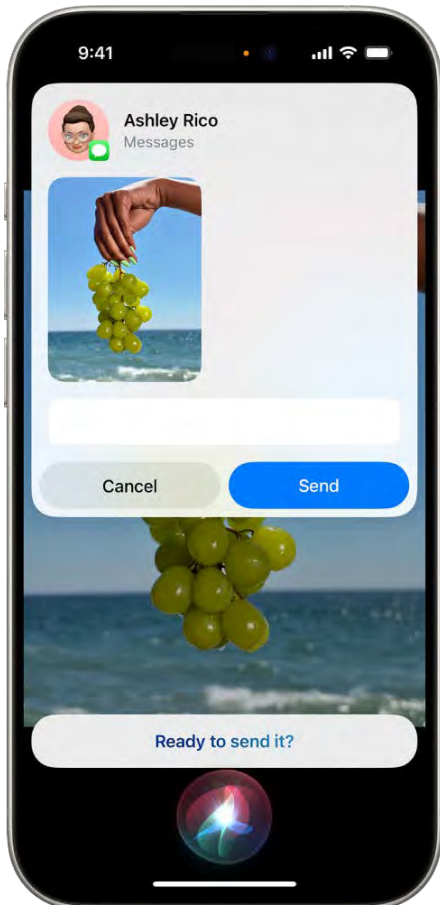
- [Announce calls, messages, and more with Siri on iPhone](#)
- [Use Siri to play music on iPhone](#)
- [Control your home using Siri on iPhone](#)
- [Get travel directions on iPhone](#)

- [Add Siri Shortcuts on iPhone](#)

### Use Siri to share information with contacts

You can share onscreen items like photos, webpages, content from Apple Music or Apple Podcasts, Maps locations, and more with [people in your contacts](#).

For example, when looking at a photo in your Photo library, activate Siri and say something like “Send this to mom” to create a new message with the photo.



[Alt text: An iPhone screen, with the Siri listening app at the bottom center and, above it, the response from Siri in the form of a text message ready to be sent.]

### Personalize your experience with Siri

The more you use Siri, the better it knows what you need. You can also tell Siri about yourself and change how and when Siri responds. See any of the following:

- [Siri Suggestions](#)
- [Tell Siri about yourself](#)
- [Change Siri settings on iPhone](#)

You can also [use accessibility features with Siri](#).

Siri is designed to protect your information, and you can choose what you share. To learn more, see the [Ask Siri, Dictation & Privacy website](#).

## Related

[Use Siri on iPhone](#)

[Siri website](#)

[Apple Support article: Use Siri to play music and podcasts](#)

NAV TITLE: [Tell Siri about yourself](#)



# Tell Siri about yourself on iPhone

## Metadata


**Summary:** On iPhone, tell Siri where you work, where you live, your relationships, and more to get personalized service.

You can provide information to Siri—including things like your home and work addresses, and your relationships—for a more personalized experience so you can say things like “Give me driving directions home” and “FaceTime mom.”

## Tell Siri who you are

1. Open Contacts  [ALT N/A], then [fill out your contact information](#).
2. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Siri > My Information, then tap your name.

## Tell Siri how to say your name

1. Open Contacts  [ALT N/A], then tap your contact card.
2. Tap Edit, scroll down and tap “add field,” select a pronunciation name field, then type how to say your name.

You can also add a pronunciation for any other contact card in Contacts. See [Edit contacts](#).

## Tell Siri about a relationship

Say something like “Hey Siri, Eliza Block is my wife” or “Hey Siri, Ashley Kamin is my mom.”


- COMMENT - [#ba #siri #queries](#)

## Keep what Siri knows about you up to date on your Apple devices

On each device, go to Settings  [ALT N/A], then [sign in to the same Apple Account](#).

If you use iCloud, your Siri settings stay up to date across your Apple devices using end-to-end encryption.

If you don't want Siri personalization to stay up to date across iPhone and your other devices, you can turn off Siri in iCloud settings.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > iCloud.
2. Tap See All, then turn off Siri.

**Note:** If you have Location Services turned on, the location of your device at the time you make a request is also sent to Apple to help Siri improve the accuracy of its response to your requests. To deliver relevant responses, Apple may use the IP address of your internet connection to approximate your location by matching it to a geographic region. See [Control the location information you share](#).

### Related


[Announce calls, messages, and more with Siri on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Have Siri announce calls and notifications](#)

## Announce calls, messages, and more with Siri on iPhone

### Metadata


**Summary:** On iPhone, Siri can announce calls and notifications from apps like Messages.

Siri can announce calls and notifications from apps like Messages  [ALT N/A] on [supported headphones](#) and when [using CarPlay](#). You can answer or reply using your voice without needing to say “Hey Siri.”

Announce Calls and Announce Notifications also work with supported third-party apps.


### Have Siri announce calls

With Announce Calls, Siri identifies incoming phone calls and FaceTime calls, which you can accept or decline using your voice.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Siri > Announce Calls, then choose an option.
2. When a call comes in, Siri identifies the caller, and asks if you want to answer the call. Say “yes” to accept the call or “no” to decline it.

### Have Siri announce notifications

Siri can automatically announce incoming notifications from apps like Messages and Reminders. Siri automatically enables app notifications for apps that use time-sensitive notifications, but you can change the settings at any time. To learn more about time-sensitive notifications, see [Set up a Focus](#).

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Siri > Announce Notifications, then turn on Announce Notifications.
2. Tap an app you want Siri to announce notifications from, then turn on Announce Notifications.

For some apps, you can also choose whether to announce all notifications or only time-sensitive notifications.

For apps where you can send a reply, like Messages, Siri repeats what you said, then asks for confirmation before sending your reply. To send replies without waiting for confirmation, turn on Reply Without Confirmation.

### **Respond to Siri announcements hands-free**

You can nod or shake your head to respond to Siri announcements while you're wearing supported AirPods. So if you're on the bus to work, you can still get Siri's help managing calls, messages, and notifications without having to speak out loud. See [Use controls and gestures with your AirPods](#) in the AirPods User Guide.

### **Related**

[Add Siri Shortcuts on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Add Siri Shortcuts](#)

## Add Siri Shortcuts on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, add shortcuts to Siri that you activate with phrases of your choice.

Apps can offer shortcuts for things you do frequently. You can use Siri to initiate these shortcuts with just your voice.

Some apps have Siri Shortcuts set up automatically. You can also create your own.

### **Add a suggested shortcut**

Tap Add to Siri when you see a suggestion for a shortcut, then follow the onscreen instructions to record a phrase of your choice that performs the shortcut.

You can also use the Shortcuts app to create a new shortcut that uses Siri, or to manage, re-record, and delete existing Siri Shortcuts. See the [Shortcuts User Guide](#).

### Use a shortcut

Activate Siri, then speak your phrase for the shortcut. See [Use Siri](#).

Based on your routines and how you use your apps, Siri also suggests shortcuts on the Home Screen, the Lock Screen, and when you start a search. To turn off shortcut suggestions for an app, see [Change Siri settings on iPhone](#).

### Related

[Siri Suggestions on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [About Siri Suggestions](#)

## Siri Suggestions on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, Siri makes suggestions for what you might want to do next, such as confirm an appointment or send an email.


Siri makes suggestions for what you might want to do next, such as call into a meeting or confirm an appointment, based on your routines and how you use your apps.

For example, Siri might help when you do any of the following:


- *Glance at the Lock Screen or start a search:* As Siri learns your routines, you get suggestions for just what you need, at just the right time.
- *Create email and events:* When you start adding people to an email or calendar event, Siri suggests the people you included in previous emails or events.
- *Receive calls:* If you get an incoming call from an unknown number, Siri lets you know who might be calling—based on phone numbers included in your emails.
- *Type:* As you enter text, Siri can suggest names of movies, places—anything you viewed on iPhone recently. If you tell a friend you're on your way, Siri can even suggest your estimated arrival time.
- *Confirm an appointment or book a flight on a travel website:* Siri asks if you want to add it to your calendar.

### Turn Siri Suggestions on or off for an app

Siri Suggestions are on by default for your apps. You can turn them off or change the settings at any time.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Siri > Apps.
2. Tap an app, then turn settings on or off.

### Change where Siri Suggestions appear

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Siri, then turn on or off any of the following:
  - Allow Notifications
  - Show in App Library
  - Show When Sharing
  - Show Listening Suggestions

Your personal information—which is encrypted and remains private—stays up to date across all your devices where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#). As Siri learns about you on one device, your experience with Siri is improved on your other devices. If you don't want Siri personalization to update across your devices, you can disable Siri in iCloud settings. See [Keep what Siri knows about you up to date on your Apple devices](#).

Siri is designed to protect your information, and you can choose what you share. To learn more, see the [Siri Suggestions, Search & Privacy website](#).

### Related

[Find out what Siri can do on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use Siri in your car](#)

## Use Siri in your car

Metadata

NoIndex

Summary: With CarPlay or Siri Eyes Free, keep focused on the road by using Siri to control features of your iPhone.

With CarPlay or Siri Eyes Free, you can keep focused on the road by using Siri to make calls, send text messages, play music that's on your iPhone, get directions, and use other iPhone features.



CarPlay (available in select cars) takes the things you want to do with your iPhone while driving and puts them on your car's built-in display. CarPlay uses Siri, so you can control CarPlay with just your voice. See [Use Siri to Control CarPlay](#).

With Siri Eyes Free (available in select cars), use your voice to control features of your iPhone without looking at or touching iPhone. To connect iPhone to your car, use Bluetooth® (refer to the user guide that came with your car if you need to). To activate Siri, press and hold the voice command button on your steering wheel until you hear the Siri tone, then make a request.

**WARNING:** For important information about avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see [Important safety information](#).

### Related

[Intro to CarPlay and iPhone](#)  
[Get travel directions on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Change Siri settings](#)

## Change Siri settings on iPhone

### Metadata


**Summary:** On iPhone, change the voice for Siri, prevent access to Siri when your device is locked, and more.

To change the voice for Siri, prevent access to Siri when your device is locked, and more, go to Settings, then tap Siri.

For information about how to set up and use Siri, see [Use Siri](#). To change settings for Siri Suggestions, see [Siri Suggestions](#).

### Change when Siri responds

You can customize when Siri responds to your voice. You can also choose what language Siri responds to.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Siri, then do any of the following:
  - *Prevent Siri from responding to the voice request "Hey Siri":* Tap Talk to Siri, then tap Off.
  - *Prevent access to Siri when iPhone is locked:* Turn off Allow Siri When Locked.
  - *Change the language Siri responds to:* Tap Language, then select a new language.

You can also activate Siri by typing. See [Type instead of speaking to Siri](#).


### Change the voice for Siri

You can change the Siri voice (not available for all languages).




1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Siri.
2. Tap Voice, then choose a different variety or voice.


### Change how Siri responds

Siri can respond out loud or silently (with text onscreen). You can also see your request onscreen.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Siri, then do any of the following:
  - *Change when Siri provides voice responses:* Tap Siri Responses, then choose an option below Spoken Responses.
  - *Always see the response from Siri onscreen:* Tap Siri Responses, then turn on Always Show Siri Captions.
  - *See your request onscreen:* Tap Siri Responses, then turn on Always Show Request.

### Change Siri settings for Phone, FaceTime, and Messages


You can perform tasks for Phone  [ALT N/A], FaceTime  [ALT N/A], and Messages  [ALT N/A] with just your voice. With Siri, you can hang up calls and skip the confirmation step when sending messages. You can enable these features in Settings.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Siri, then do any of the following:
  - *Hang up Phone and FaceTime calls:* Tap Call Hang Up, then turn on Call Hang Up. For more information, see [End calls with Siri](#).
  - *Send messages without confirmation:* Tap Messaging with Siri, then turn on Automatically Send Messages. See [Send and reply to messages](#).


On supported headphones, Siri can also [announce calls, messages, and more](#).

### Change which apps appear in search

You can change which apps appear when you search with Siri.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Search, then scroll down and select an app.
2. Turn settings on or off.

### Retrain Siri with your voice

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Siri.
2. Tap Talk to Siri, then tap Off.
3. Turn on “Siri” or “Hey Siri” again.

To change Siri accessibility settings, see [Change Siri accessibility settings](#).

If Siri doesn't work as expected on your iPhone, see the Apple Support article [If "Hey Siri" isn't working on your iPhone or iPad](#).

## Related

[Find out what Siri can do on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Introducing Apple Intelligence](#)

# Introducing Apple Intelligence on iPhone

Metadata

NoIndex

Summary: Apple Intelligence combines the power of generative models with an understanding of your personal context to deliver intelligence that's useful and relevant.



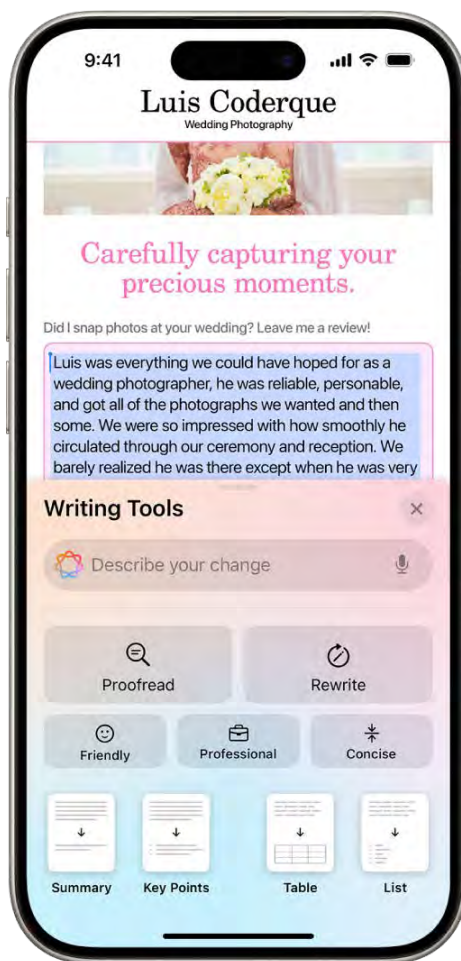
[Alt text: From left to right, a Mac shows Writing Tools used in an email, iPad shows Image Playground, and iPhone shows a Genmoji as part of a message thread.]

Apple Intelligence is the personal intelligence system built into iOS 18.1, iPadOS 18.1, and macOS Sequoia 15.1. It combines the power of generative models with an understanding of your personal context to deliver intelligence that's useful and relevant. Apple Intelligence is designed to understand and create language and images; prioritize and summarize notifications, mail, and messages; and draw from what it knows about you and the device you use to simplify and accelerate everyday tasks. And it does all this while protecting your privacy —ensuring that your data is never stored and never made accessible to anyone.

- **Supported devices:** Apple Intelligence is available on iPhone 15 Pro, iPhone 15 Pro Max, and iPad and Mac with M1 and later.

- **Availability:** Apple Intelligence is free to use and will initially be available on supported devices with Siri and device language set to U.S. English, and region set to United States.
- **How to get started:** To request activation of Apple Intelligence on your iPhone or iPad, go to Settings [🔧] [ALT N/A] , tap Apple Intelligence & Siri, then tap Join the Apple Intelligence Waitlist. To request activation on your Mac, choose Apple menu [🍏] [ALT N/A] > System Settings, click Apple Intelligence & Siri, then click Join the Apple Intelligence Waitlist. You'll be notified as soon as Apple Intelligence is ready for your device.

**Note:** Apple Intelligence is currently in beta. Apple Intelligence uses generative models, and outputs may be inaccurate, unexpected, or offensive. Check important information for accuracy.



[Alt text: iPhone showing highlighted text at the top of the screen and the Writing Tools pane at the bottom. The Writing Tools pane shows a field at the top where you describe the change you want. Proofread and Rewrite buttons appear below. You can choose a Friendly, Professional, or Concise tone below that, and at the bottom are Summary, Key Points, Table, and List buttons.]

## Find the right words with Writing Tools

Writing Tools can summarize selected text with a tap, proofread your work, and create different versions of the same text to help you find the right wording and tone.

Writing Tools are available virtually everywhere you write, including Mail, Notes, Safari, and more. As you're writing, just select the text you want to refine, then tap Writing Tools.



[Alt text: The iPhone home screen showing the Siri-provided steps for scheduling a text message to send later.]

### **Discover a more capable and conversational Siri**

Apple Intelligence uses systemwide intelligence to expand and enhance Siri capabilities. With richer language understanding, Siri is becoming more natural, more contextually relevant, and more personal, with the ability to simplify and accelerate everyday tasks. Siri also knows more about your device's features and settings. To learn how to do things with your iPhone, just ask Siri—“How do I use AirDrop?” or “How do I schedule a message to send later?”

### **Be more productive in Mail and Photos**

In the Mail app, Priority Messages shows your most urgent emails across your inbox, and you can see message summaries without needing to open an email. Smart Reply in Mail identifies questions and suggests answers to them.

In Photos, you can search for specific images by describing what you want to find—“Maya skateboarding in a tie-dye shirt,” for example. In videos in your photo library, search for specific moments in a clip and go right to the relevant segment.

### **And more...**

More is still to come. Image Playground will let you create original images—in Messages, Notes (using the new Image Wand), and more—based on a description or suggested concept. You’ll be able to create original Genmoji in supported apps with an emoji keyboard. Just tap 😊 [Alt text] the Emoji key, type a description of the image you want—“Golden Retriever catching the best wave ever,” for example—then tap Create New Emoji. And in Photos, the Clean Up tool will identify and remove distracting background objects without altering the subject.

You’ll also be able to search across information on your device—including what friends have sent to you—so Siri can answer a question like “What are the book recommendations Jane sent me?” And you can enable integration with ChatGPT, so you can tap into its expertise from Siri or Writing Tools.

### **Intelligence that protects your privacy**

Apple Intelligence relies on understanding deep personal context while also protecting user privacy. It’s integrated into the core of your iPhone, iPad, and Mac through on-device processing. So your personal information is used to process requests without collecting or storing it. To run more complex requests that require more processing power, Private Cloud Compute extends the privacy and security of Apple devices into the cloud. Apple Intelligence draws on larger, server-based models powered by Apple silicon, which helps Apple ensure your data is never stored and never made accessible to anyone.

To deactivate Apple Intelligence during the beta period, on iPhone or iPad, go to Settings [ALT N/A], tap Apple Intelligence & Siri, then tap the button next to Apple Intelligence. On a Mac, choose Apple menu [ALT N/A] > System Settings, click Apple Intelligence & Siri, then click the button next to Apple Intelligence.

For more information about what’s possible with Apple Intelligence, see [the Apple Intelligence website](#).

---

## iPhone safety features

NAV TITLE: [Contact emergency services](#)

### Use SOS to contact emergency services on your iPhone

Metadata


NoIndex

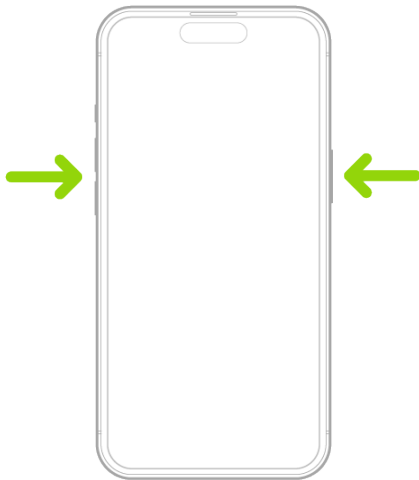
In case of emergency, use your iPhone to quickly and easily call for help and alert your emergency contacts (provided that cellular service is available).

**Note:** If you have iPhone 14 or later (any model), you may be able to contact emergency services via satellite if cell service isn't available. See [Use Emergency SOS via satellite on your iPhone](#).

### Quickly call emergency services (all countries or regions except India)

- Simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear and the countdown on Emergency SOS ends, then release the buttons.

Or, you can enable iPhone to start Emergency SOS when you quickly press the side button five times. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Emergency SOS, then turn on Call with 5 Presses.



[Alt text: An outline of an iPhone with arrows pointing to the side button and either volume button.]

After an emergency call ends, your iPhone alerts your emergency contacts with a text message, unless you choose to cancel. Your iPhone sends your current location (if available) and—for a period of time after you enter SOS mode—your emergency contacts receive updates when your location changes.


### Quickly call emergency services (India)

- Quickly press the side button 3 times until the sliders appear and the countdown on Emergency SOS ends.
- If you've turned on Accessibility Shortcut, simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear and the countdown on Emergency SOS ends, then release the buttons.


By default, iPhone plays a warning sound, starts a countdown, then calls the emergency services.

After an emergency call ends, your iPhone alerts your emergency contacts with a text message, unless you choose to cancel. Your iPhone sends your current location (if available) and—for a period of time after you enter SOS mode—your emergency contacts receive updates when your location changes.

### **Dial the emergency number when your iPhone is locked**

1. On the Passcode screen, tap Emergency.
2. Dial the emergency number (for example, 911 in the U.S.), then tap  [Alt text: the Call button] .

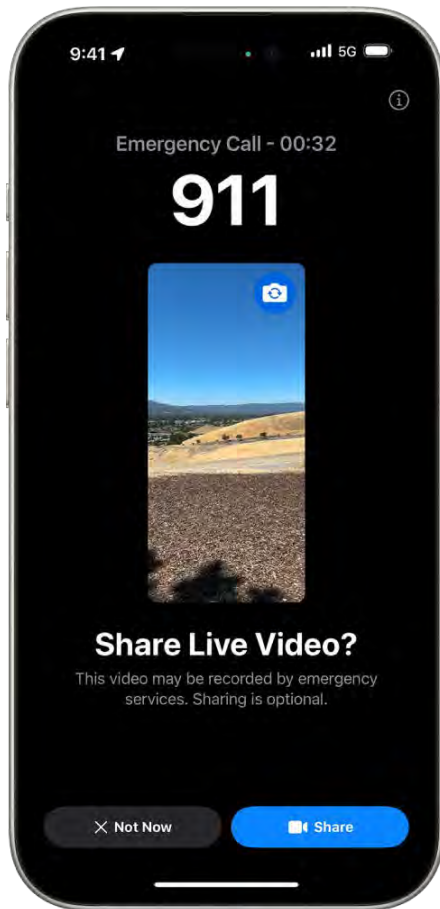
### **Text Emergency Services (not available in all countries or regions)**

1. Go to the Messages app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Type 911 or your local emergency services number in the To field.
3. Type your emergency.
4. Tap the send button.


### **Share live video or existing photos with emergency services (not available in all countries or regions)**

If requested by emergency services, Emergency SOS Live Video allows you to stream live video or to upload existing photos and videos to emergency services.






[Alt text: An Emergency SOS Live Video screen showing a 911 phone emergency call with a video preview in the middle. At the bottom are buttons for Not Now and Share Video.]

1. While on an emergency services call, a supported call center may send an optional request to share videos or photos from your device.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Share live video:* Tap “Share” when prompted to begin streaming live video to emergency services. You may pause or restart sharing at any time by tapping the Camera button. You may stop sharing at any time by tapping  [Alt text: The End Call button], then tap “Stop Sharing Camera” or “End Call.”
  - *Share existing photos or videos:* Tap “Choose” when prompted, then select the photos or videos you would like to send to emergency services.
  - *Decline:* Tap “Not Now” when prompted if you don’t want to share videos or photos with emergency services.

**Note:** Emergency SOS Live Video is available on iPhone 14 or later, is subject to device limitations, and may not be available in all situations.

## Change your Emergency SOS settings

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Emergency SOS on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Turn “Call with Hold and Release” on or off:* Hold and release the side and volume buttons to start a countdown to call emergency services.
  - *Turn “Call with 5 presses” on or off:* Rapidly press the side button five times to start a countdown to call emergency services.
  - *Manage your emergency contacts:* In Health, tap Set Up Emergency Contacts or Edit Emergency Contacts. See [Set up and view your Medical ID](#).

## Important information about emergency calls on iPhone

- Some cellular networks may not accept an emergency call from iPhone if iPhone isn't activated, if iPhone isn't compatible with or configured to operate on a particular cellular network, or (when applicable) if iPhone doesn't have a SIM card or the SIM card is PIN-locked.
- In certain countries or regions, your location information (if determinable) may be accessed by emergency service providers when you make an emergency call.
- Review your carrier's emergency calling information to understand the limits of emergency calling over Wi-Fi.
- With CDMA, when an emergency call ends, iPhone enters *emergency call mode* for a few minutes to allow a callback from emergency services. During this time, data transmission and text messages are blocked.
- After making an emergency call, certain call features that block or silence incoming calls may be disabled for a short period of time to allow a callback from emergency services. These include Do Not Disturb, Silence Unknown Callers, and Screen Time.
- On an [iPhone with Dual SIM](#), if you don't turn on Wi-Fi Calling for a line, any incoming phone calls on that line (including calls from emergency services) go directly to voicemail (if available from your carrier) when the other line is in use; you won't receive missed call notifications.

If you set up conditional call forwarding (if available from your carrier) from one line to another when a line is busy or not in service, the calls don't go to voicemail; contact your carrier for setup information.

- When using an iPhone with a USB-C connector and compatible accessory, data transfer over USB 3 and DisplayPort connections will be unavailable once an emergency session (call or text) has been initiated, and will remain unavailable for up to 5 minutes from the end of the session. This time varies by country or region. To continue using your accessory, disconnect and reconnect your device after this period. Charging is not affected and will continue to function.

## Related

[Apple Support article: Text 911 on iPhone or Apple Watch](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use Emergency SOS via satellite](#)

# Use Emergency SOS via satellite on your iPhone

### Metadata


**Summary:** Use Emergency SOS via satellite to text emergency services on your iPhone when you're out of cellular and Wi-Fi coverage.

On iPhone 14 or later (any model), you can use Emergency SOS via satellite to text emergency services when you're outside of cellular and Wi-Fi coverage.

**Note:** Emergency SOS via satellite isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Emergency SOS via satellite availability](#).

### Before you disconnect from cellular and Wi-Fi coverage

If you're going somewhere that might not have cellular and Wi-Fi coverage, create your Medical ID, add emergency contacts, and try the Emergency SOS demo before you go.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Emergency SOS on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down and tap Try Demo.

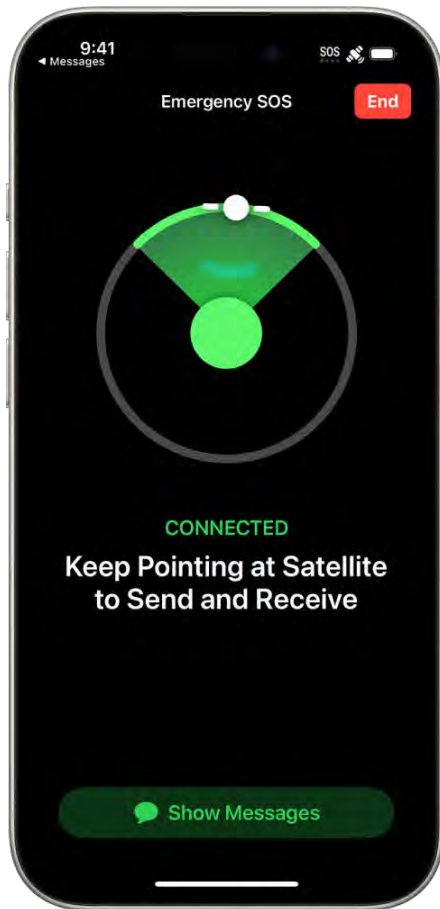
To create your Medical ID and add emergency contacts, see [Set up and view your Medical ID](#).

**Note:** The Emergency SOS demo doesn't start a call to emergency services.

### Connect to Emergency SOS via satellite on your iPhone

If you need emergency services and you don't have a cellular or Wi-Fi connection, you can use Emergency SOS via satellite.


1. Try calling 911 or emergency services. Even if your normal cellular carrier network isn't available, iPhone will attempt to route the 911 call through other networks, if available.
2. If the call doesn't go through, tap Emergency Text via Satellite to text emergency services. You can also go to the Messages app and text 911 or SOS, then tap Emergency Services.
3. Tap Report Emergency and follow the onscreen instructions.



[Alt text: The Emergency SOS screen, showing that the phone is connected and instructing the user to keep pointing at the satellite. The Opening Messages button is at the bottom of the screen.]

**Important:** To help you connect to a satellite, make sure to hold your phone naturally in your hand—you don't need to raise your arm or hold your phone up, but make sure your phone has a clear line of sight to the sky. If you're under heavy foliage or surrounded by other obstructions, you might not be able to connect to a satellite.

After you're connected, your iPhone starts a text conversation by sharing critical information like your Medical ID and emergency contact information (if you [set them up](#)), your answers to the emergency questionnaire, your location (including elevation), and your iPhone's battery level. You can also choose to share the information you send to emergency services with your emergency contacts.

To learn how to proactively share your location in the Find My app  [ALT N/A] when you're in a location without cellular or Wi-Fi coverage, see [Send your location via satellite in Find My on iPhone](#).

For information about Emergency SOS via satellite and privacy, see [Connect to a satellite with your iPhone](#).

## Request Roadside Assistance via satellite on your iPhone



### Metadata

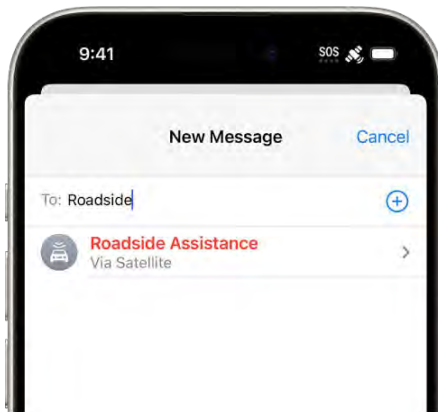
**Summary:** Request roadside assistance on your iPhone when you're outside of cellular and Wi-Fi coverage.

On iPhone 14 or later (any model), you can request Roadside Assistance via satellite when you're outside of cellular and Wi-Fi coverage.

**Note:** Roadside Assistance via satellite requires iOS 17 or later and isn't available in all countries or regions.

### Request Roadside Assistance via satellite on your iPhone

1. Open the Messages app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Compose button] at the top of the screen, then type "Roadside" in the address field.



[Alt text: A new message addressed to "roadside." Below it is a link for Roadside Assistance via satellite.]

3. Tap Roadside Assistance and follow the onscreen instructions.

**Important:** To help you connect to a satellite, make sure to hold your phone naturally in your hand—you don't need to raise your arm or hold your phone up, but make sure your phone has a clear line of sight to the sky. If you're under heavy foliage or surrounded by other obstructions, you might not be able to connect to a satellite.

Once connected, you'll be asked for important information, like the model of your car and the issue you're having.

After you answer the questions, you'll be guided to connect to a satellite and be able to message directly with a roadside assistance provider. They may ask follow up questions to make sure they're sending you the right kind of help. You can message with them with any questions about the estimated time until someone arrives and any fees associated with the service.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [Request Roadside Assistance via satellite on your iPhone](#).



[Alt text: The Roadside Assistance via satellite screen. The Request Assistance button is at the bottom of the screen.]

### Related

[Use Emergency SOS via satellite on your iPhone](#)

[Use Check In on iPhone to let your friends know you've arrived](#)

[Manage Crash Detection on iPhone 14 or later](#)

[Send your location via satellite in Find My on iPhone](#)

## Set up and view your Medical ID


### Metadata

**Summary:** iPhone and Apple Watch can help provide first responders with information about you that may be important in an emergency.

A Medical ID provides information about you that may be important in an emergency, like allergies, medical conditions, and your emergency contacts. Your iPhone and Apple Watch can display this information so that it's available for someone attending to you in an emergency and your emergency contacts can be notified if you [use Emergency SOS via satellite](#).

### Create your Medical ID

Set up a Medical ID in the Health app.

1. Go to the Health app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap your picture at the top right, then tap Medical ID.
3. Tap Get Started or Edit, then enter your information.
4. Below Emergency Contacts, tap Add Emergency Contact, then add your contacts.


After an emergency call ends, your iPhone alerts your emergency contacts with a text message, unless you choose to cancel. Your iPhone sends your current location (if available) and—for a period of time after you enter SOS mode—your emergency contacts receive updates when your location changes.

5. Tap Done.

**Tip:** To view your Medical ID from the Home Screen, touch and hold the Health app icon, then choose Medical ID.

### Allow emergency services and first responders to access your Medical ID

The information in your Medical ID can be shared automatically during an emergency call (U.S. and Canada only), and also appears on the Lock Screen of your iPhone and Apple Watch.

1. Go to the Health app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap your picture at the top right, then tap Medical ID.
3. Tap Edit, scroll to the bottom, then turn on Show When Locked and Emergency Call.

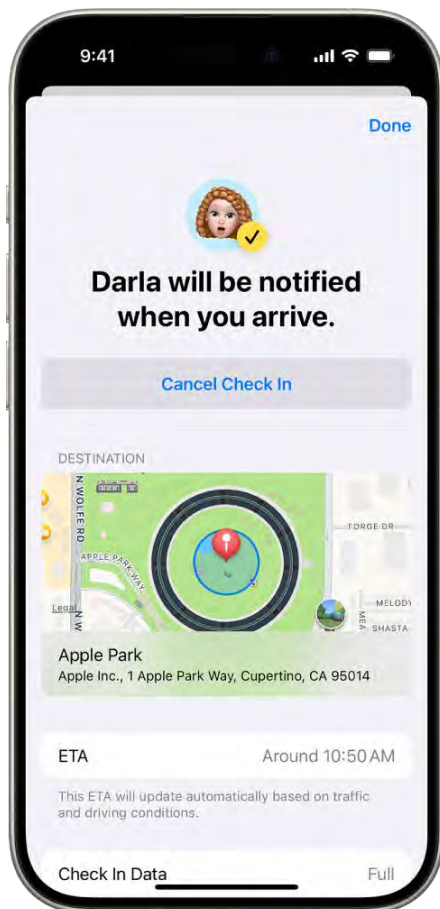
**Note:** A first responder views your Medical ID from the Lock Screen by swiping up or pressing the Home button (depending on your iPhone model), tapping Emergency on the passcode screen, then tapping Medical ID.

NAV TITLE: [Use Check In](#)

## Use Check In on iPhone to let your friends know you've arrived

Metadata

Summary: Use Check In on iPhone to let your friend know your iPhone has arrived.



[Alt text: A Check In screen showing a friend will be notified in 14 minutes, below it are options to extend the time or cancel the Check In. At the bottom is a map showing the current location.]

**Note:** Check In requires iOS 17 or later for both the sender and recipient. Location sharing isn't supported in South Korea and might be unavailable in other regions due to local laws.





### How Check In works

You can use Check In on iPhone to automatically notify a friend that your iPhone has arrived, and choose what details they can see if you don't successfully complete your Check In.



Similarly, if a friend sends you a Check In but their iPhone hasn't arrived as expected, you can view their location, battery percentage, cellular signal, and more.

### Send a Check In

1. Open the Messages app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Compose button] at the top of the screen and add a recipient, or select an existing conversation.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Apps button], tap More, tap Check In, then tap Edit.
4. Choose one of the following:
  - *When I Arrive:* Specify your destination, how you're traveling (driving, transit, or walking), and add extra time if needed. Check In monitors your journey and notifies your friend if your iPhone isn't progressing for an extended period of time or if it doesn't reach your destination as expected. When you arrive at your destination successfully, the Check In automatically completes and notifies your friend that your iPhone has arrived.
  - *After a timer:* Specify a period of time—for example, if you're meeting someone new. If you don't end the Check In before the time you set, Check In notifies your friend.
5. Tap  [Alt text: the Send button] .


If your iPhone doesn't arrive at your destination or you don't cancel the Check In, and you don't respond to the Check In prompts, the details of your iPhone's journey will be sent to your friend.

To change the details you want to share with your friend if you don't complete your Check In as expected, see [Choose what details you share](#).

**Note:** If you start a Check In and then lose service or your iPhone powers off, your Check In recipient may get a delayed or early notification and have the option to view the iPhone details you shared with them.

### Add time to your Check In

If you need extra time, you can add time to your Check In.

1. Open the Messages app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Open the conversation with the friend you sent a Check In to.
3. On the Check In message, tap Details, tap Add Time, then select one of the options.

### Cancel a Check In


If you've completed your journey, or you want to end your session for any reason, you can cancel your Check In to let your friend know.

1. Open the Messages app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.

2. Open the conversation with the friend you sent a Check In to.
3. On the Check In message, tap Details, then tap Cancel Check In and confirm.

### Choose what details you share

You can change the details you share with your friend during a Check In.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Messages on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down and tap Check In Data.
3. Choose what details you want to share if you don't complete your Check In as expected:
  - *Limited*: Share your current location, in addition to the network signal and battery details of your iPhone and Apple Watch.
  - *Full*: Share the data above (current location, network signal, and battery details), in addition to the route you've traveled and the last time you unlocked your iPhone or removed your Apple Watch.

NAV TITLE: [Manage Crash Detection](#)

## Manage Crash Detection on iPhone 14 or later

Metadata

Summary: Use iPhone to detect a Crash Detection event.

### What is Crash Detection?

If your iPhone 14 or later (any model) detects a severe car crash, it can help connect you to emergency services and notify your emergency contacts.


### How Crash Detection works

When your iPhone detects a severe car crash, it will display an alert and will automatically initiate an emergency phone call after 20 seconds unless you cancel. If you are unresponsive, your iPhone will play an audio message for emergency services, which informs them that you've been in a severe crash and gives them your latitudinal and longitudinal coordinates with an approximate search radius.

When a crash is detected, Crash Detection won't override any existing emergency calls placed by other means.

If you're in a severe car crash and unresponsive in a location without a cellular or Wi-Fi connection, iPhone will attempt to contact emergency services using [Emergency SOS via satellite](#), where available.

### Turn Crash Detection on or off

Crash Detection is on by default. You can turn off alerts and automatic emergency calls from Apple after a severe car crash in Settings  [ALT N/A] > Emergency SOS, then turn off Call After Severe Crash. If you have third-party apps registered to detect crashes on your device, they will still be notified.

### If you have CarPlay or Apple Watch

If your iPhone has Crash Detection turned on and is connected to your vehicle through CarPlay, the Crash Detection features (dialing emergency services) will go through your iPhone.

If you're wearing your Apple Watch at the time of the event, dialing emergency services will be placed by iPhone but Crash Detection features will be routed through Apple Watch.

For more information, see [Use Crash Detection on iPhone or Apple Watch to call for help in an accident](#).

NAV TITLE: [Reset privacy and security settings in an emergency](#)


## Reset privacy and security settings in an emergency

Metadata

NoIndex

You can use Safety Check on iPhone to quickly stop sharing your device access and personal information with others. Safety Check helps you quickly change your passcode and Apple Account password, stop sharing your location with Find My, restrict Messages and FaceTime to the device in your hand, and more.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Privacy & Security > Safety Check on your iPhone.
2. Tap Emergency Reset, tap Start Emergency Reset, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You can also use Safety Check to periodically review and update the information you share with people, apps, and devices. To learn more about what Safety Check does, see [How Safety Check on iPhone works to keep you safe](#) in the Personal Safety User Guide.

**Important:** You might also be sharing information that Safety Check can't review or change—for example, accounts and passwords, social media sharing, and information shared from another device. To help you decide on additional steps for reducing the information you share, see [Additional considerations when using Safety Check](#) in the Personal Safety User Guide.

---

# Family Sharing

NAV TITLE: [Set up Family Sharing](#)

## Set up Family Sharing on iPhone

Metadata

NoIndex

**Summary:** On iPhone, set up Family Sharing to share App Store, music, movie, TV, and book purchases; Apple and App Store subscriptions; and more with family members.

Family Sharing lets you and up to five other family members share access to Apple services, eligible purchases, an iCloud storage plan, and more. You can even help locate each other's missing devices.

One adult family member—the *organizer*—invites other family members to participate. When family members join, Family Sharing is set up on everyone's devices automatically. The group then chooses which services and features they want to use and share.


Family Sharing is available on eligible devices. See the Apple Support article [System requirements for iCloud](#).



[Alt text: The Family Sharing screen in Settings. Five family members are listed and 4 subscriptions are shared with the family.]

### Create a Family Sharing group

You only need to set up Family Sharing on one device. Then it's available on all your devices that are signed in to the same [Apple Account](#).

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > Family > Set Up, then follow the onscreen instructions to set up your Family Sharing group.
2. Invite one or more family members. When you add an adult family member, you can designate them as a parent or guardian. [Learn about types of Family Sharing members](#).  
  
You can also add family members later. See [Add a member to a Family Sharing group](#).
3. Tap a feature you want to set up for your Family Sharing group, then follow the onscreen instructions.


To set up parental controls or Apple Cash for a child, tap their name, tap the feature, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You can see what you're sharing with your family and adjust sharing settings at any time.


To learn how to set up or join a Family Sharing group on all your devices, see the Apple Support article [Set up Family Sharing](#).

### What you can do with Family Sharing

With a Family Sharing group, you can set up or share the following:

- *Passwords and passkeys:* You can share passwords and passkeys with people in your family to access important accounts. See [Share passwords or passkeys with people you trust on iPhone](#).
- *An iCloud Drive folder:* Organize and share family documents, photos, and more. See [Share files and folders in iCloud Drive](#).
- *Apple and App Store subscriptions:* You can share Apple subscriptions, including iCloud+, and eligible App Store subscriptions. See [Share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members](#).
- *Purchases:* You can share items purchased in the App Store, Apple Books, and Apple TV. All purchases are billed to the family organizer. See [Share App Store, Apple TV, and Apple Books purchases with Family Sharing](#).
- *Locations:* When you share your location with your Family Sharing group, all family members, including any new members added later, can use the Find My app  [ALT N/A] to see your location and help locate a missing device. See [Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices](#).
- P9  
*Apple Card and Apple Cash:* You can share Apple Card with trusted members of your Family Sharing group or set up an Apple Cash Family account for a child. See [Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing \(U.S. only\)](#).
- *Parental controls:* You can manage your children's purchases, how they use their Apple devices, and more. See [Set up parental controls with Family Sharing](#).
- *A device for your child:* You can set up a new iPhone or iPad for a child and customize parental controls. See [Set up a device for a child with Family Sharing](#).

### See recommendations for Family Sharing features

To see suggestions to help you get the most out of Family Sharing, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Family, then tap Recommended For Your Family.

### Related

[Use iCloud on iPhone](#)

[Apple Support article: What types of content can I share with my family?](#)

[Apple Support article: If you don't see your family's shared content](#)

## Add a member to a Family Sharing group on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** With Family Sharing on iPhone, you can add members or create an Apple Account for a child.

With [Family Sharing](#), each family member joins the family group with their own [Apple Account](#). That way you can share access to subscriptions and other features without sharing personal information like photos or documents.



- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

The family organizer can easily invite family members who have an Apple Account or create an Apple Account for a child who doesn't have one yet.

[Learn about types of Family Sharing members.](#)

### Add a family member with an Apple Account

The organizer of the Family Sharing group can add a family member who has their own Apple Account.



1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Family, then tap  [Alt text: the Add Member button in the upper-right corner].
2. Tap Invite Others, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You can send the invitation using AirDrop, Messages, or Mail. If you're near the family member, you can also tap Invite in Person and ask the family member to enter their [Apple Account](#) email address (or phone number) and password on your device.


People you invite see your invitation at the top of Settings in the Family row. If they haven't accepted your invitation, you can also follow up with reminders.

### Create an Apple Account for a child

Children under 13 can't create an Apple Account on their own. (This age varies by country or region.) But if you're the family organizer or a guardian, you can create an Apple Account for a child and add them to the Family Sharing group.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Family.
2. Do one of the following:
  - *If you're the organizer:* Tap  [Alt text: the Add Member button], then tap Create Child Account.

**Note:** If your child already has an Apple Account, tap Invite Others. They can enter their Apple Account and password on your device to accept the invitation.

- *If you're a parent or guardian:* Tap  [Alt text: the Add Member button] .
3. Follow the onscreen instructions to finish creating the child account. You can set content restrictions, communication limits, and downtime; share your child's location with all members of the Family Sharing group, including any new members added later; and use Ask to Buy. You can change these settings at any time. For more information, see any of the following:
    - [Set up Screen Time for a family member](#)
    - [Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices](#)
    - [Apple Support article: Approve what kids buy with Ask to Buy](#)

For more information about child accounts and the age at which a child can create their own Apple Account, see the Apple Support article [Create an Apple Account for your child](#).

If you want to join an existing Family Sharing group, [ask the organizer to add you](#). You can only be a member of one Family Sharing group at a time. If you want to join a different group, leave your current group first. See [Leave a Family Sharing group](#).

## Related

[Mac User Guide: Join a Family Sharing group in Family Sharing on Mac](#)

[Apple Support article: Make sure that each family member has a unique Apple Account](#)

NAV TITLE: [Remove Family Sharing members](#)

# Leave or remove a member from a Family Sharing group on iPhone

## Metadata

**Summary:** With Family Sharing on iPhone, you can leave the group or, if you're an organizer, remove another member or disband the group.

In a [Family Sharing group](#), the organizer can remove members or disband the group, and family members (other than teens with parental controls or children) can remove themselves.


- COMMENT - [Personal Safety content](#)

[Learn about types of Family Sharing members.](#)

## Remove a member from a family group



The organizer of a Family Sharing group can remove other members. When a family member is removed, they immediately lose access to shared subscriptions and content purchased by other members.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Family.
2. Tap [*member's name*], then tap Remove [*member's name*] from Family.

You can't remove a child from your Family Sharing group. However, you can move them to another group or delete their Apple Account. See the Apple Support article [Move a child to another group using Family Sharing](#).

If you turned on Screen Time for a teen, you need to turn off Screen Time settings before you can remove them from the group. See [Set up Screen Time for a family member](#).

### Leave a Family Sharing group

When you leave a Family Sharing group, you stop sharing your purchases and subscriptions with family members and immediately lose access to any content they've shared.

**Note:** The organizer can't leave the Family Sharing group. If you want to change the organizer, you must disband the group, and have another adult create a new one.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Family.
2. Tap [*your name*], then tap Stop Using Family Sharing.

### Disband a Family Sharing group

When the family organizer turns off Family Sharing, all family members are removed from the group at the same time. When a Family Sharing group is disbanded, all members immediately lose access to the shared content and subscriptions.

**Note:** If a child is in the Family Sharing group, the organizer must move the child to another group or delete their Apple Account before disbanding the group. See the Apple Support article [Move a child to another group using Family Sharing](#).

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Family.
2. Tap [*your name*], then tap Stop Using Family Sharing.

### Related

[Apple Support article: Leave Family Sharing](#)

NAV TITLE: [Share subscriptions](#)

# Share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members on iPhone

#### Metadata


**Summary:** With Family Sharing on iPhone, share a subscription to iCloud+, Apple Music, Apple News+, Apple Arcade, Apple Fitness+, Apple TV+, and Apple TV channels with family members. You can also share App Store subscriptions.

When you're in a [Family Sharing group](#), you can share Apple subscriptions and eligible App Store subscriptions with other family members.

If your Family Sharing group has [purchase sharing](#) turned on, any subscriptions shared with the group are billed directly to the organizer's default payment method.

**Note:** Not all services are available in all countries or regions, and some selections are subject to content restrictions set in Screen Time.

#### Share Apple subscriptions

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Family.
2. Tap Subscriptions, then do one of the following:
  - Tap a subscription you want to share, then follow the onscreen instructions.
  - Tap Manage Subscriptions, then tap a subscription.

See any of the following to learn more.


- P9  
[Apple Arcade](#): See [Subscribe to Apple Arcade](#). All members of your family can download and play Apple Arcade games from the App Store. Each player gets a personalized account —your progress is carried over between devices.
- P9  
[Apple Fitness+](#): See [All about Apple Fitness+](#) in the Apple Watch User Guide. All members of your family can access workouts in the Fitness app on their iPhone or iPad.
- [Apple Music](#): See [Subscribe to Apple Music](#). With a family subscription, each family member gets their own music library and personal recommendations.
- P9  
[Apple News+](#): See [Subscribe to Apple News+](#). All members of your family can read Apple News+ publications for no additional charge.
- P9  
[Apple TV+ and Apple TV channels](#): See [Subscribe to Apple TV+](#), [MLS Season Pass](#), or an [Apple TV channel](#) and [Subscribe to Apple TV channels and apps](#). Each family member can watch on their iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, Apple TV, and supported smart TVs and streaming devices, using their own Apple Account and password.

- *iCloud+*: See [Subscribe to iCloud+](#). When you share iCloud+, all family members have access to iCloud+ features and storage. For storage, you only share the space—your photos and documents stay private and everyone keeps using their own accounts.

For information about combining your Apple subscriptions, see the Apple Support article [Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One](#).

### Share App Store subscriptions

You can choose which eligible App Store subscriptions you share with family members. For information about the App Store, see [Get apps in the App Store](#).

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Family > Subscriptions > Manage Subscriptions.
2. Do either of the following:
  - *Share all new subscriptions*: Turn on Share with Family. When you purchase a new subscription that's eligible for sharing, it's shared with your Family Sharing members by default.
  - *Change the settings of a specific subscription*: Tap a subscription, then turn Share with Family on or off.

If you don't see Share with Family, the subscription isn't eligible for sharing.

### Related

[Apple Support article: What types of content can I share with my family?](#)

NAV TITLE: [Share purchases](#)

## Share App Store, Apple TV, and Apple Books purchases with Family Sharing on iPhone

#### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, you can share purchases in the App Store, Apple TV, and Apple Books with members of your Family Sharing group.

With [Family Sharing](#), the organizer can set up purchase sharing to share App Store, Apple Books, and Apple TV purchases.

The organizer adds a payment method that's shared with the family; when a family member makes a purchase, the organizer is billed. The purchased item is added to the initiating family member's account and eligible purchases are shared with the rest of the family.

The family organizer can also require that children in the family group request approval for purchases or free downloads. See [Set up parental controls with Family Sharing](#).

### Turn on purchase sharing

When the family organizer turns on purchase sharing, they pay for family members' purchases and must have a valid payment method on file.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Family.
2. Tap Purchase Sharing, then follow the onscreen instructions.

### Access shared content


When purchase sharing is turned on, you can download eligible apps and content that your family members buy. See any of the following Apple Support articles:

- [How to download apps and content that your family members purchased](#)
- [What types of content can I share with my family?](#)
- [If you can't find your family's shared content](#)

### Turn off purchase sharing for yourself

You can turn off purchase sharing for yourself. Family Sharing members won't see your purchases, but you can still see items other members have shared with you.

**Note:** Even though your items aren't shared, any purchases you make still use the shared family payment method.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Family > Purchase Sharing.
2. Tap [your name], then turn off Share Purchases.

If the organizer wants to turn off purchase sharing entirely, they can tap Stop Purchase Sharing.

If you don't want to share a specific item with your family members, see the Apple Support article [Hide and unhide music, movies, TV shows, audiobooks, and books](#).

You can also [share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members](#).

### Related

[Manage App Store purchases, settings, and restrictions](#)

[Apple Support article: Remove a payment method from your Apple Account](#)

NAV TITLE: [Share locations with family and locate lost devices](#)

## Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices on iPhone


Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, share your location with family members and locate a family member's device that has been lost or misplaced using the Find My app.

With [Family Sharing](#), you can share your location with members of your Family Sharing group and help them find lost devices. When the family organizer sets up location sharing in Family Sharing settings, the organizer's location is automatically shared with everyone in the family, including any new members added later. Then, family members can choose whether or not to share their location.

### Share your location with family members


When you share locations with your family, they can [see your location in Find My](#). You can also [get notified when family members change their locations](#)—for example, if a child leaves school during school hours.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Family > Location Sharing.
2. Select the family member you want to share your location with.

You can repeat this step for each family member you want to share your location with. Each family member receives a message that you're sharing your location and can choose to share their location with you.

You can stop sharing your location with any family member at any time.

**Note:** Children and teens with [Screen Time turned on](#) may not be able to change their own location sharing settings.

To share your location, you must have Location Services turned on in Settings  [ALT N/A] > Privacy & Security. See [Control the location information you share](#).

### Locate a family member's device

After you [share your location](#) with members of your Family Sharing group, they can help locate a missing device [added to the Find My app](#).

See [Locate a device in Find My](#).

Your devices are at the top of the list, and your family members' devices are below yours.

### Ask a family member to share an AirTag with you

If you receive a notification in the Find My app that says AirTag Detected Near You or Unknown AirTag, you can ask the family member who owns it to share the AirTag with you.

1. In the notification, tap Ask Owner to Share AirTag.
2. Tap Ask Owner at the bottom of the screen.

You can also use [Find Devices on iCloud.com](#) to locate a family member's missing device. See [Locate a device in Find Devices on iCloud.com](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

## Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing on iPhone (U.S. only)

Metadata

NoIndex


Summary: When you set up Family Sharing on iPhone, you can share Apple Card with trusted family members or set up Apple Cash for your child.

You can use Apple Cash and Apple Card with your [Family Sharing](#) group. The organizer of the Family Sharing group can set up Apple Cash for a child, and share Apple Card with trusted members of their Family Sharing group.

[Learn about types of Family Sharing members.](#)

### **Set up Apple Cash Family for a child**

The family organizer can set up Apple Cash for a child.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Family.
2. Tap the child for whom you want to set up Apple Cash.
3. Tap Apple Cash, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To see the card balance, monitor transactions, and narrow the list of people that the child can send money to, go to Settings > Wallet & Apple Pay. See [Apple Cash Support](#).

For more information about system requirements and how to manage Apple Cash accounts, see the Apple Support articles [Set up and use Apple Cash Family](#) and [View and limit your child or teen's Apple Cash activity](#).

### **Set up Apple Card Family**

You can share your Apple Card with family members, manage payments, and control account settings and limits for children who are 13 years or older. You can also review and manage everyone's details.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Family > Share My Apple Card.

The option only appears if you have Apple Card.

2. Follow the onscreen instructions.

For more information about what owners, co-owners, and participants can do with Apple Card, see the Apple Support article [Set up Apple Card Family and add a co-owner and participants](#).

### **Related**

[Turn on Ask to Buy](#)

NAV TITLE: [Set up parental controls](#)

## Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPhone

Metadata

NoIndex

Summary: On iPhone, set up Screen Time and Ask to Buy for children with Family Sharing.

With [Family Sharing](#), the organizer, or another adult designated as parent/guardian, can set up parental controls for children or other members in the Family Sharing group. You can use Screen Time to manage how your children use their Apple devices. You can also turn on Ask to Buy, so children must receive approval for eligible purchases and free downloads.

[Learn about types of Family Sharing members.](#)

### Customize parental controls during setup

When you [add a child](#) to your Family Sharing group or [set up a device for a child](#), you can customize parental controls from the start. You can change those settings at any time.

Follow the onscreen instructions during setup to add any of the following:

- Age-related restrictions for content in apps, books, TV shows, and movies
- Downtime and limits for specific apps
- Restrictions for who your child can communicate with
- Approvals for purchases or free downloads

See the Apple Support article [Use parental controls on your child's iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).


### Receive warnings about sensitive content

Screen Time can check whether you or other family members have received or sent any sexually explicit photos or videos. See [Check for sensitive images](#).

You can also block sensitive content and set restrictions on purchases. See [Block adult content](#).



### Set up Screen Time for a child

Screen Time allows you to manage settings for downtime, app use, contacts, content ratings, and more. To use Screen Time, your child must be using an eligible device. See the Screen Time section in the Apple Support article [System Requirements for iCloud](#).

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Family > [child's name] > Screen Time.
2. Tap the child for whom you want to set up Screen Time.
3. Tap Screen Time, then do any of the following:
  - *Change restrictions for iTunes & App Store purchases:* Tap iTunes & App Store purchases, then choose options for purchasing and downloading from the iTunes Store and App Store.
  - *Change access to apps and features:* Tap Allowed Apps & Features, then turn off any apps or features you want to restrict access to. If you turn off an app, it isn't deleted; it's temporarily hidden from your Home Screen until you turn it back on.
  - *Change ratings and restrictions for Store, Web, Siri & Game Center content:* Tap Store, Web, Siri & Game Center Content, then choose options for age-appropriate content ratings and access.
4. Continue following the onscreen instructions to set up Screen Time options.


For information about Screen Time settings, see [Set up Screen Time](#).

To learn more about the different content and privacy restrictions, see the Apple Support article [Use parental controls on your child's iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

If your child requests more screen time, you can approve or decline the request in Settings  [ALT N/A] > Screen Time or in Messages  [ALT N/A] .

### Turn on Ask to Buy

When you set up Ask to Buy, a child's purchases must be approved by the family organizer or a parent or guardian in the family group.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Family.
2. Tap the child for whom you want to set up Ask to Buy.
3. Tap Ask To Buy, then follow the onscreen instructions.

See the Apple Support article [Approve what kids buy with Ask to Buy](#).

**Note:** Age restrictions for Ask to Buy vary by region. In the United States, the family organizer can turn on Ask to Buy for any family member under age 18; for children under age 13, it's on by default.

P9

You can also set up an Apple Cash Family account for a child. See [Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing \(U.S. only\)](#).

### Related

[Apple Support article: If you forgot your Screen Time passcode](#)

[Apple Support article: If Ask to Buy isn't working](#)



## Set up a device for a child with Family Sharing on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** With Family Sharing, use your iPhone to set up a new iPhone or iPad for a child in your family group.


With Family Sharing, the organizer, a parent, or a guardian can use Quick Start on their iPhone to set up a new iPhone or iPad for a child and customize parental controls. You can also set up a device for a child without using Quick Start.

If you didn't sign in to a child's account when you set up their device, you can do so in Settings with their Apple Account and password, or by using proximity sign-in with a nearby iPhone or iPad.

**Note:** If the child already has an Apple Account, make sure they've been added to your [Family Sharing group](#). If the child doesn't have an Apple Account and they're under 13 ([this age varies by region](#)), you can create one for them while adding them to the group.

### Use Quick Start to set up an iPhone or iPad for a child

**Note:** Requires iOS 16 or later. Bluetooth must be turned on.


1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A], then sign in to your Apple Account on your iPhone.
2. On the new iPhone or iPad you want to set up for your child, press and hold the side button or top button until the Apple logo appears.
3. Bring your iPhone next to the new device.
4. When you see Set Up New [device] on your iPhone, tap Continue, follow the onscreen instructions, then do one of the following:
  - If you have a child in your family group, tap your child's name.
  - If you need to create a new Apple Account for a child [who is under 13](#), tap Create New Child Account, then create an Apple Account for your child.
5. Follow the onscreen instructions to finish setting up your child's device.

### Set up an iPhone or iPad for a child without using Quick Start

1. Turn on the new device.
2. When the Quick Start screen appears, tap Set Up Without Another Device, follow the onscreen instructions, then tap Set Up for a Child in My Family.
3. Continue to follow the onscreen instructions to complete the setup.

## Set up an iPhone or iPad for a child in Settings

If you didn't sign in to a child's account during setup, do the following:

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] .
2. Tap Sign in to your iPhone.
3. Do one of the following:
  - *Sign in with a nearby iPhone or iPad:* Tap Use Another Apple Device, then follow the onscreen instructions. If you already have a child in your family group, tap their name, then tap Get Started. If you need to create a new Apple Account for a child, tap Create New Child Account.
  - *Sign in with an email address or phone number and password:* Tap Sign in Manually, then tap Sign in a child in my Family.
4. Continue to follow the onscreen instructions to complete the setup.

You can set [content restrictions, communication limits, and downtime](#); set up [Screen Distance](#); [share locations](#) with all members of the Family Sharing group, including any new members added later; and turn on [Ask to Buy](#). You can change these settings at any time.

**Note:** Screen Distance is available on [supported models](#).

### Related

[Family Sharing website](#)

[Set up Screen Time on iPhone](#)

[Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices on iPhone](#)

[Apple Support article: Approve what kids buy with Ask to Buy](#)

---

# Screen Time

NAV TITLE: [Get started with Screen Time](#)


## Get started with Screen Time on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Settings on iPhone, get a report of your device use.

You can get information about how you and your family members spend time on your devices – including which apps and websites you use and how often you pick up your device. Screen Time also lets you [schedule time away from the screen](#) and [set limits for app use](#).

### Turn on Screen Time

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Screen Time.
2. Tap App & Website Activity, then tap Turn On App & Website Activity.




Tap here to get started setting up Screen Time.

[Alt text: The screen for setting up Screen Time, showing the App & Website Activity button.]


### Use Screen Time on all your devices

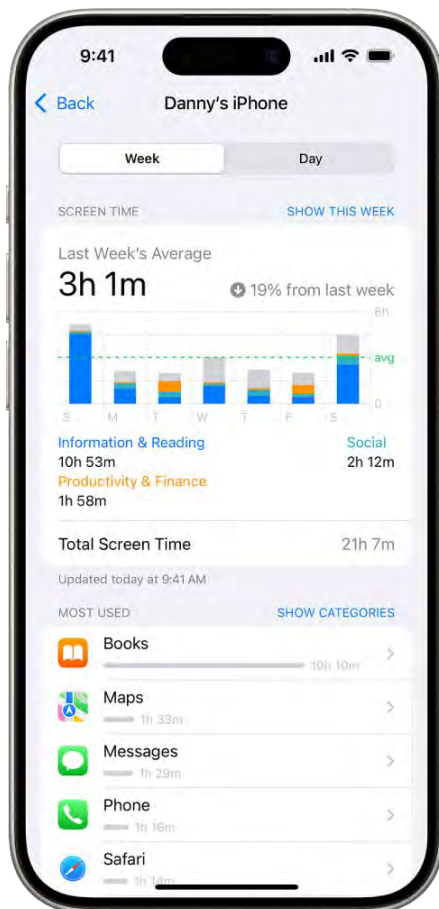
You can share your Screen Time settings and reports across all your devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Screen Time.
2. Scroll down, then turn on Share Across Devices.

### View your Screen Time summary

Any time after you [turn on Screen Time](#), you can view a report of your device use, including how much time you spend using certain kinds of apps, how often you pick up your iPhone and other devices, which apps send you the most notifications, and more.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Screen Time.
2. Tap See All App & Website Activity, then tap Devices to select which device you want to see usage for.
3. Tap Week to see a summary of your weekly use, or tap Day to see a summary of your daily use.



[Alt text: A Screen Time weekly report, showing the total amount of time spent on apps, by app and by category.]

### Use the Screen Time widget to check your device use at a glance

You can quickly check your device use by [adding a Screen Time widget](#) to your Home Screen. The widget displays information from your Screen Time summary—the larger the widget you add, the more information it displays.

If you [set up Screen Time for family members](#) through Family Sharing, you can tap the widget to see a list of the people in your family group. Tap the name of a family member whose report you want to view.

You can also view your summary by tapping a Screen Time Weekly Report notification when one appears on your screen. (If the notification disappears, you can [find it in Notification Center](#).)

### Related

[Help protect your vision health with Screen Distance on iPhone](#)

[Set up Screen Time on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Protect your vision health with Screen Distance](#)

## Help protect your vision health with Screen Distance on iPhone

### Metadata


**Summary:** In Screen Time on iPhone, turn on Screen Distance to reduce the risk of myopia and eyestrain.

Viewing a device (or a book) too closely for an extended period of time can increase the risk of myopia for younger users and eyestrain for users of all ages. The Screen Distance feature in Screen Time uses the TrueDepth camera (on [supported models](#)) to detect when you hold iPhone closer than 12 inches for an extended period, and encourages you to move it farther away.

Screen Distance can remind younger users to engage in healthy viewing habits that can lower their risk of myopia. It gives adult users the opportunity to reduce digital eyestrain.

**Note:** Screen Distance is turned on by default for children under 13 in a Family Sharing group.

### Turn Screen Distance on or off

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Screen Time.
2. Tap Screen Distance, then turn Screen Distance on or off.

With Screen Distance on, when you hold the screen too close to your face for an extended period, Screen Distance covers the screen with an alert, preventing you from continuing. When you move iPhone more than 12 inches away, you can tap Continue to resume using it.



[Alt text: A screen warning that you're holding the iPhone too close and that you should move it farther away to protect your vision health. The warning covers the screen, stopping you from continuing. There's a Continue button that becomes active when you've moved your iPhone a safe distance away.]

NAV TITLE: [Set up Screen Time](#)

## Set up Screen Time on iPhone

Metadata


Summary: In Settings on iPhone, set up Screen Time allowances and limits for yourself.

You can schedule time away from the screen, set time limits for app use, and more.

### **Schedule time away from the screen**

Block apps and notifications for periods when you want time away from your devices. For example, you might want to schedule downtime during meals or at bedtime.

During downtime, only calls, messages, and apps you choose to allow are available. You can receive calls from contacts you've selected to [allow communication with during downtime](#), and you can use apps you've chosen to [allow at all times](#).

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Screen Time.
2. Tap App & Website Activity, then turn on App & Website Activity if you haven't already.
3. Tap Downtime, then do one of the following:
  - Tap Turn On Downtime Until Tomorrow.
  - Turn on Scheduled to schedule downtime in advance.


When you schedule downtime, a 5-minute reminder is sent before downtime begins. You can ignore the reminder, or turn on downtime until the beginning of the scheduled downtime.

4. Select Every Day or Customize Days, then set the start and end times.

You can turn off the Downtime schedule at any time by turning off Scheduled.

### **Set limits for app use**

Set a time limit for a category of apps (for example, Games or Social Networking) and for individual apps.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Screen Time.
2. Tap App Limits, then tap Add Limit.
3. Select one or more app categories.

To set limits for individual apps, tap the category name to see all the apps in that category, then select the apps you want to limit. If you select multiple categories or apps, the time limit you set applies to all of them.




4. Tap Next at the top right, then set the amount of time allowed.

To set an amount of time for each day, tap Customize Days, then set limits for specific days.

5. When you finish setting limits, tap Add.

### **Choose apps and contacts to allow at all times**

Specify apps that can be used and contacts you can communicate with at all times (for example, in the event of an emergency), even during downtime.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Screen Time > Always Allowed.
2. Below Allowed Apps, tap  [ALT N/A] or  [ALT N/A] next to an app to add or remove it from the Allowed Apps list.
3. To specify contacts you want to allow communication with, tap Contacts.


The option you selected in Communication Limits appears here. You can change this setting to Specific Contacts, then choose one of the following:

- *Choose From My Contacts:* To select specific people to allow communication with.
- *Add New Contact:* To add a new contact and allow communication with that person.

4. Tap  [Alt text: the Back button] at the top left.

### Turn built-in apps and features on or off

Restrict the use of built-in apps or features. If you turn off an app, it isn't deleted; it's temporarily hidden from your Home Screen until you turn it back on.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Screen Time.
2. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
3. Tap Allowed Apps & Features, then turn off the apps or features you want to restrict.

### Related

[Set up Screen Time for a family member](#)

[Set communication and safety limits and block inappropriate content](#)

NAV TITLE: [Set communication and safety limits and block nudity](#)

## Set communication and safety limits and block nude content on iPhone


### Metadata

Summary: In Screen Time on iPhone, set safety limits and privacy protections.

Set safety limits and privacy protections and block nude images.

### Allow or block calls and messages from specific contacts

You can either allow or block communication—including incoming and outgoing phone calls, FaceTime calls, and messages—from certain contacts in iCloud, either at all times or during certain periods.

1. If you haven't already turned on Contacts in iCloud, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name] > iCloud, tap See All, then turn on Contacts.
2. Go to Settings > Screen Time.
3. Tap Communication Limits, tap During Screen Time, then select one of the following for communication at all times (other than during downtime):



- *Contacts Only*: To allow communication only with your contacts.
  - *Contacts & Groups with at Least One Contact*: To only allow one-on-one conversations with people in your contacts and group conversations that include at least one person in your contacts.
  - *Everyone*: To allow conversations with anyone, including unknown numbers.
4. Tap Back at the top left, then tap During Downtime.

The option you selected in step 3 (for During Screen Time) is already set here. You can change this setting to Specific Contacts, then choose one of the following:

- *Choose From My Contacts*: To select contacts to allow communication with during downtime.
- *Add New Contact*: To add a contact and allow communication with them during Downtime.


If someone who's currently blocked by your Communication Limit settings tries to call you or send you a message, their communication won't go through.

If you try to call or send a message to someone who's currently blocked by your Communication Limit settings, their name or number appears in red in your list of recent calls or messages and your communication won't go through. You can communicate with them when the communication limit is changed. If the limit applies only to downtime, you receive a Time Limit message. You can resume communication with them when downtime is over.

To resume communication with contacts who are blocked by your Communication Limit settings, change the settings by following the steps above.

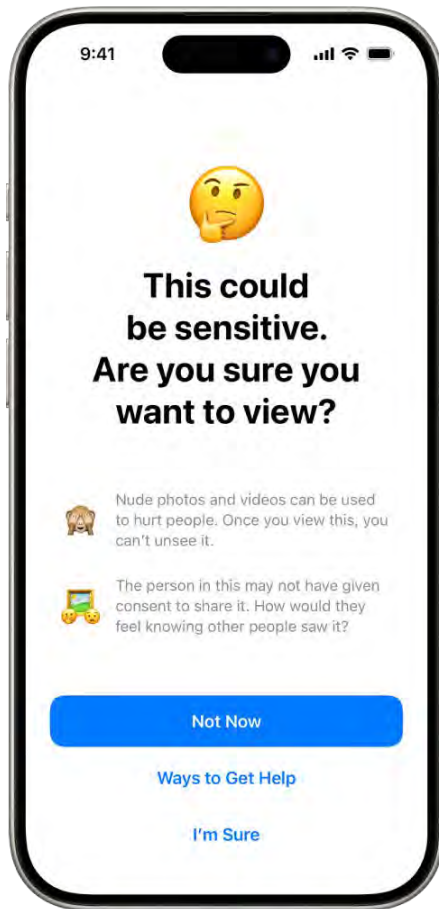
### **Check for sensitive images**

You can have your iPhone (or your family member's iPhone) detect nudity in images before they're received in Messages, AirDrop, [Contact Posters](#), FaceTime messages, the Photos app, and third-party apps that adopt Apple's Communication Safety framework. If nudity is detected in an image, the image is blurred and resources are provided to help your child handle the situation (not available in all countries or regions). This feature doesn't give Apple access to the photos. See the Apple Support article [About communication safety on your child's Apple device](#).

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Screen Time.
2. Tap Communication Safety, then turn on Communication Safety.

When Communication Safety is turned on, iPhone detects nude images before they're viewed, and displays a warning.

The parent's Screen Time [passcode](#) must be entered before any image determined by iPhone to contain nudity can be viewed.




[Alt text: The Sensitive Content Warning screen, warning of possible nudity in an image. At the bottom of the screen are the buttons: Not Now, Ways to Get Help, and I'm Sure.]

**Note:** When you turn on Communication Safety, it turns on Sensitive Content Warning in Settings > Privacy & Security. You can also turn on Sensitive Content Warning separately in Settings > Privacy & Security. See [Receive warnings about sensitive content](#).

### Block adult content


Set Content & Privacy Restrictions to have Screen Time restrict access to inappropriate content and set restrictions for iTunes Store and App Store purchases.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Screen Time.
2. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Set restrictions for store purchases and redownloads:* Tap iTunes Store & App Store purchases.
  - *Turn an app or feature on or off:* Tap Allowed Apps & Features.

- *Set access and content ratings for store, web, Siri, and Game Center content:* Tap Store, Web, Siri & Game Center Content.
- *Allow changes to privacy settings in certain features, apps, or media:* Tap an option below Privacy, then tap Allow Changes or Don't Allow Changes.
- *Allow changes to other settings:* Tap an option below Allow Changes To, then tap Allow or Don't Allow.


### **Block adult websites**

You can block specific websites by URL.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Screen Time.
2. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
3. Turn on Store, Web, Siri & Game Center Content, then tap Web Content.
4. Select Limit Adult Websites, tap Add Website below Never Allow, and enter the URLs of the websites you want to block

### **Lock your Screen Time settings**

You can secure your Screen Time settings by entering a Screen Time passcode. That way, no one can change the settings without first entering the Screen Time passcode.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Screen Time.
2. Tap Lock Screen Time Settings (scroll down, if necessary).
3. Enter a four-digit passcode, re-enter it, then tap OK.

If you forget your Screen Time passcode, see the Apple support article [If you forgot your Screen Time passcode](#).

### **Related**

[Set up Screen Time](#)

[About communication safety in Messages](#)

NAV TITLE: [Set up Screen Time for a family member](#)

## Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPhone

#### Metadata

**Summary:** Set up Screen Time for a family member either on their device or through Family Sharing on your device.

You can set up Screen Time for a family member on their device following the steps in [Set up Screen Time](#), or if they're in a Family Sharing group for which you're the organizer, you can [set up Screen Time for them through Family Sharing](#) on your device.

For children under 13, [Communication Safety](#) and [Screen Distance](#) are turned on by default. The Web Content filter is set by default to Limit Adult Websites for children under 13. (This age varies by country or region.)

### Related

[Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPhone](#)

[Set up a device for a child with Family Sharing on iPhone](#)

[Set up Screen Time on iPhone](#)

---

## Accessories

NAV TITLE: [Charging cable](#)

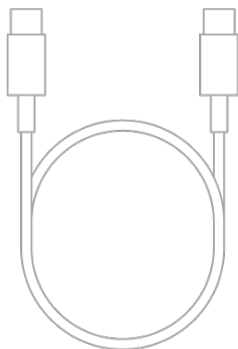
### Charging cable for iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Connect iPhone to a power outlet using the included cable and a compatible power adapter.

Your iPhone includes one of the following charging cables:

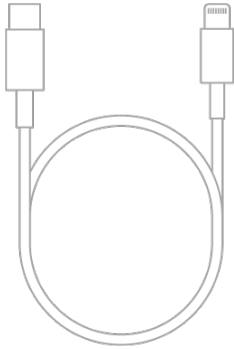
#### USB-C Cable



[Alt text: The USB-C Cable.]

You can connect iPhone to a power outlet [using a compatible power adapter](#) (sold separately) and the included cable. You can also [connect the included cable](#) to your computer's USB-C port for charging, transferring files, and more.

### USB-C to Lightning Cable



[Alt text: The USB-C to Lightning Cable.]

You can connect iPhone to a power outlet [using a compatible power adapter](#) (sold separately) and the included cable. You can also [connect the included cable](#) to your computer's USB-C port for charging, transferring files, and more.

NAV TITLE: [Power adapters](#)

## Power adapters for iPhone

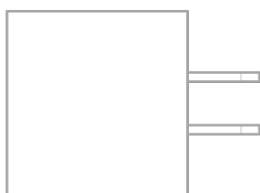
Metadata

Summary: Connect iPhone to a power outlet using a compatible power adapter and charging cable.

You can connect iPhone to a power outlet [using its charging cable](#) (included) and a compatible power adapter (sold separately).

You can use the following Apple USB power adapters to charge iPhone. The size and style may vary depending on the country or region.

### Apple 20W USB-C power adapter

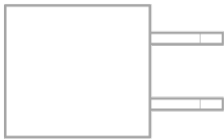


[Alt text: The Apple 20-watt USB-C power adapter.]

**Note:** For fast charging, iPhone 12, iPhone SE (3rd generation), and later models require a power adapter with a minimum power output of 20 watts, such as the Apple 20W USB power adapter. If you use a third-party power adapter, it should meet these recommended specifications:

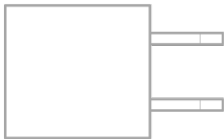
- *Frequency:* 50 to 60 Hz, single phase
- *Line Voltage:* 100 to 240 VAC
- *Output Voltage/Current:* 9 VDC/2.2 A
- *Minimum Power Output:* 20 W
- *Output Port:* USB-C

#### **Apple 18W USB-C power adapter**



[Alt text: The Apple 18-watt USB-C power adapter.]

#### **Apple 5W USB power adapter**



[Alt text: The Apple 5-watt USB power adapter.]

You can also use Apple USB power adapters for iPad and Mac notebooks to charge iPhone, and you can use third-party power adapters that are compliant with applicable country regulations and international and regional safety standards.

#### **Related**

[“Charging” in Important safety information](#)

[Apple Support article: About Apple USB power adapters](#)

[Apple Support article: Fast charge your iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [MagSafe chargers and battery packs](#)

## MagSafe chargers and battery packs for iPhone

#### Metadata

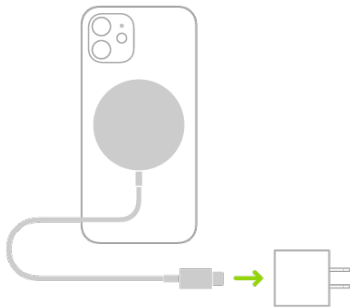
**Summary:** Wirelessly charge iPhone using MagSafe Charger or MagSafe Duo Charger. You can also extend the battery life using MagSafe Battery Pack.

On [supported models](#), MagSafe chargers and battery packs snap to the back of iPhone or its MagSafe case or sleeve. The magnets ensure proper alignment for fast wireless charging, and you can hold and use iPhone while it's charging.


Without the magnetic alignment, MagSafe chargers can also charge other iPhone models and AirPods. (AirPods and MagSafe chargers, battery packs, cases, and sleeves are sold separately.)

### Charge iPhone or AirPods with MagSafe Charger

1. Connect MagSafe Charger to power using a compatible power adapter (sold separately).



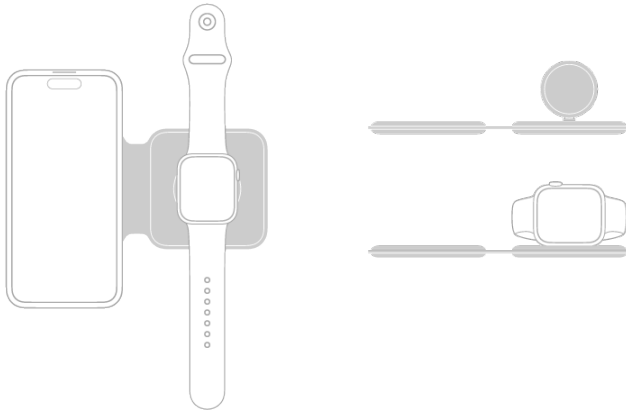
[Alt text: An illustration showing one end of MagSafe Charger attached to the back of iPhone and the other end connecting to a power adapter.]

2. Do one of the following:
  - *iPhone:* ([supported models](#)) Place MagSafe Charger on the back of iPhone or its MagSafe case or sleeve. The charging symbol appears when iPhone starts charging.  
**Note:** If iPhone Leather Wallet is attached, remove it before placing MagSafe Charger on the back of iPhone.
  - *Other iPhone models:* Place iPhone face up on the center of MagSafe Charger. When iPhone is aligned properly with the charger,  [Alt text: the Battery Charging icon] appears in the status bar.
  - *AirPods (2nd generation) with Wireless Charging Case, AirPods (3rd generation), and AirPods Pro:* Place your AirPods in the charging case, close the lid, then place the case with the status light facing up on the center of MagSafe Charger. When the case is aligned properly with the charger, the status light turns on for several seconds, then turns off while continuing to charge.

See the Apple Support article [How to use your MagSafe Charger](#).

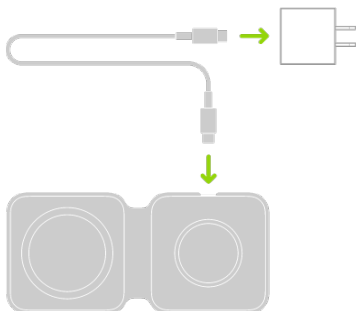
## Charge iPhone or AirPods and Apple Watch with MagSafe Duo Charger

With MagSafe Duo Charger, you can charge your iPhone or AirPods at the same time you charge your Apple Watch. (MagSafe Duo Charger, Apple Watch, and AirPods are sold separately.)



[Alt text: An illustration on the left shows iPhone and Apple Watch placed flat on the charging surfaces of MagSafe Duo Charger. An illustration at the top right shows the Apple Watch charging surface is raised. An illustration below it shows Apple Watch placed on the raised charging surface.]

1. Connect MagSafe Duo Charger to power using the [Apple 20W USB-C power adapter](#) or another compatible power adapter (sold separately).



[Alt text: An illustration showing one end of a cable connecting to a power adapter and the other end connecting to MagSafe Duo Charger.]

2. To charge iPhone or AirPods, do one of the following:
  - *iPhone*: Place iPhone face up on the center of the iPhone charging surface. [Supported models](#) help you align iPhone with the charger, and the charging symbol appears when iPhone starts charging. On other models, the battery charging indicator appears when you properly align iPhone with the charging surface. Unless your iPhone is in Silent mode, you hear a chime when charging begins.

**Note:** If iPhone Leather Wallet is attached, remove it before placing iPhone on MagSafe Duo Charger.



- *AirPods (2nd generation) with Wireless Charging Case, AirPods (3rd generation), and AirPods Pro*: Place your AirPods in the charging case, close the lid, then place the case with the status light facing up on the center of the iPhone charging surface. When the case is aligned properly with the charger, the status light turns on for several seconds, then turns off while continuing to charge.
3. To charge Apple Watch, do one of the following:
- With the Apple Watch charging surface lying flat and the Apple Watch band open, place Apple Watch face up on the charging surface.
  - With the Apple Watch charging surface raised, place Apple Watch on its side with its back against the charging surface. Apple Watch automatically goes into Nightstand mode, so you can also use it as an alarm clock.

The concave charging surface magnetically snaps to the back of your Apple Watch and aligns it properly. When charging begins, a charging symbol appears on the watch face.

### Charge iPhone with MagSafe Battery Pack

MagSafe Battery Pack magnetically attaches to [supported models](#) and extends the battery life.

**Note:** If iPhone Leather Wallet is attached, remove it before placing MagSafe Battery Pack.

- *Charge your iPhone on the go*: Place MagSafe Battery Pack on the back of iPhone or its MagSafe case or sleeve. The charging symbol appears when iPhone starts charging.
- *See the battery status of MagSafe Battery Pack and iPhone*: Check the Batteries widget in Today View or on the Home Screen. See [Add a Batteries widget to your Lock Screen or Home Screen](#).
- *Charge MagSafe Battery Pack and iPhone*: With MagSafe Battery Pack on iPhone, connect either device to power using the [USB-C to Lightning Cable](#) or [USB-C Cable](#) and the [Apple 20W USB-C power adapter](#) or another compatible power adapter (minimum power output of 20 watts; sold separately). The status indicator on MagSafe Battery Pack is amber while charging, then turns green when charging is complete.

**Note:** By default, charging is limited to 90 percent to optimize the lifespan of MagSafe Battery Pack. To remove the charging limit, [open Control Center](#), tap Low Power Mode, then tap Charge past 90%.

You can also charge MagSafe Battery Pack without iPhone.

See the Apple Support article [How to use your MagSafe Battery Pack](#).

### Related

[“Charging” in Important safety information](#)  
[Qi-certified wireless chargers for iPhone](#)


## Qi-certified wireless chargers for iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** Charge iPhone using a Qi-certified wireless charger.

You can wirelessly charge iPhone using a Qi-certified charger (sold separately). You can also use a Qi-certified charger to charge AirPods.

### Charge iPhone or AirPods with a Qi-certified charger

1. Connect the charger to power. Use the power adapter that came with your charger or a power adapter recommended by the manufacturer.
2. Do one of the following:
  - *iPhone:* Place iPhone face up on the center of the charger. When iPhone is aligned properly with the charger,  [Alt text: the Battery Charging icon appears in the status bar.
  - *AirPods (2nd generation) with Wireless Charging Case, AirPods (3rd generation), and AirPods Pro:* Place your AirPods in the charging case, close the lid, then place the case with the status light facing up on the center of the charger. When the case is aligned properly with the charger, the status light turns on for several seconds, then turns off while continuing to charge.

See the Apple Support articles [How to wirelessly charge your iPhone](#) and [Charge your AirPods and learn about battery life](#).

### Related

[MagSafe chargers and battery packs for iPhone](#)

## AirPods and EarPods

NAV TITLE: [Use AirPods](#)


### Use AirPods with iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** Use AirPods to listen to audio playing on iPhone, make and answer FaceTime calls, listen and respond to messages, hear reminders, and more.

After you pair AirPods with iPhone, you can use AirPods to listen to audio playing on iPhone, make and answer calls, listen and respond to messages, hear reminders when you need them, listen to conversations more easily in noisy environments, and more.

### Pair AirPods with your iPhone

1. On iPhone, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Bluetooth, then turn on Bluetooth.
2. Go to the Home Screen on your iPhone.
3. Do one of the following:
  - *AirPods (1st, 2nd, and 3rd generation) and AirPods Pro*: Open the case with your AirPods inside, then hold it next to your iPhone.
  - *AirPods Max*: Take your AirPods Max out of the Smart Case, then hold AirPods Max next to your iPhone.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions, then tap Done.

**Note:** If onscreen instructions for pairing your AirPods Max don't appear, go to Settings > Bluetooth, then select your AirPods Max. If the status light doesn't flash white on AirPods Max, press and hold the noise control button until it does.

Your AirPods are automatically paired with all of your supported devices where you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#) (iOS 10, iPadOS 13, macOS 10.12, watchOS 3, or later required).

**Note:** If you can't pair your AirPods, see the Apple Support article [If your AirPods won't connect](#).

### Do more with AirPods and your iPhone

See the [AirPods User Guide](#) for detailed instructions on how to get the most out of your AirPods.

### Related

[Use audiogram data in Health on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use EarPods](#)

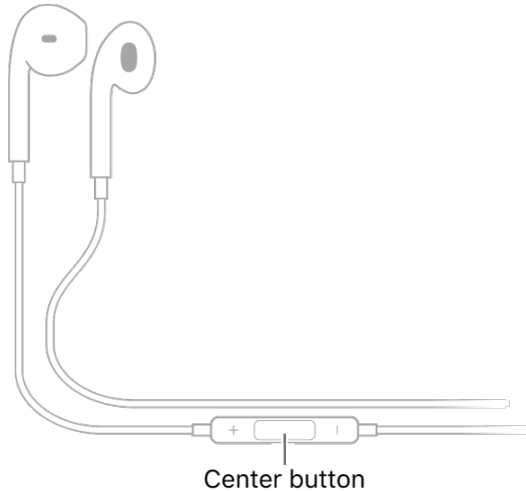
## Use EarPods with iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Use the headset to listen to music and videos and to make calls.

You can use EarPods (sold separately) to listen to music and videos and to make calls on iPhone. EarPods feature a microphone, volume buttons, and the center button.

Use the center button to answer and end calls, control audio and video playback, and use Siri, even when iPhone is locked.



[Alt text: Apple EarPods; the center button is located on the cord leading to the earpiece for the right ear.]

### Control audio with your EarPods

- *Pause:* Press the center button. Press again to resume playback.
- *Skip forward:* Press the center button twice quickly.
- *Skip backward:* Press the center button three times quickly.
- *Fast-forward:* Press the center button twice quickly and hold.

### Manage calls using your EarPods

- *Answer an incoming call:* Press the center button.
- *End the current call:* Press the center button.
- *Switch to an incoming or on-hold call, and put the current call on hold:* Press the center button. Press again to switch back to the first call.

### Ask Siri with your EarPods

Press and hold the center button until you hear a beep. Let go, then ask Siri to perform a task or answer your question. See [Use Siri on iPhone](#).

### Related

[Use audiogram data in Health on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Apple Watch](#)

# Use Apple Watch with iPhone

Metadata

NoIndex

## Pair Apple Watch with iPhone

On your iPhone, tap the Apple Watch app  [ALT N/A], then follow the onscreen instructions.


See [Set up and pair your Apple Watch with iPhone](#) in the Apple Watch User Guide. (Apple Watch sold separately.)

## Unlock iPhone with Apple Watch

When you're wearing your Apple Watch (Series 3 and later), you can use it to securely unlock your iPhone ([models with Face ID](#)) when you're wearing a face mask (watchOS 7.4 or later required).

**Note:** On all iPhone 12, iPhone 13, iPhone 14, iPhone 15 models it's not necessary to use Apple Watch to unlock iPhone when you're wearing a face mask. See [Set up Face ID on iPhone](#).

To allow Apple Watch to unlock your iPhone, do the following:

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Face ID & Passcode.
2. Scroll down, then turn on Apple Watch (below Unlock with Apple Watch).

If you have more than one watch, turn on the setting for each one.

To unlock your iPhone while you're wearing your Apple Watch and a face mask, raise iPhone or tap its screen to wake it, then glance at your iPhone.

**Note:** To unlock your iPhone, your Apple Watch must have a passcode, be unlocked and on your wrist, and be close to your iPhone.

## Work out with Apple Fitness+

Used in conjunction with Apple Watch, Apple Fitness+ is a subscription service that lets you choose from a catalog of workouts led by expert trainers. While you follow a workout on your iPhone, in-session metrics like heart rate and calories burned (which are captured by your watch) appear on your screen. (watchOS 7.2 or later required; Apple Fitness+ availability varies by country or region.) See [All about Apple Fitness+](#) in the Apple Watch User Guide.

**Note:** With Fitness on iPhone, you can view your active calories and steps, set a move goal, track your progress, and see your movement trends over time—even if you don't have an Apple Watch. See [Track your daily activity and change your move goal in Fitness](#).

## Collect health and fitness data from Apple Watch

Apple Watch can send data about your health and fitness to iPhone for you to [view in Health](#). Apple Watch can also send notifications about high heart rates, low heart rates, loud environmental sounds, and more to your iPhone.

See [Track important health information](#) in the Apple Watch User Guide.

## Apple TV, smart TVs, and video displays

NAV TITLE: [Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV](#)

### Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPhone



Metadata

Summary: Send video and photos from iPhone to Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV.

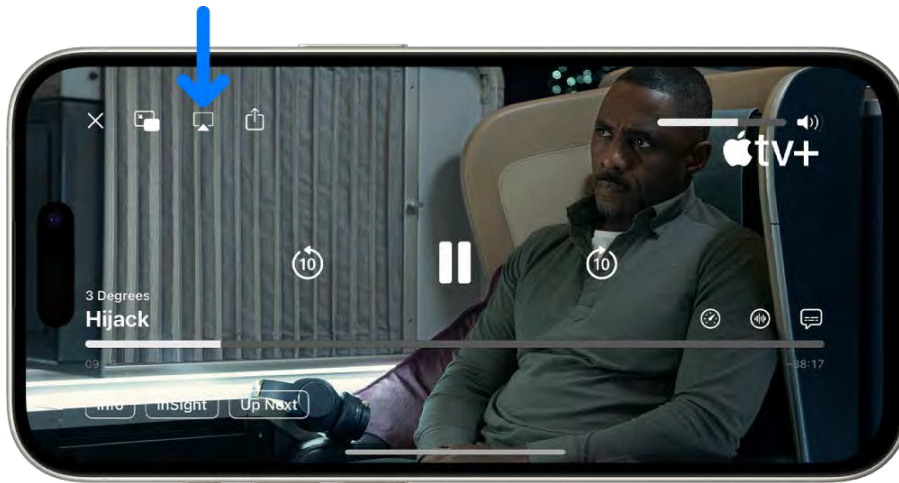
You can use your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV to watch videos and view photos streamed from your iPhone.

**Note:** To stream videos or photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from your iPhone, both devices must be on the same [Wi-Fi network](#).

#### Play video on Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV

1. While playing video in the Apple TV app  [ALT N/A] or another supported video app on your iPhone, tap the screen to show the controls.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the AirPlay button], then choose your Apple TV or AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPhone.





[Alt text: A movie playing on the iPhone screen. In the middle of the screen are the playback controls. The AirPlay button is near the top left.]


- COMMENT - #ba #tv-movies

To change the playback destination, choose a different AirPlay option on your iPhone screen.

### Show photos on Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV


1. Go to the Photos app 📷 [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo, then tap  [Alt text: the Share button] .
3. Swipe up, tap  [Alt text: the AirPlay button] , then choose your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPhone.

To stop streaming photos, tap  [Alt text: the AirPlay button] near the top of the iPhone screen, then tap Turn off AirPlay.


### Turn automatic AirPlay streaming on or off

You can allow your iPhone to discover and automatically connect to any frequently used Apple TV or smart TV when playing content from apps that you regularly use with AirPlay.


Go to Settings  [ALT N/A ] > General > AirPlay & Continuity, then choose Automatic, Never, or Ask.

### Mirror your iPhone on Apple TV or a smart TV

On Apple TV or a smart TV, you can show whatever appears on your iPhone.

1. [Open Control Center](#) on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Screen Mirroring button] , then choose your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPhone.

To switch back to iPhone, open Control Center, tap  [Alt text: the Screen Mirroring button] , then tap Stop Mirroring.

**Note:** For a list of AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, see the [Home accessories website](#).

To learn more about using Apple TV, see the [Apple TV User Guide](#).

### Related

[Stream video and audio from your iPhone with AirPlay](#)

[Play audio from iPhone on HomePod and other wireless speakers](#)

NAV TITLE: [Connect to a display with a cable](#)

## Connect iPhone to a display with a cable

### Metadata

**Summary:** With the appropriate cable or adapter, connect your iPhone to a display, like a TV, projector, or computer monitor.

With the appropriate cable or adapter, you can connect your iPhone to a secondary display, like a computer monitor, TV, or projector.

1. Depending on your iPhone model, plug a Lightning Digital AV Adapter, Lightning to VGA Adapter, USB-C Display AV Adapter, or USB-C VGA Multi-port Adapter into the charging port on the bottom of iPhone.
2. Connect an HDMI or VGA cable to the adapter.
3. Connect the other end of the HDMI or VGA cable to the monitor, TV, or projector.
4. If necessary, switch to the correct video source on the monitor, TV, or projector. If you need help, use the display's manual.

The adapters have an extra port so you can connect the charging cable and charge your iPhone while connected to a monitor, TV, or projector.

### Related

[Stream video and audio from your iPhone with AirPlay](#)

[Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [HomePod and other wireless speakers](#)






# Play audio from iPhone on HomePod and other wireless speakers

## Metadata

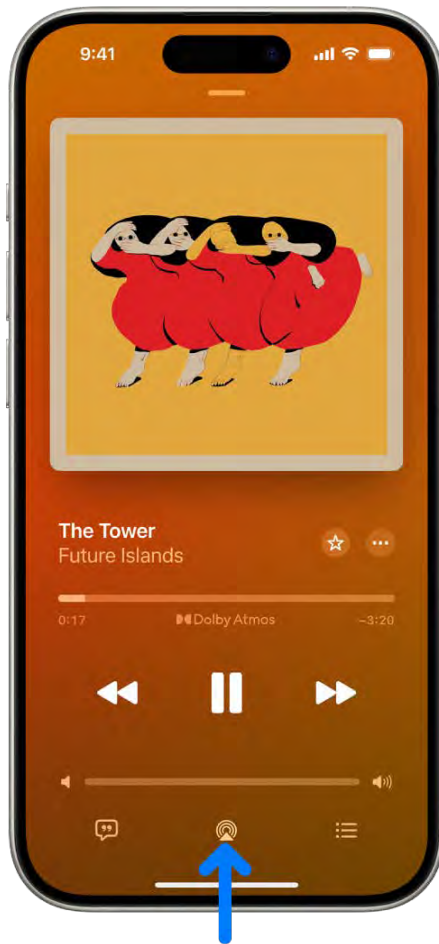
**Summary:** Stream audio wirelessly from iPhone to AirPlay 2-enabled devices and Bluetooth devices.

You can play audio from iPhone on wireless devices like HomePod, Apple TV, AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, and Bluetooth® headphones and speakers.

### **Play audio from iPhone on a wireless device**


1. Open an audio app such as Podcasts  [ALT N/A] or Music  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Choose an item to play.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the Playback Destination button], then choose a playback destination.

- COMMENT - #ba #music



[Alt text: The playback controls for Music, including the Playback Destination button at the bottom of the screen.]

**Note:** If your AirPlay 2-enabled devices don't appear in the list of playback destinations, make sure they're on the same Wi-Fi network. With a Bluetooth device, the playback destination returns to iPhone if you move the device out of Bluetooth range.

To select the playback destination, you can also tap  [Alt text: the Playback Destination button] on the Lock Screen or in Control Center.

**Note:** For information about setting up a Bluetooth audio device, see [Pair your iPhone with a Bluetooth accessory](#).


### Play audio on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices

With AirPlay 2 and iPhone, you can play audio on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices connected to the same Wi-Fi network. For example, you can play a party playlist on HomePod speakers in the living room and kitchen, on an Apple TV in the bedroom, and on an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV in the den.

**Siri:** Say something like:

- “Stop playing music everywhere”
- “Set the dining room volume to 10 percent”
- “What’s playing in the kitchen?”
- “Play a song I like in the kitchen”
- “Add the living room speaker”
- “Remove the music from the kitchen”
- “Move the music to the den”

You can also choose playback destinations from the iPhone screen.


1. Tap  [Alt text: the Playback Destination button in Control Center, on the Lock Screen, or on the Now Playing screen for the app you’re listening to.
2. Select each device you want to use.

**Note:** Devices arranged in a stereo pair are treated as a single audio device.

#### Hand off audio from iPhone to HomePod

While playing audio from Music, Podcasts, or another audio app, bring iPhone close to the top of HomePod.

Audio handoff has the following requirements:

- You must be [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- On your iPhone, you’ve [turned on Wi-Fi](#) and [Handoff](#).
- iPhone and HomePod must be in the same HomeKit home and on the same Wi-Fi network.
- Your devices must have Bluetooth turned on in Settings  [ALT N/A ] and be within Bluetooth range of one another (about 33 feet or 10 meters).

To disable Handoff between iPhone and HomePod and other devices, go to Settings > General > AirPlay & Continuity.

**Note:** To learn more about using HomePod speakers and Apple TV, see the [HomePod User Guide](#) and [Apple TV User Guide](#).

For a list of AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, see the [Home accessories website](#).

#### Related

[Play audio from your iPhone on a Mac or TV](#)

[Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPhone](#)

# Magic Keyboard


## Pair Magic Keyboard with iPhone

### Metadata


**Summary:** On iPhone, use Magic Keyboard (including Magic Keyboard with Numeric Keypad) to enter text.

You can use Magic Keyboard, including Magic Keyboard with Numeric Keypad, to enter text on iPhone. Magic Keyboard connects to iPhone using Bluetooth®.

### Pair Magic Keyboard

1. Make sure the keyboard is turned on and charged.
2. On iPhone, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Bluetooth, then turn on Bluetooth.
3. Select the device when it appears in the Other Devices list.

**Note:** If Magic Keyboard is already paired with another device, you must unpair them before you can connect Magic Keyboard to your iPhone. Do one of the following:

- *On iPhone or iPad:* See [Unpair a Bluetooth accessory](#).
- *On macOS 13 or later:* Choose Apple menu  [ALT N/A] > System Settings, click Bluetooth in the sidebar, Control-click the device, then choose Forget.
- *On macOS 12.5 or earlier:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, click Bluetooth, Control-click the device name, then click Remove.

### Reconnect Magic Keyboard to iPhone

Magic Keyboard disconnects when you turn its switch to Off or when you move it or iPhone out of Bluetooth range—about 33 feet (10 meters).

To reconnect, turn the keyboard switch to On, or bring the keyboard and iPhone back into range, then tap any key.

### Related

[Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone](#)  
[Commands for dictating text on iPhone](#)

## Enter characters with diacritical marks while using Magic Keyboard with iPhone

#### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, enter accent characters and other diacritical marks while using Magic Keyboard.

If your Magic Keyboard doesn't include accents and other diacritical marks for the language you're typing, you can use an Option key modifier or the onscreen keyboard to enter those marks.


#### Use the Option key to enter a diacritical mark for a character

To enter a character with a diacritical mark, you can press the Option key on Magic Keyboard to select a mark.

##### 1. Do one of the following:

- [Add or remove a keyboard for another language](#) that supports diacritical marks, then in an app, [switch to that language keyboard](#).

For example, add the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard, then in an app, press and hold the Control key on Magic Keyboard, then press the Space bar until you select Español (México).

- Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, then [choose an alternative keyboard layout](#) that supports diacritical marks.

For example, if you have the English (US) language keyboard, tap English (US), then choose U.S. International — PC or ABC — Extended.

##### 2. In an app, press and hold the Option key, then press a key that enters a diacritical mark.

For example, the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard and the U.S. International — PC alternative layout support these diacritical marks:

- *Acute accent* (for example, é): Option-E.
- *Grave accent* (for example, è): Option-`.
- *Tilde* (for example, ñ): Option-N.
- *Diaeresis or umlaut* (for example, ü): Option-U.
- *Circumflex* (for example, ê): Option-I.


##### 3. Press the letter.

For example, to enter ñ using the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard or the U.S. International — PC alternative layout, press Option-N, then type an *n*.


**Note:** The ABC - Extended alternative layout also allows you to enter tone marks for typing Mandarin Chinese in Pinyin orthography. For example, to type ǚ in lǚxíng (“travel”), press Option-V, then type a *v*. In addition, the ABC - Extended layout allows you to type diacritical

marks and letters from several different European languages, such as Czech, French, German, Hungarian, and Polish.

### Use the onscreen keyboard to enter a diacritical mark

1. To show the onscreen keyboard, press  [Alt text: the Eject key] on Magic Keyboard.
2. On the onscreen keyboard, touch and hold the letter, number, or symbol on the keyboard that's related to the character you want.

For example, to enter é, touch and hold the e key.

3. Slide your finger to choose a variant.
4. To hide the onscreen keyboard when you're finished, press  [Alt text: the Eject key] on Magic Keyboard.

### Related

[Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Switch between keyboards](#)

## Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone

#### Metadata



**Summary:** With Magic Keyboard and iPhone, switch between the language keyboards, an emoji keyboard, and the onscreen keyboard.

With Magic Keyboard, you can switch between the language keyboard for your region, an emoji keyboard, other language keyboards that you add, and the onscreen keyboard.

### Switch between language keyboards and the onscreen emoji keyboard

1. On Magic Keyboard, press and hold the Control key.
2. Press the Space bar to cycle between the language keyboard for your region, the emoji keyboard, and [any keyboards you added](#) for typing in different languages.

### Show or hide the onscreen keyboard

To show the onscreen keyboard, press  [Alt text: the Eject key] on Magic Keyboard. To hide the onscreen keyboard, press  [Alt text: the Eject key] again.

NAV TITLE: [Dictate text](#)


## Dictate text while using Magic Keyboard with iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, dictate text instead of typing it on Magic Keyboard.

You can dictate text instead of typing it on Magic Keyboard.

**Note:** Dictation may not be available in all languages or in all countries or regions, and features may vary. Cellular data charges may apply.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > General > Keyboard, turn on Enable Dictation, then choose a dictation shortcut.
2. To insert text by dictating, tap to place the insertion point, then press the dictation shortcut key twice.
3. To use Magic Keyboard again, quickly press the dictation shortcut key twice.

As you speak to insert text, iPhone automatically inserts punctuation for you. You can insert emoji by saying their names (for example, “mind blown emoji” or “happy emoji”).

### Related

[Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use shortcuts](#)


## Use shortcuts on Magic Keyboard with iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** Perform searches and use text replacements from anywhere on iPhone without taking your hands away from Magic Keyboard.

You can perform searches and use text replacements from anywhere on iPhone without taking your hands away from Magic Keyboard.

- *Open Search:* Press Command-Space.

**Note:** You can change the actions that are performed by the Command key (and other modifier keys like Caps Lock). Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, tap Modifier Keys, tap a key, then choose the action you want it to perform.

- *Use text replacements:* You can set up text replacements that enter words or phrases after you type just a few characters. For example, type “omw” to enter “On my way!” See [Save keystrokes with text replacements on iPhone](#).

- *Choose additional accessibility keyboard shortcuts:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Keyboards > Full Keyboard Access, then turn on Full Keyboard Access. See [Control iPhone with an external keyboard](#).

## Related

[Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone](#)


NAV TITLE: [Choose an alternative keyboard layout](#)

## Choose an alternative layout for Magic Keyboard with iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, choose a layout that allows you to enter letters and marks that are different from the ones on Magic Keyboard.

With an alternative keyboard layout, you can enter letters and marks that are different from the ones on Magic Keyboard. For example, with the ABC - Extended keyboard layout, you can type letters and [enter diacritical marks](#) for several different European languages and tone marks for Mandarin Chinese in Pinyin.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard.
2. Tap a language at the top of the screen, then choose an alternative layout from the list.

## Related

[Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone](#)


NAV TITLE: [Change typing assistance options](#)

## Change typing assistance options for Magic Keyboard with iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, change Magic Keyboard options for autocorrection, autocapitalization, and more.

You can change Magic Keyboard options for autocorrection, autocapitalization, and more.

Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, then do any of the following:



- *Turn Auto-Capitalization on or off:* When this option is selected, an app supporting this feature capitalizes proper nouns and the first words in sentences as you type.
- *Turn Auto-Correction on or off:* When this option is selected, an app supporting this feature corrects the spelling as you type.
- *Turn “.” Shortcut on or off:* When this option is selected, double-tapping the space bar inserts a period followed by a space.
- *Change the action performed by the Command key or other modifier key:* Tap Modifier Keys, tap a key, then choose the action you want it to perform.

## Related

[Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [External storage devices](#)

# Connect external storage devices to iPhone

## Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, use files stored on USB storage devices and SD cards.

You can use the Files app and other supported apps to access files stored on external devices, such as USB drives and SD cards, connected to your iPhone.

## Connect a USB drive or an SD card reader

1. Attach the USB drive or SD card reader to the charging port on your iPhone using a compatible connector or adapter.

You may need the Lightning to USB Camera Adapter, Lightning to USB 3 Camera Adapter, USB-C to SD Card Camera Reader, or Lightning to SD Card Camera Reader (all sold separately).

**Note:** An external storage device must have only a single data partition, and it must be formatted as APFS, APFS (encrypted), macOS Extended (HFS+), exFAT (FAT64), FAT32, or FAT. To change the formatting of a storage device, use a Mac or PC.

2. Do any of the following:

- *Insert an SD memory card into a card reader:* Don't force the card into the slot on the reader; it fits only one way.

**Note:** You can import photos and videos from the memory card directly to the Photos app. See [Import and export photos and videos on iPhone](#).

- *View the contents of the drive or memory card:* In a supported app (for example, Files), tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device below Locations. If you don't see Locations, tap Browse again at the bottom of the screen.
- *Disconnect the drive or card reader:* Remove it from the charging port on iPhone.

**Note:** External hard drives often require an external power source when used with iPhone. If an external hard drive doesn't supply its own power, and your iPhone has a USB-C connector, you can use a powered USB hub. If your iPhone has a Lightning connector, you can use the Lightning to USB 3 Camera Adapter connected to a USB power adapter.

## Related

[Modify files and folders in Files on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Connect Bluetooth accessories](#)


# Connect iPhone to Bluetooth accessories

## Metadata

**Summary:** Connect your iPhone to Bluetooth accessories such as headphones, speakers, game controllers, keyboards, and more.

Connect your iPhone to Bluetooth® accessories to stream music and videos, play games, connect to keyboards, and more.

## Pair your iPhone with a Bluetooth accessory

1. Put your Bluetooth accessory in discovery mode. If you aren't sure how to make it discoverable, check the instructions that came with your accessory.
2. On your iPhone, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Bluetooth and make sure Bluetooth is turned on.
3. Tap the name of the accessory when it appears onscreen, below the devices list.


You might need to enter the accessory PIN or passcode. Check the instructions that came with your accessory.

**Note:** iPhone must be within about 33 feet (10 meters) of the Bluetooth accessory to pair.

If you have trouble pairing your accessory, see the Apple Support article [If you can't connect a Bluetooth accessory to your iPhone or iPad](#).

## Unpair a Bluetooth accessory


1. On your iPhone, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Bluetooth.

2. Tap  [Alt text: the Info button] next to the accessory you want to unpair, then tap Forget This Device.
3. Tap Forget Device to confirm.

If you don't see the devices list, make sure [Bluetooth is turned on](#).

**Note:** If you unpair AirPods, they're automatically unpaired from other devices where you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#).

### Disconnect from all Bluetooth accessories

If you need to quickly disconnect your iPhone from all Bluetooth accessories and devices without turning Bluetooth off, [open Control Center](#), then tap  [Alt text: the Bluetooth button]. Your Bluetooth accessories and devices disconnect from your iPhone until the next day.

**Note:** The use of certain accessories with iPhone may affect wireless performance. Not all iOS or iPadOS accessories are fully compatible with iPhone. Turning on Airplane Mode may eliminate audio interference between iPhone and an accessory. Reorienting or relocating iPhone and the connected accessory may improve wireless performance.

### Related

[Play audio from your iPhone on a Bluetooth accessory](#)

[Connect a game controller to iPhone](#)

[Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPhone](#)

[Apple Support article: If an app would like to use Bluetooth on your device](#)


## Play audio from your iPhone on a Bluetooth accessory

Metadata

Summary: Use iPhone to play audio on a Bluetooth accessory.

After you [connect your iPhone to a Bluetooth accessory](#), you can play and control the audio from your iPhone on the accessory.

### Play audio from your iPhone on a Bluetooth audio accessory

1. Open an audio app such as Music or Podcasts on your iPhone and play an item.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Playback Destination button], then tap your Bluetooth accessory.

While audio is playing, you can change the playback destination on the Lock Screen or in Control Center.



3. Use the controls on your iPhone to pause or play the audio, adjust volume, skip tracks, and more.

The playback destination returns to your iPhone if you move the Bluetooth accessory out of range.

**Note:** For information about protecting your hearing from loud volume while listening to headphones with iPhone, see [Use audiogram data in Health on iPhone](#).

### Improve the audio accuracy of third-party Bluetooth accessories and devices

You can improve the sound of third-party Bluetooth devices by specifying the Bluetooth device type (such as headphone, speaker, or car stereo) on your iPhone.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Bluetooth, then tap  [Alt text: the Actions Available button] next to the name of the accessory or device.
2. Tap Device Type, then choose the type of device.

### Related

[Connect iPhone to Bluetooth accessories](#)

[Use AirPods with iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Printers](#)

## Print from iPhone

### Metadata





**Summary:** Use AirPrint on iPhone to print wirelessly to an AirPrint-enabled printer from apps such as Mail, Photos, Safari, and Freeform.

Use AirPrint to print wirelessly to an AirPrint-enabled printer from apps such as Mail, Photos, and Safari. Many apps available on the App Store also support AirPrint.

**Note:** Your iPhone and the printer must be on the same Wi-Fi network. See the Apple Support article [About AirPrint](#).





### Choose an AirPrint-enabled printer

After confirming that your printer supports AirPrint and that your iPhone and printer are on the same Wi-Fi network, do the following:

1. Open the app you want to print from.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Share button],  [Alt text: the More button],  [Alt text: the Reply button], or  [Alt text: the Actions Menu button] (depending on the app).

3. Tap Print, tap No Printer Selected, then choose an AirPrint-enabled printer.

### Print a document

1. Open the app you want to print from.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Share button] ,  [Alt text: the More button] ,  [Alt text: the Reply button] , or  [Alt text: the Actions Menu button] (depending on the app).
3. Tap Print. (If you don't see Print, swipe up.)

### See the status of a print job

[Open the App Switcher](#), then tap Print Center.

The badge on the icon shows how many documents are in the queue.

To cancel a print job, select it in Print Center, then tap Cancel Printing.

### Related

[View available networks and connect to Wi-Fi](#)

---

# Use iPhone with iPad, Mac, and PC

NAV TITLE: [Work across devices using Continuity](#)

## Use Continuity to work across Apple devices

### Metadata

**Summary:** When your iPhone and other devices are near each other, use Continuity features to share and stream content, answer calls, and more across devices.

With Continuity, you can use your iPhone together with your iPad, Mac, and Apple Watch to work smarter and move seamlessly between your devices.

### What is Continuity?

Continuity is the way that your Apple devices work together. There are many Continuity features that allow you to easily work across your Apple devices, without ever missing a beat. There's no app to use Continuity—you just need to be [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on your Apple devices. Many features also require that you have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#) turned on.

There are minimum system requirements for Continuity features; see the Apple Support article [System requirements for Continuity features on Apple devices](#).

### Share content between devices

You can easily share content between your devices, whether it's copying text from an iPhone and pasting on your Mac, sharing a file from your iPad to your iPhone, or handing off tasks between them.

Quickly share photos, videos, contacts, and anything else, with anyone near you—wirelessly. AirDrop makes sharing to iPhone, iPad, and Mac as simple as dragging and dropping. See [Use AirDrop on iPhone to send items to nearby Apple devices](#).



[Alt text: A Mac and an iPhone. The AirDrop window is open on the Mac desktop, ready to share a document with the iPhone and another MacBook Pro (not pictured). The iPhone Lock Screen has a notification about receiving the document.]

Copy text, images, photos, and videos on one Apple device and then paste the content on another Apple device with Universal Clipboard. For example, you can copy a recipe from Safari on your iPhone, then paste it into Notes on your nearby Mac. See [Copy and paste between your iPhone and other Apple devices](#).

Start a document, an email, or a message on one device and pick up where you left off on another device. Handoff works with apps like Mail, Safari, Maps, Messages, Reminders, Calendar, Contacts, Pages, Numbers, and Keynote. See [Hand off tasks between your iPhone and your other devices](#).

### **Use your iPhone on your Mac with iPhone Mirroring**

iPhone Mirroring allows you to use iPhone from your nearby Mac. See [Use your iPhone from your Mac with iPhone Mirroring](#).

### **Receive iPhone Notifications on Mac**

iPhone Mirroring allows you to receive iPhone Notifications on your Mac. See [Receive iPhone Notifications on Mac](#).

### **Answer calls, send texts, and share your internet connection**

Make it easy to stay connected when you set up your Mac or iPad to receive calls and text messages and share the Personal Hotspot on your iPhone.

Relay calls from your iPhone to your Mac or iPad, as well as send and receive texts. You can also hand off a FaceTime call from one device to another, so if you start a call on your iPhone and want to continue it on a larger screen, it's easy to transfer the call to your Mac. See [Use iPhone to allow calls and text messages on your iPad and Mac](#).

Your Mac or iPad (and other devices) can connect to the internet using the Personal Hotspot on your iPhone when they're within range of each other—no setup is required. Your iPhone automatically appears in the Wi-Fi status menu—just select it to connect to the internet. See [Share your internet connection from your iPhone with Personal Hotspot](#).

### **Stream content to a larger screen**

Want to see it on the big screen? Share, play, or present videos, music, photos, and more from your iPhone to your Mac. You can also stream content from iPhone to your Mac, an Apple TV, or an AirPlay 2-enabled TV. See [Stream video and audio from your iPhone with AirPlay](#).

### **Use your iPhone camera with your Mac**

With Continuity Camera, you can use your iPhone as your Mac computer's webcam or microphone. You can also use video effects when using your iPhone as a webcam, like Portrait mode or Center Stage. See [Use your iPhone as a webcam on Mac](#).

With the camera on your iPhone, you can take a picture or scan a document with your iPhone and have it appear instantly on your Mac. (You can also use Markup tools on an image or draw a sketch on your iPhone and have it appear on your Mac.) See [Insert sketches, photos, and scans from your iPhone on Mac](#).

You can also use your iPhone camera when you make a FaceTime call on Apple TV. See [Use FaceTime on Apple TV 4K \(2nd generation or later\)](#).

## Related

[Apple Support article: Use Continuity to connect your Mac, iPhone, iPad, and Apple Watch](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use your iPhone from your Mac](#)

# Use your iPhone from your Mac with iPhone Mirroring

## Metadata

Summary: Remotely use your iPhone from your Mac with iPhone Mirroring.

iPhone Mirroring allows you to use iPhone from your nearby Mac. While being remotely used on your Mac, iPhone remains locked.

**Note:** Some iPhone features such as camera and microphone aren't compatible with iPhone Mirroring. In addition, only one Continuity feature can be used at a time (such as Continuity Camera or iPhone Mirroring).


## Use iPhone Mirroring on your Mac

To find out how to use iPhone Mirroring on your Mac, visit [Use your iPhone from your Mac with iPhone Mirroring](#).

**Note:** iPhone Mirroring requires an iPhone with iOS 18 and macOS Sequoia. Both devices must be near each other and signed in to the same [Apple Account](#).

## Remove Mac computers from iPhone Mirroring

To remove a Mac from iPhone Mirroring:

1. Go to the Settings app  [ALT N/A] > General on your iPhone.
2. Tap AirPlay & Continuity, then tap iPhone Mirroring.
3. Tap Edit in the top right, then select a Mac to remove.

## Related

[Receive iPhone Notifications on Mac](#)

NAV TITLE: [Receive iPhone Notifications on Mac](#)

# Receive iPhone Notifications on Mac

## Metadata



**Summary:** Receive your iPhone Notifications forwarded to your Mac.

iPhone Notifications on Mac forwards your notifications to your nearby Mac so you don't miss them. You can receive notifications for every app, or just the apps you choose.


### Set up iPhone Notifications on your Mac

To set up iPhone Notifications on Mac, first connect to iPhone Mirroring. See [Use your iPhone from your Mac with iPhone Mirroring](#).

**Note:** iPhone Mirroring and iPhone Notifications require an iPhone with iOS 18 and a Mac with macOS Sequoia. Both devices must be near each other and signed in to the same [Apple Account](#).

### Choose which apps send notifications to your Mac

To choose which apps send notifications to your Mac, do the following:

1. Go to the Settings app  [ALT N/A] > Notifications on your iPhone
2. Choose any app, then turn Show on Mac on or off.

### Related

[Use your iPhone from your Mac with iPhone Mirroring](#)

[Use AirDrop on iPhone to send items to nearby Apple devices](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use AirDrop to send items to nearby devices](#)

## Use AirDrop on iPhone to send items to nearby Apple devices

### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, use AirDrop to wirelessly send photos, videos, documents, and more to a Mac, iPhone, or iPad near you.

With AirDrop, you can wirelessly send photos, videos, documents, and more to a nearby iPhone, iPad, or Mac. You can use AirDrop to send files to your own devices or to share files with others.

You can use AirDrop with an iPhone, iPad, and Mac.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

Transfers are encrypted for security, and the recipient can accept or decline each transfer as it arrives.

**Note:** If you leave Bluetooth or Wi-Fi range after an AirDrop transfer is initiated, the transfer continues over the internet.


### Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#)<sup>®</sup> turned on.
- The devices are within 30 feet (10 meters) of each other.



If you want to use AirDrop to send items between your Apple devices, [sign in to your Apple Account](#) in order to automatically accept and save the items.

### Turn AirDrop on

- *On an iPhone or iPad:* Open [Control Center](#), touch and hold the top-left group of controls, then tap  [Alt text: the AirDrop icon]. Tap Contacts Only or Everyone for 10 Minutes to choose who you want to receive items from.

- COMMENT - <Graphic to come>

**Note:** The Contacts Only and Everyone for 10 Minutes options are available only on devices with [minimum system requirements for AirDrop](#).




- *On a Mac:* Click  [Alt text: the Control Center status menu] in the menu bar, then click  [Alt text: the AirDrop icon]. When it's blue, it's on.

To choose who you can send items to you, click “>” next to AirDrop, then click Contacts Only or Everyone.


### Send an item using AirDrop

To send an item to someone with AirDrop, both you and your recipient must have turned on AirDrop and chosen to accept items from either Contacts or Everyone. If a recipient chooses to only accept items from a contact, you must be in their contacts list and they need to have your Apple Account email address or phone number included in your contact card.

Then do any of the following:

- *On an iPhone or iPad:* Open the item, then tap  [Alt text: the AirDrop icon], Share,  [Alt text: the AirDrop icon], or another button (depending on the app). Tap  [Alt text: the AirDrop icon], then tap the recipient you want to share with. The recipients you see are those who are nearby, have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth turned on, and are able to accept files from your device.

**Tip:** If you're within close range of someone in your contacts, you can initiate an AirDrop transfer by opening the file you want to share, then moving your iPhone close to your contact's iPhone (on supported models with iOS 17 or later).

- *On a Mac:* Open the item on a Mac, click  [Alt text: the AirDrop icon] in the toolbar, then click AirDrop. Select the recipient you want to share with. The recipients you see are those who are nearby, have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth turned on, and are able to accept files from your device.

**Tip:** You can also share items with AirDrop in the Finder. Go to the Finder, click AirDrop in the sidebar, then drag the item you want to share to the recipient you want to send it to.

To use AirDrop to securely share app and website passwords with someone using an iPhone, iPad, or Mac, see [Use passwords on iPhone](#).

### Receive items with AirDrop

On your device, tap or click Accept on the AirDrop notification.

Most items are saved in the app that they're sent from. For example, if you use AirDrop to send a photo from the Photos app, it's saved in the Photos app on the other device.

Depending on the device, you might find your files in other places. On an iPhone or iPad, some items may be saved in the Files app. On a Mac, some items are automatically saved in the Downloads folder. You may also have the option to choose where to save items.

**Note:** If you opened AirDrop in the Finder on a Mac, the notification to accept or decline appears here, rather than in Notification Center.

If you send items from one of your Apple devices to another (for example, from your Mac to your iPhone), and you're signed in to iCloud using the same Apple Account on both devices, the item is automatically accepted and saved.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

### Turn off cellular data for AirDrop

Cellular data charges may apply when you use AirDrop.

If you don't want to use cellular data when you're out of Bluetooth or Wi-Fi range, go to Settings > General > AirDrop, then turn off Use Cellular Data.

Typically this is a one-time setting, but you might want to change it if, for example, you're traveling and want to avoid roaming charges.

### If AirDrop isn't working

- Make sure that both the sender and recipient have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#) turned on and that you're both using an iPhone, iPad, or Mac.
- Check that the recipient has their AirDrop settings set to [receive from Everyone or Contacts Only](#).
- If you're having difficulty getting AirDrop to work, restart your device and try again.
- For additional support, see the Apple Support articles [How to use AirDrop on your iPhone or iPad](#) and [Use AirDrop on your Mac](#).

To quickly share your contact information, see [Use NameDrop on iPhone](#).

AirDrop is best for sharing a small selection of files between devices. If you want to share many files between your Mac and other Apple devices, see [Transfer files from iPhone to a storage device, a server, or the cloud](#).

### Related

[Use AirDrop on your Mac to send files to devices near you](#)

[How to use AirDrop on your iPhone or iPad](#)

NAV TITLE: [Hand off tasks between devices](#)

## Hand off tasks between your iPhone and your other devices

### Metadata

**Summary:** Use Handoff on iPhone to continue working on one device where you left off on another.

With Handoff, you can start a task on one device and complete it on another. For example, you can start an email on your iPhone but then finish it on your Mac computer's bigger screen.

You can use Handoff with many Apple apps—for example, Safari, Mail, FaceTime, and Maps. Some third-party apps also work with Handoff.

You can use Handoff between your iPhone, iPad, and Mac. You can also hand off tasks between your Apple Watch and iPhone.

### Before you begin



Make sure of the following:


- Both devices have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#)<sup>®</sup> turned on.
- You're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- Both devices meet [minimum system requirements for Handoff](#).

### Turn on Handoff

Turn on Handoff on both your iPhone and your other Apple device.

- *On iPhone or iPad:* Go to Settings > General > AirPlay & Continuity, then turn on Handoff.

- *On your Mac:* Choose Apple menu  [ALT N/A] > System Settings > click General  [ALT N/A] in the sidebar, click AirDrop & Handoff, then turn “Allow Handoff between this Mac and your iCloud devices” on or off.

**Note:** If your Mac has macOS 12.5 or earlier, choose Apple menu  > System Preferences, click General, then select “Allow Handoff between this Mac and your iCloud devices.”

- *On Apple Watch:* Open the Apple Watch app on iPhone, go to My Watch > General, then turn on Enable Handoff.

### Hand off a task between your iPhone and other devices

When your devices are near each other, an icon appears whenever a task can be handed off. Just tap or click the Handoff icon to continue working on your other device.

The Handoff icon appears in the following locations:

- *On an iPhone:* At the bottom of the [App Switcher](#) screen.
- *On an iPad:* The right end of the Dock.
- *On a Mac:* Toward the right end of the Dock, if the Dock is at the bottom of the screen. If you set up the Dock to appear on the left or right side of your screen, the Handoff icon appears at the bottom of the Dock.

### Hand off a task from your Apple Watch

If you have an Apple Watch, you can hand off tasks from certain apps on your Apple Watch to your iPhone. To learn more, see [Handoff tasks from Apple Watch](#).

### If Handoff isn't working

- Make sure that both devices have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#) turned on, and you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#).
- Check that your app supports Handoff. Calendar, Contacts, FaceTime, Keynote, Mail, Maps, Pages, Numbers, Reminders, and Safari, as well as many third-party apps, allow Handoff.

**Tip:** When Handoff is on, you can use [Universal Clipboard](#) to copy and paste text, images, photos, and videos across devices.

### Related

[Hand off audio from iPhone to HomePod](#)

NAV TITLE: [Copy and paste between devices](#)

# Copy and paste between your iPhone and other Apple devices

#### Metadata

**Summary:** Use Universal Clipboard to cut or copy content on your iPhone, then paste it on another iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or Mac computer, and vice versa.

With Universal Clipboard, you can copy content from one of your Apple devices and paste it into another. For example, you can copy text on your iPad and paste it into a note on your iPhone, or copy an image from a Safari webpage on your iPhone and paste into an email message on your Mac.

You can use Universal Clipboard with your iPhone, iPad, and Mac.

#### Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have [Wi-Fi](#), [Bluetooth®](#), and [Handoff](#) turned on.
- You're [signed in with the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- Both devices meet [minimum system requirements for Universal Clipboard](#).

#### Copy and paste between your iPhone and other devices

Universal Clipboard isn't a feature that you see, but behaves just like copy and paste does on your iPhone, except with Universal Clipboard, when you paste, you can do so into one of your other Apple devices, like an iPad or a Mac.

1. Select the text or image on your iPhone, then tap Copy.
2. On your other device, either tap (on another iPhone or an iPad) or place the pointer (on a Mac) where you want to paste the text or image, then tap or click Paste. You can also use keyboard shortcuts.

For more information on how to copy or paste on your iPhone, iPad, or Mac, see [How to copy and paste on an iPhone or iPad](#) or [How to copy and paste on a Mac](#).

**Note:** When you copy the content, it's available on your Clipboard for a short amount of time.

#### How to copy and paste on an iPhone or iPad

- *Select and copy text:* Double-tap with one finger to select a word or triple-tap with one finger to select a paragraph. (You can also move the grab points to adjust your selection.) Then tap Copy.
- *Select and copy an image:* Touch and hold to select an image, then tap Copy.
- *Paste text or an image:* Tap where you want to paste the text or image, then tap Paste.

To find additional gestures that allow you to copy and paste, see [Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone](#) and [Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPad](#).

## How to copy and paste on a Mac

- *Select text or an image:* With your pointer, select the text or image you want to copy.
- *Copy text or an image:* Press Command-C or choose Edit > Copy from the menu bar.
- *Paste text or an image:* Move your pointer where you want to paste the text or image, then press Command-V, or choose Edit > Paste from the menu bar.

To find additional gestures that allow you to copy and paste, see [Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone](#) and [Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPad](#).

## If Universal Clipboard isn't working

- Make sure that you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- Make sure that your iPhone and Mac have [Wi-Fi](#), [Bluetooth](#), and [Handoff](#) turned on.
- Your devices must be within 30 feet (10 meters) of one another.
- If you're having difficulty getting Universal Clipboard to work, restart your devices and try again.

Universal Clipboard is best for sharing small selections of text or copied images between devices. If you want to share multiple files between your Mac and other Apple devices, see [Transfer files from iPhone to a storage device, a server, or the cloud](#).

NAV TITLE: [Stream video and audio from your iPhone](#)

## Stream video and audio from your iPhone with AirPlay

### Metadata

**Summary:** Use a nearby Mac to watch videos, view photos, and play audio streamed from your iPhone.

With AirPlay, you can stream video and audio from your iPhone to a nearby Mac or TV. You can also mirror what's on your iPhone screen.

You can use AirPlay with your iPhone and a Mac, an Apple TV, or another TV.


### Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have [Wi-Fi](#) turned on and are connected to the same network.
- If you're streaming between your own Apple devices, it's useful to [sign in to the same Apple Account](#).

- To AirPlay to a Mac, both devices meet [minimum system requirements](#).
- To AirPlay to a TV, make sure you're using Apple TV, or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV.

### Set up a Mac to allow streaming from your iPhone

1. On a Mac, choose Apple menu  > System Settings, click General in the sidebar (you may need to scroll down), then click AirDrop & Handoff.

**Note:** If you're using a Mac with macOS 12.5 or earlier, choose Apple menu > System Preferences, then click Sharing.


2. Turn on AirPlay Receiver.
3. Click the pop-up menu next to "Allow AirPlay for" and choose the devices that can use AirPlay to stream content to this Mac.


- *To allow only your devices:* If you only want to allow AirPlay from devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account, select "Current user."
- *To allow any device:* Select "Anyone on the same network" or Everyone.

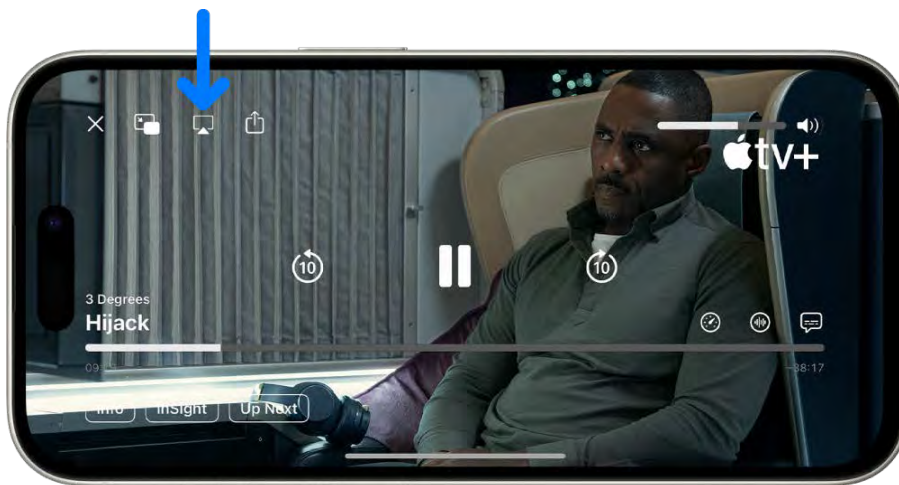
To require a password to use AirPlay with the Mac, select the option, then enter a password.

### Stream photos or videos from your iPhone to your Mac or TV

You can stream photos and videos from your iPhone to a Mac, an Apple TV, or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV.

1. On your iPhone, find the photo or video that you want to stream.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the AirPlay button] .

**Note:** In some apps, you might need to tap a different button first. For example, in the Photos app, tap Share  [Alt text: the Share button] , then tap AirPlay.



[Alt text: A movie playing on the iPhone screen. In the middle of the screen are the playback controls. The AirPlay button is near the top left.]




- COMMENT - #ba #tv-movies

3. Choose your Mac or TV from the list.
4. To show playback controls on the Mac, move the pointer over the video playing on the Mac screen.
5. To stop streaming, on your iPhone, tap AirPlay in the app you're streaming from, then tap your iPhone on the list.

**Note:** You can set up your iPhone to discover and automatically connect to any Apple TV or smart TV that you use frequently when you play content from apps that you use regularly with AirPlay. To turn this feature on or off on your iPhone, go to Settings > General > AirPlay & Continuity, then choose Automatic, Never, or Ask.


### Share your iPhone screen on a Mac or TV

1. [Open Control Center](#) on your iPhone.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Screen Mirroring button], then choose your Mac or TV as the playback destination.

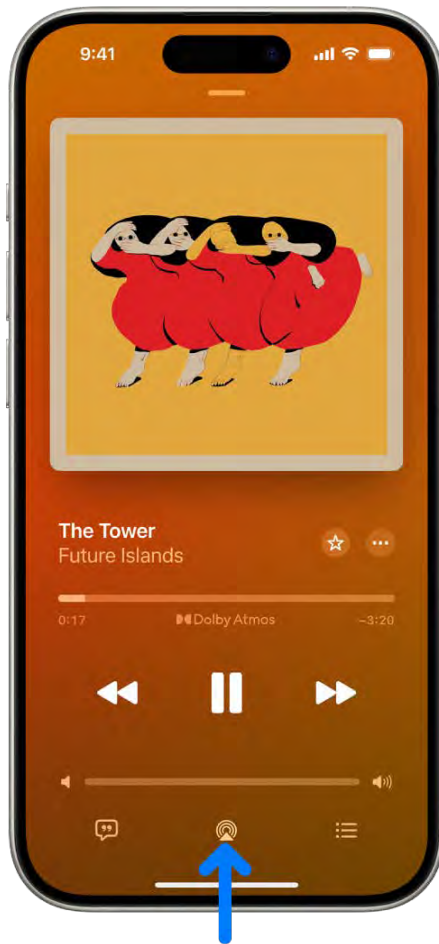
To switch back, open Control Center, tap  [Alt text: the Screen Mirroring button], then tap Stop Mirroring.

### Play audio from your iPhone on a Mac or TV

You can use AirPlay to stream audio from your iPhone to a Mac or TV. If you're streaming to your Mac, make sure you've set up the Mac to allow streaming from another device, see [allow streaming from another device](#).

1. Open an audio app (such as Podcasts or Music) on your iPhone, then choose an item to play.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Playback Destination button], then choose a playback destination.

- COMMENT - #ba #music






[Alt text: The playback controls for a song, including the Playback Destination button at the bottom of the screen.]

You can also use AirPlay to stream audio from your iPhone to a HomePod. To learn more, see [Play audio on HomePod using an iOS or iPadOS device](#).

### Use AirPlay in your hotel room

If you stay in a hotel room with a TV that supports AirPlay, you can use it to play movies, TV shows, music, and more from your iPhone.

1. Go to the Camera  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. If it's not already on, turn on the room's TV and locate the AirPlay QR code.
3. [Scan the QR code with your iPhone camera](#), then follow the onscreen instructions to connect to your hotel Wi-Fi (if you're not already connected) and the room's TV.
4. Use your iPhone to display content on the TV screen by [streaming photos or videos](#), [mirroring your screen](#), or [playing audio](#). Choose your hotel TV as the playback destination.

5. To stop streaming or mirroring, tap the AirPlay or mirroring button ( [Alt text: the AirPlay button] or  [Alt text: the Screen Mirroring button]) on your iPhone, then tap your iPhone in the list or tap Stop Mirroring.

**Note:** AirPlay in hotels isn't available in all countries or regions.

### If AirPlay isn't working

- Make sure that both of your devices are on the same network.
- Check that your Mac is set up to allow streaming from another device.
- See the Apple Support article [If screen mirroring or streaming isn't working on your AirPlay-compatible device](#).

### Related

[Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPhone](#)

[Play audio from iPhone on HomePod and other wireless speakers](#)

[Mac User Guide: Set up your Mac to be an AirPlay receiver](#)

NAV TITLE: [Allow phone calls and text messages on your iPad and Mac](#)

## Use iPhone to allow calls and text messages on your iPad and Mac

### Metadata

**Summary:** Make and receive phone calls or send and answer text messages on your iPad and Mac by relaying calls through your iPhone.

You can relay phone calls and text messages through your iPhone to your iPad or Mac, so it's easy to stay in touch no matter what device you're on.

Use your iPhone to make and receive phone calls or messages on your iPad, Mac, or another iPhone.

**Note:** Cellular charges may apply. Wi-Fi Calling isn't available from all carriers.

### Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#)<sup>®</sup> turned on.
- You're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- Both devices meet [minimum system requirements for Universal Clipboard](#).

- FaceTime is set up on your iPhone, as well as the other device that you want to use for calls or text messages. See [Get started with FaceTime on iPhone](#), [Get started with FaceTime on iPad](#), and [Sign in to or out of FaceTime on Mac](#).

### Set up your iPhone to allow phone calls on your other devices

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Cellular.

**Note:** If your iPhone has Dual SIMs, choose a line (below SIMs).

2. Do any of the following:


- Tap Calls on Other Devices, turn on Allow Calls on Other Devices, then choose the devices you want to allow to make and receive calls.

The devices you choose can make and receive calls when they're near your iPhone, connected to Wi-Fi, and signed in to the same Apple Account.

- Tap Wi-Fi Calling, turn on Wi-Fi Calling on This iPhone, then turn on Add Wi-Fi Calling For Other Devices.

Other devices can make and receive calls over Wi-Fi, even when they're not near your iPhone, as long as they're signed in to the same Apple Account.

3. On your other devices, do the following:

- *On your iPad or another iPhone:* Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > FaceTime, then turn on Allow Calls on Other Devices.
- *On your Mac:* Open FaceTime, choose FaceTime > Settings, then select Calls from iPhone. If an Upgrade to Wi-Fi Calling button appears, click it, then follow the instructions.

**Note:** If you turn on Wi-Fi Calling, emergency calls can be made over Wi-Fi, and your device's location information can be used for emergency calls to aid response efforts, regardless of whether you enable Location Services. Some carriers might use the address you registered with the carrier when signing up for Wi-Fi Calling as your location.

### Make or receive phone calls on your iPad or Mac

After you set up your iPhone to allow calls on your other devices, you can make and receive phone calls on your iPad and Mac.


- *Make a call:* On your iPad or Mac, tap or click a phone number in Contacts, Calendar, FaceTime, Messages, Search, or Safari. Or open FaceTime, tap or click New FaceTime, then enter a contact or phone number.

If you make a call from another device by relaying it through your iPhone with Dual SIM, the call is made using your default voice line.

- *Receive a call:* On your iPad or Mac, swipe, tap, or click the notification to answer or ignore the call.


### Stop receiving phone calls on your iPad

If you no longer want to receive phone calls on your iPad, you can turn off the option on your iPhone.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > FaceTime on your iPhone.
2. Turn off Allow Calls on Other Devices.

### Stop receiving phone calls on your Mac

If you no longer want to receive phone calls on your Mac, you can turn off Calls from iPhone.

1. Go to the FaceTime app  [ALT N/A] on your Mac.
2. Choose FaceTime > Settings, then click General.
3. Turn off Calls from iPhone.

If you no longer want to receive FaceTime calls on your Mac, you need to sign out of FaceTime. See [Sign in to or out of FaceTime on Mac](#).

### Send and receive messages on your iPad or Mac

You can send and receive messages—both iMessage and SMS/MMS messages—on your iPad or Mac. For more information on iMessage and SMS/MMS messages, see [What is the difference between iMessage and SMS/MMS](#)

To send and receive iMessages on iPad, see [Set up iMessage on Mac](#). To send and receive iMessages on Mac, see [Set up iMessage on Mac](#).

To send and receive SMS/MMS messages on your iPad and Mac, see [Access your messages on all your Apple devices](#).

In addition to making and receiving phone calls on your iPad or Mac, you can also use Handoff to transfer a FaceTime call from one device to another. See [Hand off a FaceTime call from your iPad to your other Apple devices for iPad](#) and [Move a FaceTime call to another device for Mac](#). For more information about Wi-Fi calls, see the Apple Support article [Make a call with Wi-Fi Calling](#).

NAV TITLE: [Share your internet connection with Personal Hotspot](#)

## Share your internet connection from your iPhone with Personal Hotspot

Metadata

Summary: Share a cellular internet connection from iPhone.

You can share the internet connection from your iPhone with other devices using a feature called Instant Hotspot. Instant Hotspot uses your iPhone device's Personal Hotspot, and is useful when your other device doesn't have internet access from a Wi-Fi network.

There are several ways to connect other devices to your Personal Hotspot:

- Connect your other device to your iPhone through Wi-Fi settings.
- Pair your two devices with Bluetooth®.
- Connect your other device to your iPhone with a cable.

You can share the Personal Hotspot on your iPhone with another iPhone, an iPad, a Mac, a Windows device, and many more devices.

**Note:** Personal Hotspot isn't available with all carriers. Additional fees may apply. The number of devices that can join your Personal Hotspot at one time depends on your carrier and iPhone model. Contact your carrier for more information.

### Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#) turned on.
- The devices are within 30 feet (10 meters) of each other.
- Both devices meet [minimum system requirements for Instant Hotspot](#).

If you're sharing your Personal Hotspot with your Apple devices, it's faster to connect if you [sign in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.

**Note:** You can only use Personal Hotspot by sharing your iPhone device's cellular internet connection. You can't connect your iPhone to a Wi-Fi network, and then share that network with another device.

### Set up Personal Hotspot on iPhone


On your iPhone, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Personal Hotspot, then tap Allow Others to Join.

Optionally, you can change the Wi-Fi Password. Your SSID is your device name, which you can change in Settings > General > About.

If you set up your iPhone to use two SIMs, Personal Hotspot uses the line you select for cellular data. See [Set up Dual SIM](#).

**Note:** If Cellular Data is turned on in Settings > Cellular, but you don't see Set Up Personal Hotspot as an option, contact your carrier about adding Personal Hotspot to your plan.





### Turn Personal Hotspot on and off on iPhone


On your iPhone, swipe down from the top-right edge to open Control Center. Tap  [Alt text: the Personal Hotspot icon] to make Personal Hotspot show as discoverable.

You can choose who is allowed to use your Personal Hotspot, set a password, and—if you're in a Family Sharing group—decide if you want to automatically share your Personal Hotspot with specific family members.

### Connect to a Personal Hotspot with Wi-Fi

You can connect another device to the Personal Hotspot on your iPhone using Wi-Fi settings. You can connect another iPhone, an iPad, a Mac, a Windows device, and many other devices that are able to connect to a Wi-Fi network.


1. On the device that you want to connect to your iPhone device's Personal Hotspot, do any of the following:
  - *On an iPhone with Touch ID:* Swipe down from the top-right edge to open Control Center. Tap  [Alt text: the Wi-Fi Status menu] to turn Wi-Fi on, then choose your iPhone.
  - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Swipe up from the bottom to open Control Center. Tap  [Alt text: the Wi-Fi Status menu] to turn Wi-Fi on, then choose your iPhone.
  - *On an iPad:* Swipe down from the top-right edge to open Control Center. Tap  [Alt text: the Wi-Fi Status menu] to turn Wi-Fi on, then choose your iPhone.
  - *On a Mac:* Click  [Alt text: the Wi-Fi Status menu] in the menu bar, then choose your iPhone.
  - *On a Windows device or other device:* Follow the manufacturer's instructions to connect to a Personal Hotspot.
2. Enter the password you set up for your Personal Hotspot to connect. If you're connecting another Apple device and you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices, you don't need to enter a password.


**Note:** When a Mac is connected to your Personal Hotspot, a blue band appears at the top of your iPhone screen, and  [Alt text: the Personal Hotspot icon] appears in the status bar of the connected Mac.

When you're not using the hotspot, your devices automatically disconnect to save battery life.

### Connect to a Personal Hotspot with Bluetooth

You can connect a Mac or Windows device to the Personal Hotspot on your iPhone using Bluetooth instead of Wi-Fi. Both devices must have Bluetooth turned on.

1. On your Mac, choose Apple menu  > System Settings, then click Bluetooth in the sidebar. (You may need to scroll down.)

**Note:** If your Mac has macOS 12.5 or earlier, choose Apple menu  > System Preferences, then click Bluetooth.
2. On your iPhone, go to Settings > Bluetooth to make it discoverable.

3. On your Mac, select your iPhone when it appears. (It may take a moment.)

As soon as it's connected by Bluetooth, your Mac is able to use your iPhone device's cellular connection.

To connect your Windows device to your iPhone using Bluetooth, follow the directions to set up a Bluetooth network connection.

### **Connect to a Personal Hotspot with a USB cable**

You can connect a Mac or Windows device to the Personal Hotspot on your iPhone using the USB cable that came with your iPhone (or another cable that matches the ports on your iPhone and other device).

**Note:** If you see an alert on your iPhone that says Trust This Computer? tap Trust. You may be asked to enter your device passcode to proceed. If you see an alert on your Mac that says "Allow accessory to connect?" click Allow.

As soon as it's connected by a cable, your Mac or Windows device is able to use your iPhone device's cellular connection.

### **If your Personal Hotspot isn't working**

- Make sure that your devices have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#) turned on.
- Your devices must be within 30 feet (10 meters) of one another.
- See the Apple Support article [If Personal Hotspot is not working on your iPhone or iPad \(Wi-Fi + Cellular\)](#) for additional troubleshooting steps.
- Maximize compatibility in Settings > Personal Hotspot, then enable Maximize Compatibility. This may reduce performance for devices connected to your personal hotspot when turned on.

When you share a Personal Hotspot from your iPhone, it uses cellular data for the internet connection. To monitor your cellular data network usage, go to Settings > Cellular. See [View or change cellular data settings on iPhone](#).

If you use Family Sharing, you can share your Personal Hotspot with any member of your family. See [Set up Family Sharing on iPhone](#).

### **Related**

[Apple Support article: If Personal Hotspot is not working](#)

[Apple Support article: About the 'Trust This Computer' alert](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use iPhone as a webcam](#)

## Use your iPhone as a webcam on Mac



#### Metadata

**Summary:** With Continuity Camera, use your iPhone as a webcam or microphone for your Mac or Apple TV 4K, and take advantage of the powerful iPhone camera and video effects.

NoIndex

With Continuity Camera, you can use your iPhone as your Mac webcam or microphone, and take advantage of the powerful iPhone camera and additional video effects. You can connect wirelessly, or with a USB cable for a wired connection.

You can use your iPhone as a webcam with Continuity Camera on an iPhone and Mac.


You can also use your iPhone as a webcam when making a FaceTime call on Apple TV. To learn more, see [Use FaceTime on Apple TV 4K \(2nd generation or later\)](#).

### Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#)® turned on.
- You're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- The devices must be within 30 feet (10 meters) of each other.
- Both devices meet [minimum system requirements for Continuity Camera](#).

### Set up your iPhone for Continuity Camera

1. Mount your iPhone using an iPhone-compatible mount or stand in landscape orientation. It must be near your Mac (within 30 feet) in a stable position, with its rear camera facing you.
2. To turn on Continuity Camera on iPhone, go to Settings go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > General > AirPlay & Continuity, then turn on Continuity Camera.

Continuity Camera works wirelessly, though you can also use Continuity Camera by connecting your iPhone to your Mac with a USB cable. You can use the cable that came with your iPhone or another cable that matches the ports on your iPhone and Mac.

**Note:** If you connect your iPhone and Mac with a cable and see an alert on your iPhone that says Trust This Computer? tap Trust. You may be asked to enter your device passcode to proceed. If you see an alert on your Mac that says “Allow accessory to connect?” click Allow.

### Use your iPhone as a webcam for Mac

1. On your Mac, open any app that has access to the camera or microphone, like FaceTime or Photo Booth. You can also use this feature with many third-party apps that access the camera or microphone.

2. In the app's menu bar or settings, choose your iPhone as a camera. The location of these settings can vary depending on the app. See [Choose an external camera on Mac](#) for guidance on where to find these settings.

Your iPhone begins streaming audio or video from the rear camera to your Mac.

3. To control video or audio, do any of the following:
  - *Pause the video or audio:* On your iPhone, tap Pause. You can also unlock your iPhone to pause video or audio by swiping up.
  - *Resume the video or audio:* On your iPhone, tap Resume. You can also resume by locking your iPhone.
  - *Stop using your iPhone as a webcam or microphone:* On your Mac, quit the app.


**Note:** If you need to charge your iPhone while Continuity Camera is turned on, use a USB cable for best results.

While streaming video or audio, you can move your iPhone and change its orientation. Remember, however, that for best results, keep your iPhone mounted and in landscape orientation.

When using your iPhone as a webcam, you can use video effects like Portrait mode and Center Stage. See [Use video conferencing features on Mac](#).

### Turn on Desk View


You can use Desk View and other video effects when you're using an app that supports video and have set up your iPhone as a webcam.

1. On your Mac, do either of the following:
  - *FaceTime:* Start your video call, then click the Desk View button in the top-right corner of the video window.
  - *Other apps that support video:* Click  [Alt text: The Video button] in the menu bar, then click the Desk View button.

Desk View opens, which mimics an overhead camera and shows a top-down view of your desk.


2. Use the Desk View setup window on your Mac to align your desk with the camera. To zoom in or out, drag the onscreen control at the bottom of the window. When you're ready to share your desk view on the video call, click Share Desk View.

**Note:** To share what's on your desk in a third-party app, use the app's screen sharing feature to select the Desk View window for sharing. To find out how, see the developer's instructions or explore the app's menus and settings.

3. To turn off Desk View, click  [Alt text: The screen mirroring button] in the top left of the Desk View window, then choose Close Window.

### Use your iPhone as a microphone for your Mac

You can use your iPhone as a microphone on a Mac that doesn't have a built-in or external microphone.

1. On your Mac, choose Apple menu  > System Settings, then click Sound in the sidebar. (You may need to scroll down.)
2. Select your iPhone in the list of sound input devices.

**Note:** In order to use your iPhone as a microphone on a Mac, the iPhone must be in landscape orientation and stationary, with its screen turned off.

### Remove your iPhone as a webcam or microphone option for your Mac

On your iPhone, tap Disconnect, then confirm that you want to disconnect. Your iPhone is removed from the camera and microphone lists in apps, and also from the list of sound input devices in Sound settings.

To reconnect your iPhone as a webcam or microphone, connect it to your Mac with a USB cable, then follow the steps to [use your iPhone as a webcam](#) or [use your iPhone as a microphone for your Mac](#).

### If Continuity Camera isn't working

- Make sure that your iPhone and Mac have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#) turned on.
- Your devices must be within 30 feet (10 meters) of one another and, for best results, your iPhone should be mounted and in landscape orientation.
- Connect your iPhone to your Mac with a USB cable and check again. (If it's already connected with a cable, disconnect and reconnect it.) If your iPhone asks you to trust the computer or your Mac asks you to allow the accessory, be sure to give permission.
- Make sure that you aren't using another Continuity feature, such as [iPhone Mirroring](#).
- Check that your devices meet [minimum system requirements for Continuity Camera](#).
- See [If you need help](#) for Continuity Camera for additional troubleshooting steps.

### Related

[Hand off a FaceTime call from your iPhone to your other Apple devices](#)

[Send what you're watching in SharePlay to Apple TV](#)

NAV TITLE: [Insert sketches, photos, and scans on Mac](#)

# Insert sketches, photos, and scans from your iPhone on Mac

#### Metadata

**Summary:** You can take a photo, scan a file, and mark up a document using your iPhone and iPad and have it appear instantly on your Mac.

**NoIndex**

With Continuity Camera and Continuity Sketch, you can draw a sketch, take a photo, or scan a document using your nearby iPhone and have it appear instantly on your Mac, exactly where you need it—for example, in an email, note, or folder. You can also mark up a file on your Mac with your iPhone using Continuity Markup.

You can use Continuity Camera, Continuity Sketch, and Continuity Markup with your iPhone and a Mac.

#### Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#)<sup>®</sup> turned on.
- You're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- Both devices [meet minimum system requirements for Continuity Camera, Continuity Sketch, and Continuity Markup](#).

Depending on where the photo or scan is inserted, you can mark it up or adjust other aspects, such as crop it or apply a filter.

#### Insert a sketch, photo, or scan from your iPhone

Draw a sketch on your iPhone and have it appear on Mac, called Continuity Sketch or take a photo or scan a document on your iPhone and have it appear on your Mac, called Continuity Camera.

1. On your Mac, [Control-click](#) where you want to insert the sketch or photo—for example, in an open window, like a note or email message.

You can also Control-click the desktop or a folder in a Finder window.

2. Choose Import from iPhone, then choose Add Sketch or Take Photo.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Add a sketch:* On your iPhone, draw a sketch using your finger.
  - *Take photo:* On your iPhone, take the photo, then tap Use Photo or Retake.
  - *Scan a document:* On your iPhone, take the scan. Your iPhone detects the edges of the document and autocorrects any skewing of the image. If you want to adjust the area included in the scan, drag the frame or its edges. When you're ready, tap Keep Scan or Retake. You can continue to scan documents until you're done, then tap Save.


4. On your Mac, the sketch, picture, or scan appears in the location you chose in step 1 or, if you added it to from the desktop or a folder, it appears as a file.

Depending on where the photo or scan is inserted, you can mark it up or adjust other aspects, such as crop it or apply a filter.

**Note:** Scans you take on your iPhone aren't saved on the device.

### Use your iPhone to mark up a file on your Mac

Use your iPhone to add text, make drawings, rotate, and crop images, PDF documents, and more on your Mac, called Continuity Markup.

1. On your Mac, open the Finder.
2. Select the file you want to mark up, then press the Space bar to open a preview window.
3. Click  [Alt text: The Markup button] in the toolbar.
4. Click the Annotate button, then use the [Markup tools](#) to draw, add text or shapes, use the magnifier, and more.
5. When you're done, tap Done on your iPhone.
6. To save your changes, click Done on your Mac.

### If Continuity Camera, Continuity Sketch, or Continuity Markup isn't working:

- Make sure you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- Make sure that both devices have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#) turned on.
- Make sure that your devices are within 30 feet of one another.
- Make sure your device meets [minimum system requirements for Continuity Camera](#).

### Related

[Hand off a FaceTime call from your iPhone to your other Apple devices](#)

[Send what you're watching in SharePlay to Apple TV](#)

NAV TITLE: [Start SharePlay instantly](#)

## Start SharePlay by holding two iPhone devices close together

#### Metadata

**Summary:** Use SharePlay on iPhone to stream TV shows, movies, and music in sync with a nearby friend.

With SharePlay, you can instantly stream supported content, listen to music, play games, and more in sync with a friend by holding your iPhone close to your friend's iPhone.

### Start SharePlay

1. On your iPhone, in an app that supports SharePlay, tap the content you want to share.
2. Hold your iPhone next to the iPhone of the person you want to share with.

If they're not in your contacts (or vice versa), you first need to share your contact information with them. See [Use NameDrop on iPhone](#).

3. Tap SharePlay.

The person you want to share with can accept or decline your SharePlay invitation.

**Note:** iOS 17 or later is required on both iPhone devices. AirDrop must be turned on, and the sender and recipient must be included in each other's Contacts app. Some apps that support SharePlay require a subscription. To watch a movie or TV show together, each participant must have access to the content on their own device, through either a subscription or purchase, on a device that meets the minimum system requirements. SharePlay might not support sharing some movies or TV shows across different countries or regions.

### Related

[Stream video and audio from your iPhone with AirPlay](#)

[Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime on iPhone](#)

[Use FaceTime on Apple TV 4K \(2nd generation or later\)](#)

## Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable

### Metadata

**Summary:** Directly connect iPhone and a Mac or Windows device with a cable to charge iPhone, sync content, and more.

You can use a cable to directly connect your iPhone to a Mac with OS X 10.9 or later, or to a Windows device with Windows 7 or later.

Using the charging cable for your iPhone, connect iPhone to the USB port on your computer. If the cable isn't compatible with the port on your computer, you'll need to use an adapter (sold separately).

**Note:** If an alert appears on your iPhone asking whether to trust this computer, select Trust. See the Apple Support article [About the 'Trust This Computer' alert](#).

After you connect your iPhone to a computer with a cable, you can do any of the following:

- [Set up iPhone](#) for the first time.
- [Share your iPhone internet connection](#) with your computer.
- [Update iPhone](#) using your computer.
- [Sync content or transfer files](#) between your Mac and iPhone.
- [Sync or transfer files](#) between your PC and iPhone.

The iPhone battery charges when iPhone is connected to your computer and your computer is connected to power.

### Related

[Apple Support article: About the Apple USB-C to USB Adapter](#)

[Apple Support article: About the Apple USB-C to Lightning Cable](#)

## Transfer files between your iPhone and computer

NAV TITLE: [Transfer files between devices](#)

### Transfer files between your iPhone and your computer

#### Metadata

**Summary:** There are multiple ways to transfer your photos, videos, and other files between your iPhone and computer.

There are multiple ways to transfer your photos, videos, and other files between your iPhone and computer.

- *Quickly transfer files wirelessly:* See [Use AirDrop on iPhone to send items to nearby Apple devices](#).
- *Use iCloud:* See [Automatically keep your files up to date with iCloud](#).
- *Use an external storage device, a file server, or a service like Box or DropBox:* See [Transfer files from iPhone to a storage device, a server, or the cloud](#).
- *Use a cable:* For Mac, see [Sync files from your Mac to iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#). For Windows devices, see [Transfer files between your Windows device and devices with iTunes](#).

**Important:** Transferring, sharing, or syncing may be restricted for some types of data, such as files saved in an app's proprietary format, files saved in older software versions, and files protected by copyrights.

## Related

[Take and edit photos or videos in Messages on iPhone](#)

[Download email attachments in Mail on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Transfer files with email, messages, or AirDrop](#)

Transfer files wirelessly between your iPhone and computer with email, messages, or AirDrop

### Metadata

**Summary:** Use Mail, Messages, or AirDrop to transfer files wirelessly between your iPhone and computer.

### Use email to transfer files

- To transfer files using Mail on your iPhone, see [Add email attachments in Mail on iPhone](#) and [Download email attachments in Mail on iPhone](#).
- To transfer files using Mail on your Mac, see [Add attachments to emails in Mail on Mac](#) and [Save email attachments in Mail on Mac](#).

### Use text messages to transfer files

- To transfer files using Messages on your iPhone, see [Send an item using AirDrop](#).
- To transfer files using Messages on your Mac, see [Send photos and videos in Messages on Mac](#).

### Use AirDrop to transfer files

- To transfer files using AirDrop on your iPhone, see [Use AirDrop on iPhone to send items to nearby Apple devices](#).
- To transfer files using AirDrop on your Mac, see [Use AirDrop on your Mac to send files to devices near you](#).

Files sent to your iPhone are located in the app where you saved the file or in the app that opens automatically when the file is received. Files sent to your Mac are located in the app where you saved the file or in the Downloads folder.

NAV TITLE: [Transfer files or sync content with the Finder or iTunes](#)

Transfer files or sync content between your iPhone and computer with the Finder or iTunes



## Metadata

**Summary:** Using the Finder or iTunes, connect your iPhone and computer to sync many types of data and transfer many types of files.

You can [connect your iPhone to a computer](#) to do the following:

- Transfer files used by iPhone apps that support file sharing.
- Sync supported content like movies and podcasts.

Depending on your computer, you use either the Finder or iTunes on your computer to transfer files and sync content.

### Transfer files for supported apps

You can transfer files by copying them from one device to another using the Finder or iTunes. Only files from iPhone apps that support file sharing can be transferred.

- *To transfer files with your Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* See the Apple Support article [Use the Finder to share files between your Mac and your iPhone](#).
- *To transfer files with your Windows device or Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier):* See the Apple Support article [Use iTunes to share files between your computer and your iOS or iPadOS device](#).

### Sync supported content

Syncing with the Finder or iTunes keeps supported content up to date between your iPhone and computer. For example, you can set up syncing so that when you add a movie to your iPhone, it also appears on your computer. After you set up syncing between your devices with a cable, you can set them to sync wirelessly and automatically whenever they're connected to the same Wi-Fi network.

You can sync content like music, movies, TV shows, podcasts, photos, contacts, and calendars.

- *To sync content with your Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* See [Sync content between your Mac and iPhone or iPad](#) in the Mac User Guide.
- *To sync content with your PC or Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier):* See the Apple Support article [Use iTunes to sync your iPhone or iPad with your computer](#).

If the files you want to share between your iPhone and computer aren't supported by syncing or transferring with the Finder or iTunes, see

[Transfer files between your iPhone and your computer](#) for other options.

NAV TITLE: [Automatically keep files up to date with iCloud](#)

## Automatically keep your files up to date on your iPhone and computer with iCloud

### Metadata

**Summary:** Use iCloud on iPhone and your computer, keep your files up to date on both devices.

You can store your files, photos, videos, and more in iCloud so you can access them and keep them synced on all your devices. Any change you make to a file on a device that's signed in to iCloud appears on all devices that are signed in.

You can also access your information in iCloud from anywhere by using a supported web browser. See [System requirements for iCloud](#).

**Important:** OS X 10.10 (or later) or Windows 7 (or later) are required. You must be [signed in to your Apple Account](#) on both your iPhone and your computer, along with any web browsers you might be using.

### Set up iCloud on your iPhone

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > [your name].

If you don't see your name, tap "Sign in to your [device]," then enter your Apple Account password.

2. Tap iCloud, then turn on items you want to keep there.



[Alt text: The iCloud settings screen showing the iCloud storage meter and a list of apps and features that can be used with iCloud.]

For example, turn on iCloud Drive to make your files in iCloud Drive available to your computer.

### Set up iCloud on your Mac

1. Follow the instructions to [set up iCloud features on Mac](#) in the Mac User Guide.
2. Turn on the same items that you turned on for iPhone.

### Set up iCloud on your Windows device

1. Follow the instructions to [set up iCloud](#) in the iCloud for Windows User Guide.
2. Turn on the same items that you turned on for iPhone, then click Apply.

iCloud comes with an email account and 5 GB of free storage for your data. For more storage and additional features, you can [subscribe to iCloud+](#).

**Note:** Some iCloud features have minimum system requirements. iCloud might not be available in all areas, and iCloud features might vary by area. See the Apple Support article

[System requirements for iCloud](#). For information about features, go to [apple.com/icloud/](https://apple.com/icloud/).

### Related

[Use iCloud on iPhone](#)

[iCloud for Windows User Guide](#)

[iCloud User Guide: Sign in and use iCloud.com](#)

---

# CarPlay

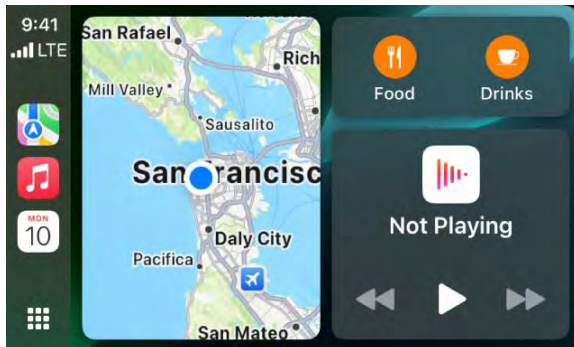
NAV TITLE: [Intro to CarPlay](#)

## Intro to CarPlay and iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** Learn how CarPlay puts iPhone apps on your vehicle's built-in display so you can stay focused on the road.

Connect your iPhone to CarPlay to get turn-by-turn directions, make phone calls, listen to music, check your calendar, and more—all from your vehicle's display.



[Alt text: A CarPlay Dashboard showing Maps, Music, and Messages in the Sidebar. On the right is a map of Apple Park, a navigation window, and a now playing window.]

**Note:** CarPlay isn't available in all countries or regions (see the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#)).

CarPlay is available on select automobiles (see the [CarPlay Available Models website](#)) and on select aftermarket navigation systems.

**WARNING:** For important information about avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see [Important safety information for iPhone](#).

NAV TITLE: [Connect to CarPlay](#)

## Connect iPhone to CarPlay

### Metadata

**Summary:** Set up CarPlay by connecting your iPhone and your vehicle using your vehicle's USB port or its wireless capability.

Set up CarPlay by connecting your iPhone and your vehicle using your vehicle's USB port or its wireless capability.

1. Start your car, then [make sure Siri is on](#).
2. Connect your iPhone to your car:
  - *If your car supports CarPlay with a USB cable:* Plug your iPhone into the USB port in your car. The USB port might be labeled with a CarPlay icon or a smartphone icon. Be sure to use an Apple USB Cable.
  - *If your car supports CarPlay both wirelessly and with a USB cable:* Plug your iPhone into the USB port in your car. The next time you attempt to connect your iPhone to CarPlay, an alert on your iPhone allows you to connect wirelessly.
  - *If your car supports only wireless CarPlay:* Press and hold the voice command button on your steering wheel. Make sure that your stereo is in wireless or Bluetooth mode. Then on your iPhone, go to Settings > Wi-Fi, and make sure that Wi-Fi is also turned on. Tap the CarPlay network, and check that Auto-Join is turned on. Then, go to Settings > General > CarPlay, and select your car. Check your car manual for more information.

**Note:** After connecting to CarPlay on some electric vehicles, use the Maps app to identify the vehicle for EV routing. See [Set up electric vehicle routing in Maps on iPhone](#).

On some vehicle models, CarPlay Home appears automatically when you connect iPhone.

If CarPlay Home doesn't appear, select the CarPlay logo on your vehicle's display.



[Alt text: the CarPlay icon]

### Related

## Use Siri to Control CarPlay

NAV TITLE: [Use Siri](#)



# Use Siri to Control CarPlay

Metadata

Summary: Use Siri to ask CarPlay for what you want.

CarPlay uses Siri voice control, so you can ask for what you want. (You can also [use your car's built-in controls](#) to control CarPlay.)

### Use Siri on CarPlay

1. Do one of the following until Siri beeps:
  - Press and hold the voice command button on the steering wheel.
  - Touch and hold  [Alt text: the Dashboard button] or  [Alt text: the Home button] on a touchscreen displaying CarPlay.
  - You can also say “Hey Siri” to activate Siri in supported vehicles.
2. Use Siri to ask a question or to do something.

**Siri:** Say something like:

- “Get directions to the nearest coffee shop”
- “Call Eliza Block”
- “Play more songs like this one”
- “Show me the map”
- “What’s my next meeting?”
- “What’s the weather for today?”
- “Remind me to pack an umbrella when I get home”

**Tip:** Instead of waiting for Siri to notice that you’ve stopped talking, you can press and continue to hold the voice command button on the steering wheel while you speak, then release it when you finish.

Siri also makes suggestions in CarPlay for what you might want to do next, such as operate the garage door when you arrive home or drive to your next meeting. See [About Siri Suggestions](#).

## Related

[Use your vehicle's built-in controls to control CarPlay](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use your vehicle's built-in controls](#)



# Use your vehicle's built-in controls to control CarPlay



### Metadata

**Summary:** CarPlay works with your vehicle's built-in controls, for example, a touchscreen, a rotary knob, or a touchpad.

CarPlay works with your vehicle's built-in controls—for example, a touchscreen, a rotary knob, or a touchpad. To learn how to operate your display, see the owner's guide that came with your vehicle. (You can also [use Siri](#) to control CarPlay.)

- *Open an app:* Tap the app on the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob to select the app, then press the knob.
- *Switch between CarPlay Dashboard and CarPlay Home:* CarPlay Dashboard displays several items you likely want to view or control, such as driving directions, audio playback, and suggestions from Siri. CarPlay Home shows all your CarPlay apps organized into pages.

To go to CarPlay Home, tap  [Alt text: the Home button] on the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob to select  [Alt text: the Home button], then press the knob.

To go to CarPlay Dashboard, tap  [Alt text: the Dashboard button], or turn the rotary knob to select  [Alt text: the Dashboard button], then press the knob.

- *Return to your vehicle's Home Screen:* Select the icon with your vehicle's logo if it appears on CarPlay Home or, if available, the physical Home button on your radio.
- *Return to a recently used app:* Tap its icon on the edge of the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob to the icon, then press the knob.
- *View additional apps:* If you have more than eight apps, some may appear on another page of CarPlay Home. To view them, swipe left on the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob. (See [Use other apps with CarPlay](#).)
- *Scroll quickly through a list:* Tap the letters in the list on the right side of the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob.
- *Control audio playback:* Use the audio playback controls on CarPlay Dashboard. Or from CarPlay Home, select Now Playing to view and control the current audio app.

## Related

## Get turn-by-turn directions with CarPlay

NAV TITLE: [Get turn-by-turn directions](#)

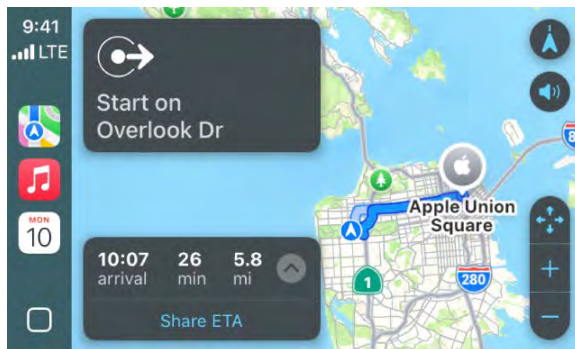
## Get turn-by-turn directions with CarPlay

### Metadata

**Summary:** Use CarPlay to find places, get directions, estimate your arrival time, and more.

Use Siri or open Maps to get turn-by-turn directions, traffic conditions, and estimated travel time (not available in all regions).

**Note:** To get directions, iPhone must be connected to the internet, and Location Services must be on. (See [Control the location information you share on iPhone.](#))



[Alt text: CarPlay showing Maps, Music, and Calendar in the Sidebar. On the right is a navigation route from Apple Park to Apple Union Station.]

### Find a route

CarPlay generates likely destinations using addresses from your email, text messages, contacts, and calendars—as well as places you frequent. You can also search for a location, use locations you saved as favorites and in collections, and find nearby attractions and services.


**Siri:** Say something like:




- “Find a gas station”
- “Give me directions home”
- “Take me to the Golden Gate Bridge”
- “Find a charging station”
- “Find coffee near me”



## [Learn how to use Siri](#)

Or you can use your vehicle's built-in controls to open Maps in CarPlay and select a route.

**Note:** If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Maps doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap  [Alt text: the Home button] to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Maps.

1. With Maps open in CarPlay, do one of the following:
  - Select a place you saved as a favorite. (See [Add places and notes to your library on iPhone.](#))
  - Select Destinations, then select a recent destination or scroll to select a destination you saved in a collection. (See [Organize places in custom guides in Maps on iPhone.](#))
  - Select Search, then select  [Alt text: the Microphone button] to speak a search phrase, or select  [Alt text: the Keyboard button] to use the onscreen keyboard (if available). You can also select a destination from a category of nearby services, such as Parking or Restaurants.
2. If multiple routes appear, use your vehicle's controls to select the route you prefer.
3. To call your destination before you leave, select  [Alt text: the Phone button] .
4. To start turn-by-turn directions, select Go.





Maps shows directions from your current location.

When you arrive at your destination and exit your vehicle, a parked car marker appears in Maps on iPhone so you can easily [find your way](#) back to your vehicle.

### **Follow turn-by-turn directions**

As CarPlay follows your progress, it speaks turn-by-turn directions to your destination.

Do any of the following at any time during your trip:

- *Add a stop to your driving directions:* Select the ETA display at the bottom left, select Add Stop, then choose a destination or use Siri to search for one.
- *End directions at any time:* Say something to Siri like "Stop navigating," or select the estimated time of arrival (ETA) display at the bottom left, then choose End Route.
- *Mute turn-by-turn directions:* Tap  [Alt text: the Volume button] , then choose  [Alt text: the Mute button] to mute all directions.
- *Mute turn-by-turn directions, except for alerts and hazards:* Tap  [Alt text: the Volume button] , then choose  [Alt text: the Alerts Only button] .
- *Make a quick detour:* Say something to Siri like "Find a gas station." Or select the ETA display, select Search, select a suggested service, then choose a destination.
- *Share your ETA:* Select the ETA display at the bottom left, select Share ETA, then choose one or more suggested contacts.

People using devices with iOS 13.1, iPadOS 13.1, or later receive a Maps notification with your ETA, and they can track your progress in Maps. People using devices with earlier versions receive the notification through iMessage. People using other mobile devices receive an SMS message. (Standard carrier data and text rates may apply.)

To stop sending ETA information, select Sharing ETA at the bottom of the CarPlay screen, then choose a contact.

**Note:** For navigation apps that support the CarPlay Dashboard, Dashboard shows the last navigation app opened if no apps are navigating, the one that is actively navigating, or the last opened and actively navigating app if multiple apps are navigating.

## Related

[Report traffic incidents in CarPlay](#)

NAV TITLE: [Report traffic incidents](#)

# Report traffic incidents in CarPlay

## Metadata

Summary: In CarPlay, report accidents, hazards, and speed checks.


In select regions and countries, you can report accidents, hazards, speed checks, and road work (features vary by region and country).

## Report an incident

**Siri:** Say something like:

- “Report an accident”
- “There’s something on the road”
- “There’s a speed check here”


[Learn how to use Siri](#)

Or with turn-by-turn directions showing, you can select  [Alt text: the Report button], then choose from one of the available options.

Apple evaluates incoming incident reports. When there’s a high level of confidence in the reports, incident markers for Accident, Hazard, and Road Work are displayed in Maps for other users.

**Note:** Speed checks are not displayed with incident markers. Instead, notifications for speed checks appear when you follow turn-by-turn directions.

## Report on the status of a hazard or accident

Incident markers show information about hazards  [ALT N/A] and accidents  [ALT N/A] .

When you're near their locations, you can report their status.


**Siri:** Say something like: "The hazard is gone" or "Clear the accident." [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

Or, you can do the following:

1. Select the incident marker.
2. Select Cleared or Still Here.

**Note:** You can't clear reports of speed checks.

Apple evaluates incoming incident reports. When there's a high level of confidence in reports that an incident has been cleared, its incident marker is removed from Maps.

**Note:** Apple is committed to keeping personal information safe and private. To learn more, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Apps > Maps, then tap "See how your data is managed."

## Related

[Change the map view in CarPlay](#)

NAV TITLE: [Change the map view](#)






# Change the map view in CarPlay

### Metadata

**Summary:** In CarPlay, find your location on a map, zoom in and out, and move the map to see the detail you need.







Find your location on a map, zoom in and out, and move the map to see the detail you need.

When you [follow turn-by-turn directions](#), you can tap the touchscreen or turn the rotary knob, then do one of the following:

- *Switch between detailed and high-level views:* To see a detailed 3D map with your heading at the top of the screen, select  [Alt text: the Detail button] . To see the route overview in 2D with north at the top of the screen, select  [Alt text: the Overview button] .
- *Zoom in or out:* Select  [Alt text: the Zoom In button] or  [Alt text: the Zoom Out button] .
- *Scroll the map:* Select  [Alt text: the Scroll button] , then select a direction arrow on one of the edges of the screen. To return to turn-by-turn directions, tap Resume.

On some touchscreens, you can also drag the map to scroll it.

You can also change the map view when not following directions. Tap the touchscreen or turn the rotary knob, then do one of the following:

- *Show your current location:* Tap  [Alt text: the Tracking Off button]. Your position is marked in the middle of the map.
- *View a 3D map:* Tap 3D. To return to a 2D map, tap 2D.
- *Show your heading at the top of the screen:* Tap  [Alt text: the Tracking On button]. To resume showing north at the top, tap  [Alt text: the Tracking On Heading button].
- *Zoom in or out:* Select  [Alt text: the Zoom In button] or  [Alt text: the Zoom Out button].
- *Scroll the map:* Select  [Alt text: the Scroll button], then select a direction arrow at the edges of the screen. When finished, tap Done.

### Related

[Make and receive phone calls with CarPlay](#)

NAV TITLE: [Make phone calls](#)

## Make and receive phone calls with CarPlay

### Metadata


**Summary:** Use CarPlay to make phone calls and listen to voicemail from your iPhone.

Use CarPlay to make phone calls and listen to voicemail from your iPhone.

**Siri:** Say something like: “Call Eliza.” [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

Or you can use your vehicle’s built-in controls to help make a call.

Open Phone in CarPlay, then select an option.

**Note:** If you’re viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Phone doesn’t appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap  [Alt text: the Home button] to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Phone.

### Related

[Play music with CarPlay](#)

NAV TITLE: [Play music](#)

## Play music with CarPlay

## Metadata

**Summary:** Use CarPlay to play music that's available on your iPhone.

Use Siri or open Music in CarPlay to play music that's available on your iPhone—including songs, artists, albums, playlists, and Radio.

- COMMENT - #ba #music

**Siri:** Say something like:

- “Let’s hear the Acoustic playlist”
- “Play ‘You Need to Calm Down’ by Taylor Swift”
- “Play more songs like this one”
- “Play the rest of this album”
- “Skip this song”
- “Repeat this song”
- “Shuffle this playlist”
- “Tune into ESPN Radio”

[Learn how to use Siri](#)



If Siri doesn’t find what you asked for, be more specific. For example, say “Play the radio station ‘Pure Pop’” rather than saying “Play ‘Pure Pop.’”

You can also use the controls on your vehicle’s steering wheel, buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control music playback.

You can also play music together using SharePlay. See [Play music together in the car using SharePlay and CarPlay on iPhone](#).

**Note:** If you’re viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap  [Alt text: the Home button] to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Music.

(table aria-label=Buttons on the Now Playing screen)

Button	Description
 [Alt text: The Pause button.]	Pause playback.
 [Alt text: The Play button.]	Play the current song.



[Alt text: The Next button.]

Skip to the next song. When pressed and held, fast forward through the current song.



[Alt text: The Previous button.]

Return to the song's beginning. When pressed again, return to the previous song. When pressed and held, rewind through the current song.



[Alt text: The Shuffle button.]

Play songs in random order.



[Alt text: The Repeat button.]

Continually repeat the current song.



[Alt text: The More button.]

Display controls to create a custom station based on the current song and to rate the current song.

Up Next

Display a list of songs queued for playback. (You can select a song from the list to skip the songs that proceed it.)

On some systems, Now Playing displays only a partial list of choices while you're driving. To choose among options not in the list, select More at the bottom of the screen, or use Siri by pressing and holding the voice command button on your steering wheel.

## Related

[Music Classical](#)

[View your calendar with CarPlay](#)

NAV TITLE: [View your calendar](#)

## View your calendar with CarPlay

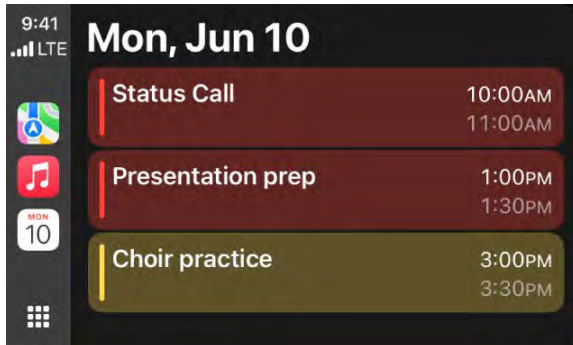
Metadata

Summary: Use CarPlay to view events, appointments, and meetings.

Use Siri or open Calendar in CarPlay to view events, appointments, and meetings.

**Siri:** Say something like: "Do I have a meeting at 10?" or "Where is my 3:30 meeting?" [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

Upcoming events appear in CarPlay Dashboard. You can also use your vehicle's built-in controls to open Calendar in CarPlay to view upcoming events.



[Alt text: CarPlay showing Maps, Music, and Calendar in the Sidebar. To the right are events for Mon, June 5th for portfolio work session, leadership skills workshop, presentation prep, and choir practice.]

**Note:** If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap  [Alt text: the Home button] to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Calendar.

To see more information about an event, select it. Options may allow you to get directions to the event or phone into it.

### Related

[Send and receive text messages with CarPlay](#)

NAV TITLE: [Send and receive text messages](#)

## Send and receive text messages with CarPlay

Metadata

Summary: Use CarPlay to send, hear, and reply to text messages from your iPhone.


Use CarPlay to send, hear, and reply to text messages from your iPhone.


**Siri:** Say something like:


- “Text my wife”
- “Text Eliza Block I’m in traffic and I’ll be 15 minutes late to the meeting”
- “Read my text messages”

[Learn how to use Siri](#)

Or you can use your vehicle's built-in controls to help send and receive messages. Open Messages in CarPlay, then do one of the following:

- *Hear unread messages or respond to a thread:* Select a conversation.
- *Start a new conversation:* Select  [Alt text: the Compose button] .
- *Automatically send messages:* Skip the confirmation step when sending messages with Siri to send messages automatically, unless you ask to change or cancel it.

In CarPlay, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Siri > Messaging with Siri, then select Automatically Send Messages.

**Note:** If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Messages doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap  [Alt text: the Home button] to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including [incoming text messages with CarPlay](#).


NAV TITLE: [Announce incoming text messages](#)

## Announce incoming text messages with CarPlay

Metadata

Summary: Use CarPlay to read your incoming text messages from your iPhone.

Use CarPlay to have Siri automatically read your incoming text messages and listen for your response.

- On your iPhone, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Siri > Announce Notifications, then turn on Announce Notifications.

**Note:** You can also enable or disable Announce Messages directly in CarPlay by tapping Announce when Siri reads an incoming text message. See [Have Siri announce notifications](#).

### Related

[Play podcasts with CarPlay](#)

NAV TITLE: [Play podcasts](#)

## Play podcasts with CarPlay

Metadata

Summary: Use CarPlay to play the podcasts that are on your iPhone.








Use CarPlay to play the podcasts that are on your iPhone.

You can use your vehicles's built-in controls to open Podcasts and select a podcast to play.

**Note:** If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap  [Alt text: the Home button] to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Podcasts.

You can also use the controls on your vehicle's steering wheel, the buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control podcast playback.

(table aria-label=Playback controls)

Button	Description
 [Alt text: The Play button.]	Play
 [Alt text: The Pause button.]	Pause
 [Alt text: The 15 Seconds Rewind button.]	Jump back 15 seconds
 [Alt text: The 30 Seconds Fast Forward button.]	Jump forward 30 seconds
 [Alt text: The Playback Speed button.]	Choose a faster or slower playback speed

## Related

[Play audiobooks with CarPlay](#)

NAV TITLE: [Play audiobooks](#)

## Play audiobooks with CarPlay

Metadata

Summary: Use CarPlay to play the audiobooks that are on your iPhone.

Use CarPlay to play the audiobooks that are on your iPhone.

- COMMENT - #ba #books

**Siri:** Say something like: “Play Pride and Prejudice audiobook” or “Rewind 15 seconds.” [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

Or you can use your vehicles’s built-in controls to open Audiobooks and select a book to play. You can also use the controls on your vehicle’s steering wheel, buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control audiobook playback.

**Note:** If you’re viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap  [Alt text: the Home button] to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Audiobooks.

### Related

[Listen to news stories with CarPlay](#)

NAV TITLE: [Listen to news stories](#)

## Listen to news stories with CarPlay

### Metadata

**Summary:** Use CarPlay to listen to Apple News Today audio briefings and, if you’re an Apple News+ subscriber, audio versions of select news stories.



Use CarPlay to listen to Apple News Today audio briefings and, if you’re an Apple News+ subscriber, audio versions of select news stories. (If you aren’t a subscriber, you can listen to story previews.)

You can use your vehicles’s built-in controls to open News and select a story to play.

**Note:** If you’re viewing CarPlay Dashboard and News doesn’t appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap  [Alt text: the Home button] to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including News.

You can also use the controls on your vehicle’s steering wheel, the buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control playback.

(table aria-label=Buttons on the News screen)

Button	Description
 [Alt text: The Pause button.]	Pause playback.
 [Alt text: The Play button.]	Play the current story.



[Alt text: The Next button.]

Skip to the next story.



[Alt text: The 15 Seconds Rewind button.]

Jump back 15 seconds.



[Alt text: The Playback Speed button.]

Choose a faster or slower playback speed.

**Note:** CarPlay isn't available in all countries or regions (see the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#)).

### Related

[Control your home from CarPlay](#)

NAV TITLE: [Control your home](#)

## Control your home from CarPlay

### Metadata

**Summary:** Use suggestions from Siri that appear on CarPlay Dashboard or use Siri directly to control HomeKit-enabled accessories.

You can use suggestions from Siri that appear on CarPlay Dashboard or use Siri directly to control HomeKit-enabled accessories, such as garage doors, lights, and door locks.

**Siri:** Say something like:

- “Open the garage door”
- “Did I leave the garage door open?”
- “Close the garage door”
- “Lock the front door”
- “Turn on the lights”
- “Turn off the lights”

[Learn how to use Siri](#)

### Related

[Use other apps with CarPlay](#)

## Use other apps with CarPlay

### Metadata

**Summary:** Use other apps with CarPlay, including Reminders, Clock, Weather, and third-party CarPlay apps.

You can use Siri with CarPlay to access many of the apps on iPhone, including Reminders, Clock, Weather, and more.

**Siri:** Say something like:

- “Remind me to pack an umbrella when I get home”
- “Add milk to my grocery list”
- “Set my alarm for 6:00 a.m. tomorrow”
- “What’s the weather for today?”

[Learn how to use Siri](#)

CarPlay works with select third-party apps that you download to your iPhone. Compatible apps—including audio, navigation, messaging, and voice-calling apps, and apps made by your vehicle manufacturer—show up automatically on CarPlay Home and can be controlled with Siri. For example, you can use Siri to give you directions from your favorite navigation app. CarPlay also works with additional third-party apps for EV charging, parking, and quick food ordering.

**Note:** Compatible third-party navigation apps appear on CarPlay Dashboard while in use. When you’re not actively navigating, or if you’re navigating using more than one app, CarPlay Dashboard displays the last compatible navigation app that was used.

### Related





[Rearrange the icons on CarPlay Home](#)

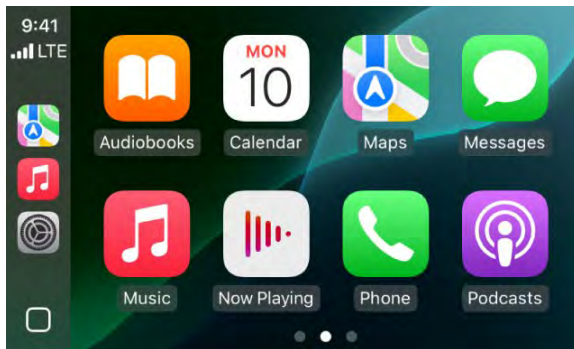
NAV TITLE: [Rearrange icons on CarPlay Home](#)

## Rearrange the icons on CarPlay Home

### Metadata

**Summary:** Change the order of icons displayed on CarPlay Home.

1. When you're not operating your vehicle, open Settings on your iPhone, go to General > CarPlay, select your vehicle, then tap Customize.
2. Do one of the following:
  - *Move an icon:* Drag  [Alt text: the Reorder button] up or down in the list.
  - *Remove an icon:* Tap  [Alt text: the Delete button] next to the icon, then tap Remove.  
Only icons that have  [Alt text: the Delete button] next to them can be removed.
  - *Add an icon back to CarPlay:* Below More Apps at the bottom of the page, tap  [Alt text: the Insert button] next to the icon.



[Alt text: A CarPlay Home showing Maps, Music, and Messages in the Sidebar. To the right is Audiobooks, Calendar, Maps, Messages, Music, Now Playing, Phone, and Podcasts.]

Your icon changes appear on CarPlay Home the next time you connect to CarPlay.

## Related

[Change settings in CarPlay](#)

NAV TITLE: [Change settings in CarPlay](#)

## Change settings in CarPlay

### Metadata

**Summary:** Change how CarPlay looks on the display, turn off suggestions in CarPlay Dashboard, or turn on Do Not Disturb.

In Settings in CarPlay, you can change the Wallpaper, turn on Driving Focus, change how CarPlay looks on the display, turn suggestions in CarPlay Dashboard on or off, and show or hide album art.

### **Use the Driving Focus with CarPlay**

The Driving Focus helps you stay focused on the road. While your iPhone is connected to CarPlay and Driving Focus is on, notifications and text messages are silenced or limited.

1. Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls.

**Note:** If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Settings doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap  [Alt text: the Home button] to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Settings.

2. Go to Driving Focus, then select Activate With CarPlay.

If you receive a Driving Focus notification when you're not driving (for example, when you're a passenger) you can turn it off—tap the notification, then tap “I'm not driving.”

### **Switch the appearance of CarPlay**

CarPlay is set to dark appearance by default in most vehicles. If you prefer to have CarPlay automatically switch between dark and light appearance, do the following:

1. Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls.
2. Select Appearance.
3. Select Always Dark.

The dark appearance is optimized for viewing in low-light environments, such as at night.

### **Change the wallpaper in CarPlay**

Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls, select Wallpaper, then choose one of the available options.

### **Hide or show suggestions in CarPlay Dashboard**

Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls, then turn Suggestions in CarPlay off or on.

### **Hide or show album art**

Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls, then turn Show Album Art off or on.

### **Related**

[Play music with CarPlay](#)

---

# Accessibility


NAV TITLE: [Get started with accessibility features](#)

## Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

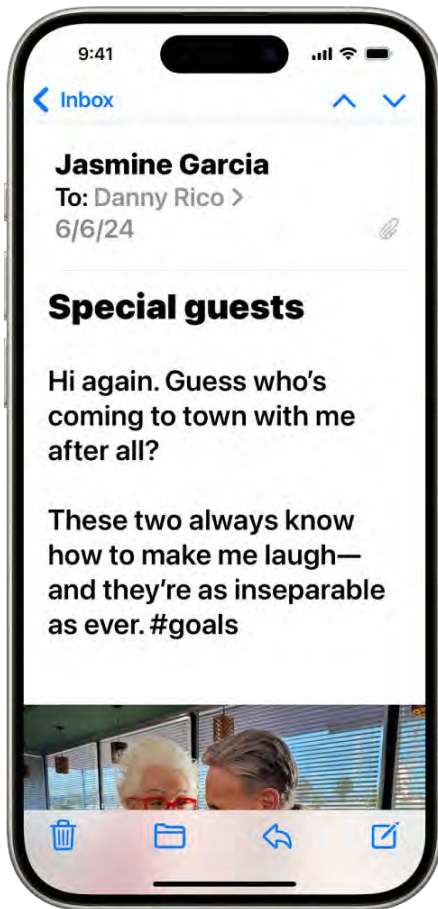
### Metadata

Summary: Learn about iOS accessibility features that can help iPhone work best for you.

Customize iPhone in ways that work best for you with features for vision, hearing, mobility, speech, and cognitive accessibility—whether you need them temporarily or on an ongoing basis.

You can [turn on accessibility features when you set up your iPhone for the first time](#), or at any time in Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility.

### Vision



[Alt text: An iPhone with the Mail app open. An email is displayed with large, bold text.]

Use the built-in screen reader to hear what's on the screen and navigate iPhone with gestures. Or make text bigger, zoom in on the screen, adjust display colors, and more.

You can even use your iPhone as a magnifying glass, and hold it up to get descriptions of your surroundings if you can't see them.

[Learn more about accessibility features for vision](#)

## Mobility





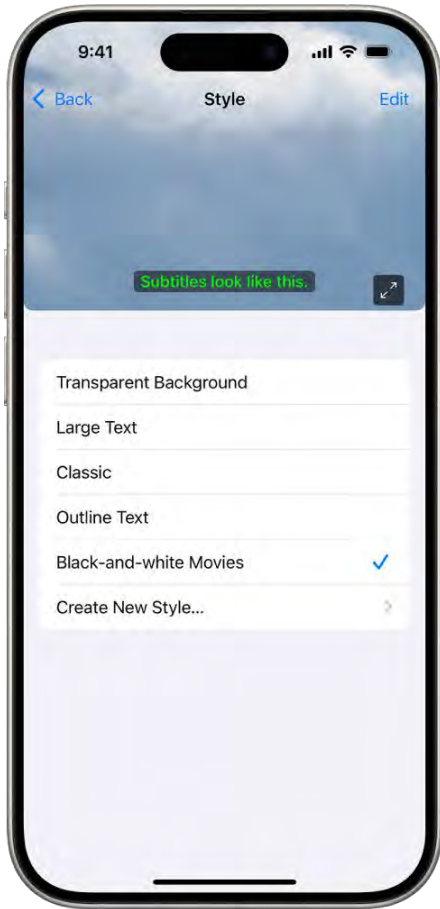
[Alt text: An iPhone showing a number next to each item on the Home Screen. At the top of the screen, the Voice Control command “Show numbers” is displayed.]

Navigate and perform actions on iPhone using just your eyes or spoken commands. Or connect an assistive device or an external keyboard and use it to control iPhone.

You can also make it easier to use gestures and set other options so iPhone responds best to your touch.

[Learn more about accessibility features for mobility](#)

## Hearing



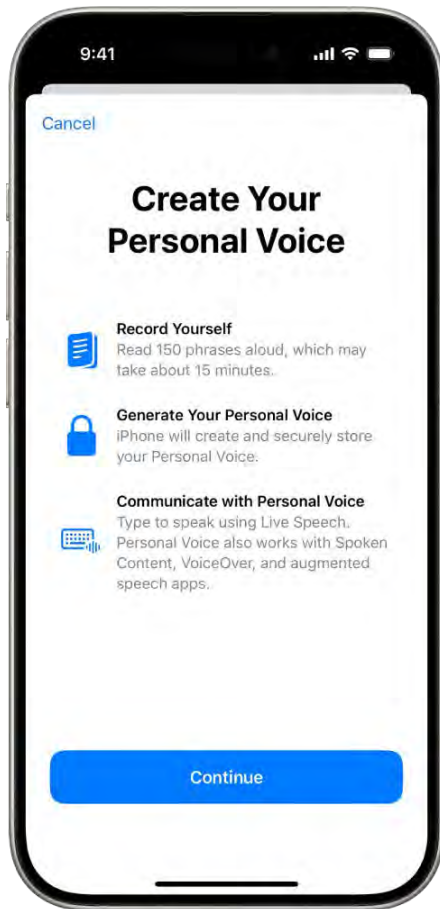
[Alt text: An iPhone showing an example of subtitles with a custom style.]

Get real-time captioning of spoken audio from an app or live conversation, turn on flash notifications, have iPhone recognize sounds, and more.

You can also pair hearing devices with your iPhone, and adjust headphone audio so it's right for you. Or experience songs as taps, refined vibrations, and other haptics that are synced to the rhythm of the music.

[Learn more about accessibility features for hearing](#)

## Speech



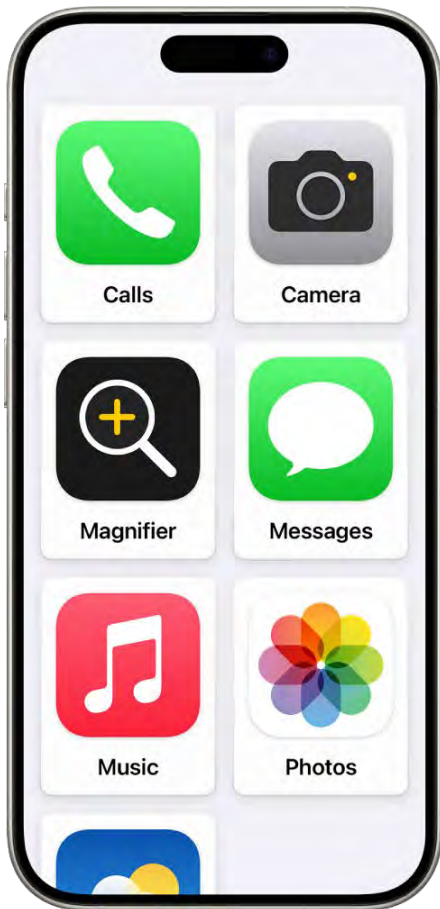
[Alt text: An iPhone with information about how to create a personal voice.]

Create a custom voice that sounds like you, or choose one of dozens of system voices, then use it to have what you type spoken out loud.

You can also have Siri recognize a wider range of speech patterns, or teach iPhone to perform an action when you speak a word or sound of your choosing.

[Learn more about accessibility features for speech](#)

## Cognitive



[Alt text: An iPhone showing the Assistive Access Home Screen with a large grid of apps.]

iOS accessibility features can help you—or someone you care for—use iPhone with greater independence. You can set up an iPhone with a simplified interface for someone with a cognitive disability, or temporarily lock iPhone to one app when you let a child use it.

[Learn more about cognitive accessibility features](#)

**Tip:** Control your go-to accessibility features and settings with Siri, the click of a button, or from Control Center. See [Quickly turn accessibility features on or off](#).

#### Related

[Apple Accessibility website](#)

[Apple Accessibility Support website](#)

[Get started](#)

[Setup basics](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use accessibility features during setup](#)

# Use accessibility features during iPhone setup

## Metadata

**Summary:** Use VoiceOver, Zoom, and other vision- and mobility-related accessibility features as you turn on iPhone for the first time.

iPhone has accessibility features that you can turn on the first time you turn on your iPhone, to make it easier to set up and personalize other iPhone features.

## Hear what's onscreen with VoiceOver

VoiceOver—a gesture-based screen reader—tells you what's happening onscreen.

1. After iPhone is turned on, triple-click the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or triple-click the Home button (on other iPhone models) to [turn on VoiceOver](#).
2. Do any of the following and more:
  - *Speak the entire screen:* Swipe up with two fingers.
  - *Find out what you're touching:* Touch the screen or drag your finger over it. VoiceOver speaks the name of the item your finger is on, including icons and text. Swipe right to elect the next item. Tap with four fingers near the top to select the first item on the screen.
  - *Select an item:* Tap to select a button or link, and activate it by double-tapping.
  - *Scroll to another page:* Swipe with three fingers.
  - *Open the onscreen rotor:* Turn two fingers on the screen, as if rotating a dial. See [Control VoiceOver using the rotor](#).

**Note:** When VoiceOver is on, basic gestures don't work as usual. See [Use VoiceOver gestures](#) and [Operate iPhone when VoiceOver is on](#).

You can adjust audio options, language, voice, speaking rate, how much detail VoiceOver provides, and more in [VoiceOver settings](#).


## Zoom in on part of the screen

1. Double-tap the screen with three fingers, then use the slider to set a magnification level.
2. Use three fingers to scroll around the zoomed-in screen.

See [Zoom in on the iPhone screen](#).

## Turn on other features during setup

You can turn on additional accessibility features from the Quick Start screen.

Tap  (Alt text: the Accessibility Options button) to turn on or adjust settings for any of the following:

- [VoiceOver](#)
- [Zoom](#)
- [Display & Text Size](#)
- [Motion](#)
- [Spoken Content](#)
- Touch (such as [AssistiveTouch](#) and [Touch Accommodations](#), [Switch Control](#), or any [external keyboard](#).)

If you've set up accessibility features on an iPhone or iPad that's nearby, you can transfer your settings to your new iPhone with Quick Start—just follow the onscreen instructions. See [Turn on and set up your iPhone](#). (See [Move from an Android device to iPhone](#) if your previous device wasn't made by Apple.)

### Related

[Turn on and set up iPhone](#)

[Get started with accessibility features on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Change Siri accessibility settings](#)


## Change Siri accessibility settings on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Change Siri accessibility settings on iPhone to best suit your needs.

You can change how quickly or when Siri responds, use text to make requests to Siri, have Siri listen for atypical speech patterns, have Siri audibly share notifications, and announce and end calls.

### Tell Siri when and how to respond to requests

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Siri.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Set how long Siri waits for you to finish speaking:* Below Siri Pause Time, choose Default, Longer, or Longest.
  - *Change how fast Siri speaks:* Adjust the slider below Speaking Rate.
  - *Decide when Siri responds aloud or in text:* Choose an option below Spoken Responses. You can also [change when Siri responds](#).


- *Use Siri even when iPhone is covered or facing down:* Turn on Always Listen for “Hey Siri.”

To have Siri respond when iPhone is facing up, go to Settings > Siri, then turn on Listen for “Siri” or “Hey Siri.”

- *Require “Siri” or “Hey Siri” in order to interrupt Siri:* Turn on Require “Siri” for Interruptions. This can be useful if you use VoiceOver or Voice Control and don’t want VoiceOver speech or Voice Control commands to interrupt Siri.


To change how you activate Siri, see [Set up Siri](#) and [Change when Siri responds](#).

### Type instead of speak to Siri

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Type to Siri.
2. To make a request, [activate Siri](#), then interact with Siri using the keyboard and text field.

### Have Siri recognize a wider range of speech patterns


You can have Siri listen for atypical speech. This may be helpful if you have an acquired or progressive condition that affects speech, such as cerebral palsy, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), or stroke.

Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Listen for Atypical Speech.

You can also teach iPhone to perform an action when you speak a word or make a sound of your choosing. See [Use Vocal Shortcuts](#).


### Announce calls and notifications for specific apps

You can have Siri [announce notifications](#) and [calls](#) from apps like Messages on your iPhone speaker, [supported headphones](#), when [using CarPlay](#), and on [MFi hearing devices](#).

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Announce Notifications on Speaker.
2. Tap Announce Notifications, then for each app, choose whether to announce all notifications or only time-sensitive notifications.

### End calls with Siri

You can have Siri end phone and FaceTime calls.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Siri, tap Call Hangup, then turn on Call Hangup.

**Note:** Available in select languages and on iPhone 11, iPhone SE (2nd generation), and later. Requires download of speech models.

2. To end a call, say something like: “Siri, hang up.” (Participants on the call will hear you.)

You can also [route and automatically answer calls](#) or have Siri [announce and answer calls](#).

## Related

[Use Siri on iPhone](#)

[Add Siri Shortcuts on iPhone](#)

[Change Siri settings on iPhone](#)

[Use Voice Control commands to interact with iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Quickly turn accessibility features on or off](#)

# Quickly turn accessibility features on or off on iPhone


## Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, quickly turn many accessibility features on or off by clicking or pressing an iPhone button, tapping the back of iPhone, and more.

You can quickly turn many accessibility features on or off by clicking or pressing an iPhone button or tapping the back of iPhone. You can also use Control Center, Siri, or Vocal Shortcuts.

## Use the Accessibility Shortcut

Triple-click the side button or Home button to turn the accessibility features of your choice on or off.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then select the features you want.

If you select only one feature, the feature is immediately turned on or off when you click the button shortcut.

2. Triple-click one of the following:
  - The side button (on an [iPhone with Face ID](#))
  - The Home button (on other iPhone models)

To have iPhone recognize a slower triple-click, see [Adjust settings for the side or Home button](#).

3. Tap the feature you want to turn on or off (if Accessibility Shortcut is set up with more than one feature).

**Note:** To add some features—like [Assistive Access](#) or [Guided Access](#)—to the Accessibility Shortcut, you need to set them up first. You can use the Accessibility Shortcut to enter and exit Assistive Access, but you can't use it to turn on other features while Assistive Access is active. To use the Accessibility Shortcut while Guided Access is on, you must turn on Accessibility Shortcut in [Guided Access settings](#).



### Press the Action button


On [supported iPhone models](#), you can press the Action button to open [the Magnifier app](#) or an accessibility feature of your choice. See [Use and customize the Action button](#).



### Tap the back of iPhone

You can double- or triple-tap the back of iPhone to open an accessibility feature of your choice. See [Tap the back of iPhone to perform actions or shortcuts](#).

### Use Control Center

You can add accessibility features to Control Center for quick access when you swipe from an edge of the screen.

1. To change the features available in Control Center, [open Control Center](#), tap  [Alt text: the Add button] in the top-left corner, then tap Add a Control.
2. Tap a control to add it to Control Center. Scroll down to see more controls, including categories of controls for accessibility, hearing, mobility, and vision.

You can change which features appear when you tap  [Alt text: the Hearing button] in Control Center. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Hearing Control Center, then add or remove features.

### Use Siri

**Siri:** Say something like: “Turn on Voice Control” or “Turn off VoiceOver.” [Learn how to use Siri](#).

### Use a Vocal Shortcut

You can teach iPhone to turn on an accessibility feature when you speak a word or another sound of your choosing. See [Use Vocal Shortcuts](#).

### Related

[Use Shortcuts to automate tasks on iPhone](#)

[Use AssistiveTouch on iPhone](#)

[Get started with accessibility features on iPhone](#)

## Vision


NAV TITLE: [Overview of accessibility features for vision](#)

### Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Metadata

**Summary:** Discover accessibility features for vision that make it easier to see or hear what's on your iPhone screen.

With built-in accessibility features for vision on iPhone, you can make it easier to see what's on the screen, or you can hear what's on the screen spoken out loud. You can even use your iPhone as a magnifying glass, and hold it up to get descriptions of what's around you if you can't see it.

To explore accessibility features for vision, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility. Vision features are at the top.

### Hear what's on the screen

(table aria-label=Hear what's on the screen)



[ALT N/A]

#### Control iPhone with VoiceOver

Have the built-in screen reader speak what's on the screen. Navigate your iPhone with gestures, or with a connected keyboard or braille display.

[Turn on and practice VoiceOver](#)



[ALT N/A]

#### Speak onscreen text

Even if VoiceOver is off, have iPhone read all text on the screen, what you're typing, and more.

[Hear iPhone speak the screen, selected text, and typing feedback](#)



[ALT N/A]

#### Hear descriptions of video

Get spoken descriptions of visual content in movies, TV shows, and other media, when available.

[Hear audio descriptions for video content](#)

You can also [have iPhone play sounds when you turn it on and off](#).

**Tip:** With [Siri](#) and [Dictation](#), you can complete common tasks and enter text using just your voice.

### Get information about your surroundings

(table aria-label=Get information about your surroundings)



[ALT N/A]



[ALT N/A]

### Point at text and hear it spoken

Have iPhone read text on household appliances, ATMs, and more.

[Read aloud text and labels around you](#)

### Hear about your surroundings

Hold up iPhone and get information about what your camera is pointed at, including when people, doors, or text are detected.

[Get live descriptions of visual information around you](#)

---



[ALT N/A ]

### Get a closer look

Use iPhone as a magnifying glass to zoom in on items around you.

[Magnify and examine objects around you](#)

---

### Make text and other onscreen content larger

(table aria-label=Make text and other onscreen content larger)

---



[ALT N/A ]

### Zoom in

Enlarge what you're viewing—the entire screen or one part of it.

[Zoom in on the iPhone screen](#)



[ALT N/A ]

### Make text bigger and bolder

Adjust the reading size for text across iPhone apps and system features.

[Make text easier to read](#)

---



[ALT N/A ]

### Enlarge text as you type

Display a separate window with a larger version of the text that you're typing.

[Use Hover Typing](#)

---

If you use a mouse or trackpad with iPhone, you can also [show a larger version of text when you hover over it](#) or [make the pointer easier to see](#).

### View what's on the screen more comfortably

(table aria-label=View what's on the screen more comfortably)

---



[ALT N/A]

### Reduce onscreen motion

Pause animated images, and slow down the motion of user interface elements. Or dim your display when media you're viewing depicts strobe or flashing lights.

[Stop or reduce onscreen motion](#)



[ALT N/A]

### Use iPhone more comfortably in a car

Get animated dots on the edges of the screen that may help reduce motion sickness.

[Use iPhone more comfortably while riding as a passenger in a vehicle](#)



[ALT N/A]

### Use Dark Mode

If you prefer light text on a dark background, choose a dark color scheme for the iPhone user interface.

[Turn Dark Mode on or off](#)



[ALT N/A]

### Adjust the display colors

Differentiate content on the screen more easily by inverting colors, applying a color filter, and more.

[Change display colors on iPhone to make it easier to see what's onscreen](#)

**Tip:** Control your go-to accessibility features and settings with the click of a button or from Control Center. See [Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut](#).

### Related

[Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps on iPhone](#)

[Get started with accessibility features on iPhone](#)

[Apple Accessibility Support website](#)

[Adjust CarPlay accessibility settings for vision](#)

NAV TITLE: [Zoom in](#)

## Zoom in on the iPhone screen

Metadata


Summary: On iPhone, magnify the screen with full-screen zoom or window zoom.

In many apps, you can zoom in or out on specific items. For example, you can double-tap or pinch to look closer in Photos or expand webpage columns in Safari. You can also use the Zoom feature to magnify the screen no matter what you're doing. You can magnify the entire screen (Full Screen Zoom) or magnify only part of the screen with a resizable lens (Window Zoom). And, you can use Zoom together with VoiceOver.



[Alt text: An iPhone showing the Home Screen with a window zoomed in on a part of the screen.]

### Set up Zoom

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Zoom, then turn on Zoom.
2. Adjust any of the following:
  - *Follow Focus*: Track your selections, the text insertion point, and your typing.
  - *Smart Typing*: Switch to Window Zoom when a keyboard appears.
  - *Keyboard Shortcuts*: Control Zoom using shortcuts on an external keyboard.
  - *Zoom Controller*: Turn the controller on, set controller actions, and adjust the color and opacity.
  - *Zoom Region*: Choose Full Screen Zoom or Window Zoom.
  - *Zoom Filter*: Choose None, Inverted, Grayscale, Grayscale Inverted, or Low Light.
  - *Maximum Zoom Level*: Drag the slider to adjust the level.
3. If you use iPhone with a pointer device, you can also set the following below Pointer Control:

- *Zoom Pan*: Choose Continuous, Centered, or Edges to set how the screen image moves with the pointer.
  - *Adjust Size with Zoom*: Allow the pointer to scale with zoom.
4. To add Zoom to Accessibility Shortcut, go to Settings > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then tap Zoom.

### Use Zoom

1. Double-tap the screen with three fingers or [use Accessibility Shortcut](#) to turn on Zoom.
2. To see more of the screen, do any of the following:
  - *Adjust the magnification*: Double-tap the screen with three fingers (without lifting your fingers after the second tap), then drag up or down. Or triple-tap with three fingers, then drag the Zoom Level slider.
  - *Move the Zoom lens*: (Window Zoom) Drag the handle at the bottom of the Zoom lens.
  - *Pan to another area*: (Full Screen Zoom) Drag the screen with three fingers.
3. To adjust the settings with the Zoom menu, triple-tap with three fingers, then adjust any of the following:
  - *Choose Region*: Choose Full Screen Zoom or Window Zoom.
  - *Resize Lens*: (Window Zoom) Tap Resize Lens, then drag any of the round handles that appear.
  - *Choose Filter*: Choose Inverted, Grayscale, Grayscale Inverted, or Low Light.
  - *Show Controller*: Show the Zoom Controller.
4. To use the Zoom Controller, do any of the following:
  - *Show the Zoom menu*: Tap the controller.
  - *Zoom in or out*: Double-tap the controller.
  - *Pan*: When zoomed in, drag the controller.

While using Zoom with Magic Keyboard, the Zoom region follows the insertion point, keeping it in the center of the screen. See [Pair Magic Keyboard with iPhone](#).

To turn off Zoom, double-tap the screen with three fingers or [use Accessibility Shortcut](#).

### Related

[Customize the text size and zoom setting on iPhone](#)

[Use iPhone like a magnifying glass](#)

[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [View a larger version of text you're reading or typing](#)

## View a larger version of text you're reading or typing on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** With Hover Text on iPhone, move the pointer over text you're reading to display a larger version of it. Or display a larger, editable version of text as you type it.


With Hover Text on iPhone, you can move the pointer over text and other items on the screen (such as icons) to view a larger version of them. Or use Hover Typing to display a separate window with a larger version of text that you're typing.


### Before you begin

To use Hover Text, you need to connect a pointing device such as a trackpad or mouse with your iPhone. See the Apple Support article [How to use a pointer device with AssistiveTouch on your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#).

You don't need to connect a pointing device to use Hover Typing.


### Show a larger version of text when you hover over it

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Hover Text, then turn on Hover Text.
2. Move the pointer over text to display a larger version of it.
3. If you have a connected keyboard, you need to press and hold the Control key to show the Hover Text window.

If you use iPhone with a connected keyboard, you can have the Hover Text window automatically displayed when you move the pointer over text, without needing to press and hold a key every time. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Hover Text, then turn on Activation Lock. To use activation lock, quickly press the Control key three times.


You can change the key you press to activate Hover Text and activation lock. Tap Activation Modifier, then choose another key.

### Show a larger version of text you're typing

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Keyboards & Typing, then tap Hover Typing.
2. Turn on Hover Typing.
3. As you type in a text entry field, a larger version of what you're typing is displayed.

To temporarily hide the Hover Typing window, swipe on it. It reappears when you start typing again.

### Customize Hover Text or Hover Typing

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility.
2. Tap Hover Text, or tap Keyboards & Typing, then tap Hover Typing.
3. Customize any of the following:
  - *Display mode*: Choose where to show the Hover Text or Hover Typing window—in-line (near the cursor), at the top of the screen, or directly above the onscreen keyboard.
  - *Appearance*: Choose the size, font, and color of the text in the Hover Text or Hover Typing window, or the colors of the window itself.
  - *Scrolling speed*: Choose a faster or slower speed (for scrolling in the Hover Text window when viewing large blocks of text).

### Related

[Zoom in on the iPhone screen](#)

[Customize the text size and zoom setting on iPhone](#)

[Use iPhone like a magnifying glass](#)

[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Change display colors](#)

## Change display colors on iPhone to make it easier to see what's onscreen

### Metadata


**Summary:** On iPhone, invert display colors, make transparent items solid, and modify how colors appear with color filters.

To make it easier to see what's on your iPhone screen, you can invert display colors, make transparent items solid, and modify how colors appear with color filters.

**Tip:** Quickly set brightness with the slider in [Control Center](#).

### Invert colors


Make the background dark so text and content stand out. This can be especially useful in apps and websites that don't support [Dark Mode](#).

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Turn on one of the following:
  - *Smart Invert*: Reverse colors everywhere except images.
  - *Classic Invert*: Reverse all the colors onscreen.



### **Differentiate or tone down colors**

You can apply a filter to view the entire screen in grayscale, adjust colors for color vision deficiencies, or tint the screen a color of your choosing.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Tap Color Filters, turn on Color Filters, then tap a color filter to apply it.

You can drag any slider that appears to adjust the intensity or hue. The pencils reflect how the filter affects a range of colors.

**Note:** Color filters can change the look of images and videos.


Turn on Reduce White Point to tone down the intensity of bright colors.

To have screen colors become warmer as it gets dark out, use [Night Shift](#). Night Shift automatically removes inverted colors and color filter effects (except grayscale).

You can also use the Magnifier app to capture an image of nearby text or objects and apply a color filter to it. See [Customize controls in Magnifier](#).


### **Make transparent items solid**

Some backgrounds appear transparent or blurred by default. You can make these transparent backgrounds opaque by giving them a solid color. In this way you simplify those parts of your screen and make them easier to see.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Turn on Reduce Transparency.


### **Differentiate without color**

Some screen items rely on color to convey information. You can replace these with alternative ways to tell them apart, like shapes or text.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Turn on Differentiate Without Color.

### **Use symbols for on/off switches**

Switches turn green when they are on. You can also have switches use a vertical line to indicate when they're on and a circle to indicate when they're off.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Turn on On/Off Labels.

To apply these settings to only the contents of the zoom window, see [Zoom in on the iPhone screen](#).

### **Related**

[Customize the text size and zoom setting on iPhone](#)  
[Adjust the screen brightness and color on iPhone](#)  
[Use iPhone like a magnifying glass](#)  
[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)

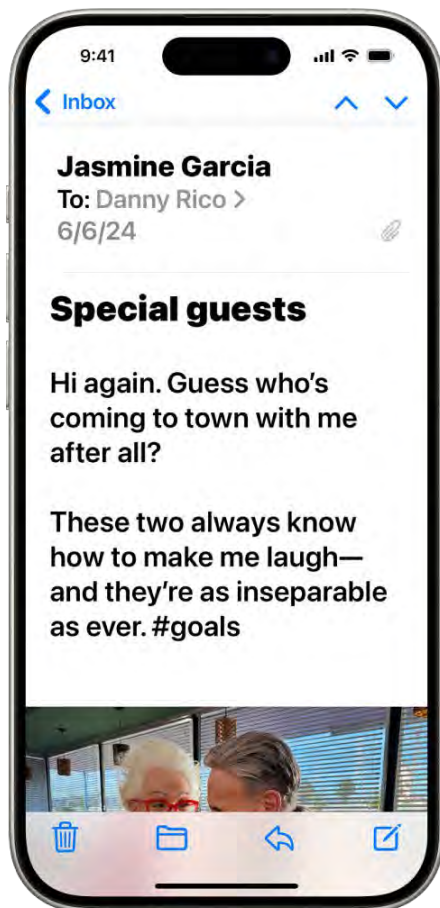
NAV TITLE: [Make text easier to read](#)

## Make text easier to read on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, make it easier to read text by increasing its size, making it bold, and more.


You can make it easier to read text on iPhone by increasing its size, making it bold, and more.





[Alt text: An iPhone with the Mail app open. An email is displayed with large, bold text.]

## Make text bigger and bolder

You can set a single preferred text size for all supported apps (including Calendar, Mail, Messages, Notes, Settings, and more). You can also turn on bold text.


1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Do any of following:
  - *Make text bigger:* Tap Larger Text, then drag the slider to adjust the text size.  
For additional text sizes, turn on Larger Accessibility Sizes.
  - *Make text heavier:* Turn on Bold Text.

**Tip:** Change the size of text while you're in an app. [Open Control Center](#), then adjust the Text Size slider  [ALT N/A]. If you don't see the Text Size slider, tap  [Alt text: the Add button] in the top-left corner, tap Add a Control, then tap the Text Size control.

You can also [turn on Display Zoom](#) to increase the size of text as well as interface elements like icons and buttons.

## Identify tappable text

You can underline any text that performs an action when you tap it.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Turn on Button Shapes.

You can also [change display colors on iPhone to make it easier to see what's onscreen](#) or [zoom in on the screen](#).

## Related

[Use iPhone like a magnifying glass](#)

[Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps on iPhone](#)

[Stop or reduce onscreen motion on iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Reduce onscreen motion](#)

## Stop or reduce onscreen motion on iPhone

Metadata

**Summary:** Stop or reduce the movement of some screen elements, transitions, animations, and more on iPhone.

If you don't want visual motion on your iPhone screen, you can stop or reduce the movement of some screen elements, such as:

- Parallax effect of wallpaper, apps, and alerts
- Screen transitions
- Siri animations
- Typing autocompletion
- Animated full-screen and bubble effects in the Messages app
- Animated images on the web and in apps

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Motion.

2. These settings stop or reduce motion:

- *Reduce Motion*: Turn on. (When off, more items in the user interface animate, such as the parallax effect of icons.)
- *Auto-Play Message Effects*: Turn off. (When on, the Messages app automatically plays full-screen effects. If you turn this setting off, you can still manually play effects by tapping Replay below the message bubble.)
- *Auto-Play Video Previews*: Turn off. (When on, it allows apps such as the App Store to automatically play video previews.)
- *Auto-Play Animated Images*: Turn off. (When on, rapid animated images and moving elements such as GIFs in Messages and Safari play automatically.)
- *Dim Flashing Lights*: Turn on. (The display of media automatically dims when flashes or strobe effects are detected.)
- *Prefer Non-Blinking Cursor*: Turn on. (Stop the blinking of the vertical bar that appears at the insertion point where you're typing. If you use a braille display with iPhone, the cursor indicator on the display also stops blinking.)
- *Limit Frame Rate*: Turn on. (On [models with ProMotion display technology](#), this limits the maximum frame rate of the display to 60 frames per second.)

To apply these effects to specific apps, see [Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps](#).

**Important:** Your iPhone uses an on-device algorithm to detect flashing or strobing lights included in supported video content and automatically dims them on your iPhone in real time. Motion settings should not be relied upon in circumstances where you could be harmed or injured, in high-risk situations, or for the treatment of any medical condition.

## Related

[Use iPhone more comfortably while riding in a vehicle](#)

[Turn off vibration on iPhone](#)

[Hide distractions when reading articles in Safari on iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use iPhone more comfortably while riding in a vehicle](#)



## Use iPhone more comfortably while riding in a vehicle

### Metadata

**Summary:** You can get onscreen cues that may help reduce motion sickness while using iPhone in an on-road moving vehicle.

If you experience discomfort when you use iPhone while riding as a passenger in a car or other on-road vehicle, you can turn on Vehicle Motion Cues—onscreen cues that may help reduce motion sickness. Vehicle Motion Cues appear as animated dots on the edges of the screen that represent how the vehicle is moving without interfering with what you're doing on iPhone.

**Note:** For important information about avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see [Important safety information for iPhone](#). Vehicle Motion Cues work best when you're seated facing forward in the vehicle.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Motion.
2. Tap Show Vehicle Motion Cues, then tap an option. If you choose Automatic, animated dots appear on the screen when iPhone detects that you're riding in a car or other on-road vehicle; the dots are hidden when the motion stops.
3. To manually show or hide Vehicle Motion Cues, [open Control Center](#), tap  [Alt text: the Vehicle Motion Cues button], then tap an option.

**Tip:** You can also set up a shortcut to turn Vehicle Motion Cues on or off. See [Quickly turn accessibility features on or off](#).

### Related

[Change display colors on iPhone to make it easier to see what's onscreen](#)

[Make text easier to read on iPhone](#)

[Stop or reduce onscreen motion on iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)


NAV TITLE: [Customize per-app visual settings](#)

## Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps on iPhone

#### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, choose different visual accessibility settings for individual apps and for the Home Screen and App Library.

You can choose different color, text size, and motion settings for certain apps or for the Home Screen and App Library.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Per-App Settings.
2. Tap Add App, then choose an app from the list (or Home Screen & App Library).
3. Tap the name of the app (or Home Screen & App Library) to access its settings.

#### Related

[Change display colors on iPhone to make it easier to see what's onscreen](#)

[Make text easier to read on iPhone](#)

[Stop or reduce onscreen motion on iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Hear what's on the screen or typed](#)


## Hear iPhone speak the screen, selected text, and typing feedback

#### Metadata

**Summary:** Even if VoiceOver is turned off, iPhone can speak the entire screen, selected text, or what you type.

Even if VoiceOver is turned off, you can have iPhone read text on the screen out loud. Have iPhone read the entire screen or a specific selection. Or hear what you type spoken out loud, character by character or word by word.

#### Have iPhone speak onscreen text

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Spoken Content.
2. Turn on any of the following:
  - *Speak Selection:* Have iPhone speak the text you select.
  - *Speak Screen:* Have iPhone read all text on the screen, starting from the top.

Turn on Speech Controller to keep the Speak Screen controls on the screen.

Turn on Highlight Content to have words or sentences highlighted as iPhone reads them out loud.

- *Typing Feedback options*: As you type, have iPhone speak character by character, word by word, and more.

3. Do any of the following:


- *Hear selected text (if you turned on Speak Selection)*: Select the text you want spoken, then tap Speak.
- *Hear all text on the screen (if you turned on Speak Screen)*: Swipe down with two fingers from the top of the screen.

Use the controls that appear to pause speaking, adjust the rate, navigate forward or back to the content you want to hear, or use Speak on Touch (tap the text you want iPhone to read).

- *Hear what you type (if you turned on Typing Feedback options)*: Start typing.

**Siri**: Say something like: “Speak screen.” [Learn how to use Siri](#).

### Change how Spoken Content sounds

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Spoken Content.

2. Adjust any of the following:

- *Voices*: Choose a voice and dialect.
- *Speaking Rate*: Drag the slider.
- *Pronunciations*: Dictate or spell out how you want certain phrases to be spoken.

### Related

[Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone](#)

[Get live descriptions of visual information around you with Magnifier on iPhone](#)

[Detect text around you and have it read out loud using Magnifier on iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)


NAV TITLE: [Hear audio descriptions](#)

## Hear audio descriptions for video content on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: iPhone can play audio descriptions of scenes (if available) while you play a video.

If you can't see your screen and your content includes audio descriptions, you can listen to an audio description—a separate audio track that narrates or describes the visual content of a clip, show, or movie.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Audio Descriptions.
2. Turn on Audio Descriptions.

If you don't see audio descriptions, see the Apple Support article [Turn on audio descriptions on your iPhone or iPad](#).

If you're a content creator and want to add audio descriptions to a file, see [Add descriptive audio tracks](#) in the Compressor User Guide.

### Related

[Stop or reduce onscreen motion on iPhone](#)

[Hear iPhone speak the screen, selected text, and typing feedback](#)

[Get live descriptions of visual information around you with Magnifier on iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Adjust CarPlay settings](#)

## Adjust CarPlay accessibility settings for vision

### Metadata


**Summary:** With CarPlay accessibility features for vision, you can make it easier to read text and differentiate colors on the CarPlay touchscreen.

With CarPlay accessibility features for vision, you can make it easier to read text and differentiate colors on the CarPlay touchscreen.

**Note:** CarPlay is not available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability page](#).

### Make text bold


Turn on bold text to make it easier to read what's on the CarPlay touchscreen.

1. In CarPlay, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility.
2. Turn on Bold Text.

### Filter display colors for color vision deficiencies

To make it easier to differentiate colors on the CarPlay touchscreen, you can apply filters for color vision deficiencies, or view the entire screen in grayscale.



1. In CarPlay, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility.
2. Tap Color Filters, then turn on Color Filters.
3. Tap a filter. To change the intensity of the filter, tap Low, Medium, or High.

#### Related

[Intro to CarPlay and iPhone](#)

[Change settings in CarPlay](#)

[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)

## VoiceOver

NAV TITLE: [Turn on and practice VoiceOver](#)

### Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone

#### Metadata

**Summary:** If you can't see the iPhone screen, turn on VoiceOver, a gesture-based screen reader.

With VoiceOver—a gesture-based screen reader—you can use iPhone even if you can't see the screen. VoiceOver gives audible descriptions of what's on your screen—for example, hear the battery level, who's calling, or what item your finger is on. You can also customize the VoiceOver speaking voice to suit your needs.


When you touch the screen or drag your finger over it, VoiceOver speaks the name of the item your finger is on, including icons and text. To interact with the item, such as a button or link, or to navigate to another item, [use VoiceOver gestures](#).

When you go to a new screen, VoiceOver plays a sound, then selects and speaks the name of the first item on the screen (typically in the top-left corner). VoiceOver tells you when the screen changes to landscape or portrait orientation, when the screen becomes dimmed or locked, and what's active on the Lock Screen when you wake iPhone.

#### Turn VoiceOver on or off

**Important:** VoiceOver changes the gestures you use to control iPhone. When VoiceOver is on, you must use VoiceOver gestures to operate iPhone.

To turn VoiceOver on or off, do any of the following:

- Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then turn VoiceOver on or off.

- Use [Control Center](#) if you've added VoiceOver there.
- Use [the Accessibility Shortcut](#) if you've set it up to turn on VoiceOver.

**Siri:** Say something like: "Turn on VoiceOver" or "Turn off VoiceOver." [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

Siri knows when VoiceOver is on and often reads more information back to you than appears on the screen. You can also use VoiceOver to read what Siri shows on the screen.

### **Use an interactive tutorial to learn VoiceOver**


You can learn VoiceOver basics and practice essential gestures with the interactive VoiceOver Tutorial.

With VoiceOver turned on, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then tap VoiceOver Tutorial to get started.

### **Practice VoiceOver gestures**

You can use the VoiceOver Practice area to safely try out VoiceOver gestures and hear what they do—without performing any action or otherwise affecting iPhone.

Try different techniques to discover which works best for you. If a gesture doesn't work, try a quicker movement, especially for a double tap or swipe gesture. To swipe, try brushing the screen quickly with your finger or fingers. For best results using multifinger gestures, touch the screen with some space between your fingers.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
2. Turn on VoiceOver, tap VoiceOver Practice, then double-tap to start.
3. Practice the following gestures with one, two, three, and four fingers:
  - Tap
  - Double tap
  - Triple tap
  - Swipe left, right, up, or down
4. When you finish practicing, tap Done, then double-tap to exit.

### **Related**

[Change your VoiceOver settings on iPhone](#)

[Get live descriptions of visual information around you with Magnifier on iPhone](#)

[Detect text around you and have it read out loud using Magnifier on iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)




## Change your VoiceOver settings on iPhone

### Metadata


**Summary:** Customize settings for VoiceOver on iPhone, such as audio options, language, voice, speaking rate, and verbosity.

You can customize the settings for VoiceOver, such as the audio options, language, voice, speaking rate, and verbosity.

### Adjust the volume of VoiceOver speech and sounds

- To increase or decrease your iPhone's volume, including the volume of VoiceOver speech and sounds, as well as all other iPhone audio, press the volume buttons on iPhone.
- To increase or decrease just the volume of VoiceOver speech, without affecting the volume of other iPhone audio, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Audio, tap Audio Ducking, then drag the VoiceOver Speech Volume slider.
- To temporarily reduce the volume of media playback and calls when VoiceOver speaks, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Audio, tap Audio Ducking, then select When Speaking.
- To set other audio options, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Audio, then set options such as the following:
  - *Sounds & Haptics:* Adjust and preview sound effects and haptics.
  - *Auto-select Speaker in Call:* Automatically switch to the speaker during a call when you're not holding iPhone to your ear.
  - *Send to HDMI:* Route audio to externally connected devices, such as an instrument amplifier or a DJ mixer.



### Set the VoiceOver language

- *Change the primary language:* VoiceOver uses the same language you choose for your iPhone. To choose a different primary language, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > General > Language & Region, then tap Add Language.
- *Switch languages using the rotor:* [Use the rotor](#) to switch to a voice for another language.
- *Automatically switch languages:* VoiceOver can detect text in another language and automatically switch to a voice for that language. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Speech, then turn on Detect Languages.


**Note:** VoiceOver is not available in all languages. See the Apple Support article [Languages supported by VoiceOver](#).


### Change the speaking voice

You can change the VoiceOver speaking voice, or add another voice and [use the rotor](#) to switch between voices as needed.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
2. Tap Speech, then do one of the following:
  - *Change the primary voice:* Tap the name of the current primary voice, then tap Voice.
  - *Add another voice:* Tap Add Rotor Voice.
3. Choose a voice. To choose an enhanced voice, tap  [Alt text: the Download button] first.


### Adjust the speaking voice

Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then do any of the following:

- *Adjust the speaking rate:* Drag the Speaking Rate slider.
- *Adjust the pitch:* Tap Speech, tap a voice, then drag the slider. You can also turn on Pitch Change to have VoiceOver use a higher pitch when speaking the first item of a group (such as a list or table) and a lower pitch when speaking the last item of a group.
- *Specify the pronunciation of certain words:* Tap Speech > Pronunciations, tap  [Alt text: the Add button], enter a phrase, then dictate or spell out how you want the phrase to be pronounced.

**Note:** You can dictate only if you turned on Enable Dictation in Settings > General > Keyboards.


### Set how much VoiceOver tells you

Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Verbosity, then do any of the following:


- *Change how VoiceOver speaks punctuation:* Tap Punctuation, then choose a group. You can also create new groups—for example, a programming group in which “[” is spoken as “left brack.”
- *Change how VoiceOver reads notifications:* Tap System Notifications. By default, VoiceOver reads notifications, including incoming text messages, as they occur—even if iPhone is locked. Unacknowledged notifications are repeated when you unlock iPhone.
- *Choose additional options:* Have VoiceOver speak hints, uppercase letters, embedded links, and more. VoiceOver can even confirm rotor actions and tell you when the flashlight is turned on.

### Customize VoiceOver settings for an activity

You can customize a group of VoiceOver settings for an activity, such as programming. Then, when you open certain apps or adjust the rotor, the settings for speech, audio, verbosity, typing, navigation, and braille are applied automatically.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Activities.
2. Choose an existing activity or tap Add Activity.
3. Adjust the settings, then below Automatic Switching, do any of the following:
  - *Apply the settings for certain apps:* Tap Apps, then select the ones you want this setting to apply to.
  - *Apply the settings for certain contexts:* Tap Context, then select one or more contexts, such as Word Processing, Messaging, or Console.




### Use flat or grouped navigation

Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Navigation Style, then choose one of the following:


- *Flat:* VoiceOver moves sequentially through each item on the screen when you use the move next and previous commands.
- *Grouped:* VoiceOver moves through items and groups of items on the screen. To move into a group, use a two-finger swipe right. To move out of a group, use a two-finger swipe left.

### Set a delay between touching the screen and selecting an item

You can control the amount of time between when you touch the screen and when VoiceOver selects the item you've touched. Increasing this value may help reduce accidental touches.

Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver, tap Delay before Selection, then tap  [Alt text: the Increment button] or  [Alt text: the Decrement button] to increase or decrease the delay.

### Adjust VoiceOver visuals



Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then turn on any of the following:

- *Large Cursor:* If you have difficulty seeing the outline around the selected item, you can enlarge and thicken the outline.
- *Caption Panel:* The text spoken by VoiceOver is displayed at the bottom of the screen.

### Use Quick Settings to adjust VoiceOver from anywhere on iPhone

When VoiceOver is turned on, you can access Quick Settings by doing a two-finger quadruple tap.

To customize Quick Settings, do the following:

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Quick Settings.
2. Choose the settings you want, or drag  [Alt text: the Reorder button] to reorder settings.

### Related

[Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone](#)  
[Use VoiceOver gestures on iPhone](#)  
[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use VoiceOver gestures](#)

## Use VoiceOver gestures on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** With VoiceOver on iPhone, scan the screen with your finger and use gestures to perform actions or hear more information.

When VoiceOver is on, standard touchscreen gestures have different effects, and additional gestures let you move around the screen and control individual items. VoiceOver gestures include two-, three-, and four-finger taps and swipes.

You can use different techniques to perform VoiceOver gestures. For example, you can perform a two-finger tap using two fingers on one hand, one finger on each hand, or your thumbs. Instead of selecting an item and double-tapping, you can use a split-tap gesture—touch and hold an item with one finger, then tap the screen with another finger.

### Explore and speak items on the screen

To explore the screen, drag your finger over it. VoiceOver speaks the name of each item you touch.

You can also use VoiceOver gestures to explore the screen in order, from top to bottom and left to right.

(table aria-label=VoiceOver gestures to speak items on the screen)

Action	Gesture
Select and speak an item	Tap or touch the item
Select the next item	Swipe right
Select the previous item	Swipe left
Move into a group of items	Two-finger swipe right
Move out of a group of items	Two-finger swipe left
Select the first item on the screen	Four-finger tap near the top of the screen
Select the last item on the screen	Four-finger tap near the bottom of the screen

Speak the entire screen from the top	Two-finger swipe up
Speak the entire screen from the selected item	Two-finger swipe down
Pause or continue speaking	Two-finger tap
Speak additional information, such as the position within a list or whether text is selected	Three-finger tap

For more information about navigation styles, see [Use flat or grouped navigation](#).

### Scroll up, down, left, and right

Use VoiceOver gestures to move to another page.

(table aria-label=VoiceOver gestures to scroll)

Action	Gesture
Scroll up one page	Three-finger swipe down
Scroll down one page	Three-finger swipe up
Scroll left one page	Three-finger swipe right
Scroll right one page	Three-finger swipe left

### Take action on an item

Use VoiceOver gestures to perform actions on an item.

(table aria-label=VoiceOver gestures to perform actions on an item)

Action	Gesture
Select an item	Tap
Activate the selected item	Double tap
Double-tap the selected item	Triple tap
Drag a slider	Tap the slider to select it, then swipe up or down with one finger; or double-tap and hold the slider until you hear three rising tones, then drag the slider
Start or stop the current action (for example, play or pause music or a video, take a photo in Camera, start or stop a recording, start or stop the stopwatch)	Two-finger double tap
Dismiss an alert or return to the previous screen	Two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a “z”)
Edit an item’s label to make it easier to find	Two-finger double tap and hold

---

**Tip:** As an alternative to selecting an item and double-tapping to activate it, touch and hold an item with one finger, then tap the screen with another.

### Use gestures to control VoiceOver

Use these gestures to control VoiceOver.

(table aria-label=Gestures to control VoiceOver)

Action	Gesture
Mute or unmute VoiceOver	Three-finger double tap.  If both VoiceOver and Zoom are turned on, use the three-finger triple-tap gesture.
Turn the screen curtain on or off  (When the screen curtain is on, the screen contents are active even though the display is black and appears to be turned off.)	Three-finger triple tap.  If both VoiceOver and Zoom are turned on, use the three-finger quadruple-tap gesture.
Use a standard gesture	Double-tap and hold your finger on the screen until you hear three rising tones, then make the gesture. When you lift your finger, VoiceOver gestures resume.  For example, to drag a volume slider with your finger instead of swiping up and down, select the slider, double-tap and hold, wait for the three tones, then slide left or right.
Open the Item Chooser	Two-finger triple tap.  To move quickly through the list of items, type a name in the search field, swipe right or left to move through the list alphabetically, or tap the table index to the right of the list and swipe up or down. You can also <a href="#">use handwriting</a> to select an item by writing its name. If you use Braille Screen Input to <a href="#">type braille directly on the screen</a> , when you're not entering text, you can type to search for an item.  To dismiss the Item Chooser without making a selection, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").
Open the VoiceOver quick settings	Two-finger quadruple tap.
Start or stop Live Recognition	Four-finger triple tap. See <a href="#">Get live descriptions of your surroundings with VoiceOver</a> .

### Use the VoiceOver rotor



You can use the onscreen rotor to change VoiceOver settings, jump from one item to the next on the screen, select special input methods such as Braille Screen Input or Handwriting, and more. See [Control VoiceOver using the rotor](#).

You can use these gestures with the rotor.

(table aria-label=Gestures to use the VoiceOver rotor)

Action	Gesture
Choose a rotor setting	Two-finger rotation
Move to the previous item or increase (depending on the rotor setting)	Swipe up
Move to the next item or decrease (depending on the rotor setting)	Swipe down

### Related

[Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone](#)  
[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)

## Operate iPhone when VoiceOver is on

### Metadata

**Summary:** With VoiceOver, you need to use special gestures to unlock iPhone, open Control Center, switch apps, and more.

When VoiceOver is on, you need to use special gestures to unlock iPhone, go to the Home Screen, open Control Center, switch apps, and more.

### Unlock iPhone

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Wake iPhone and glance at it, then drag up from the bottom edge of the screen until you feel a vibration or hear two rising tones.
- *On an iPhone with Touch ID:* Press the Home button using the finger you registered with Touch ID.

If prompted, enter your passcode. To avoid having your passcode spoken as you enter it, [enter your passcode silently using handwriting mode](#) or [type onscreen braille](#).

### Go to the Home Screen

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger up from the bottom edge of the screen until you feel a vibration or hear two rising tones, then lift your finger.

- *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Press the Home button.

### **Switch to another app**

Swipe right or left with four fingers to cycle through the open apps.

Alternatively, you can use the App Switcher.

1. To open the App Switcher, do one of the following:
  - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger up from the bottom edge of the screen until you feel the second vibration or hear three tones, then lift your finger.
  - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Double-click the Home button.
2. To browse the open apps, swipe left or right until the app you want is selected.
3. Double-tap to open the app.

### **Open Control Center**

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger down from the top edge of the screen until you feel a vibration or hear the second tone.
- *On all iPhone models:* Tap any item in the status bar, then swipe up with three fingers. Or touch and hold the bottom of the screen until you hear a tone, then swipe up.

To dismiss Control Center, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a “z”).

### **View notifications**

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger down from the top edge of the screen until you feel the second vibration or hear the third tone.

To dismiss the notifications screen, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a “z”).

- *On all iPhone models:* Tap any item in the status bar, then swipe down with three fingers. Or touch and hold the top of the screen until you hear a tone, then swipe down.

To dismiss the notifications screen, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a “z”).

### **Speak status bar information**

1. Tap the status bar at the top of the screen.
2. Swipe left or right to hear the time, battery state, Wi-Fi signal strength, and more.

### **Rearrange apps on your Home Screen**

Do one of the following:

- *Drag and drop:* Tap an icon on the Home Screen, then double-tap and hold your finger on the screen until you hear three rising tones. The item's relative location is described as you drag. Lift your finger when the icon is in its new location. Drag an icon to the edge of the screen to move it to another Home Screen.
- *Move actions:* Tap an app, then swipe down to hear available actions. When you hear "Edit Mode," double-tap to start arranging apps. Find the app you want to move, then swipe down to the Move action and double-tap. Move the VoiceOver cursor to the new destination for the app, then choose from the available actions: Cancel Move, Create New Folder, Add to Folder, Move Before, or Move After.

When you're finished, tap Done, then double-tap.

### Search from the Home Screen

1. Tap anywhere on the Home Screen outside the status bar.
2. Swipe down with three fingers.

### Related

[Use VoiceOver gestures on iPhone](#)

[Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)

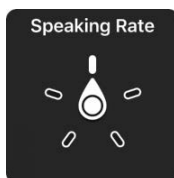
NAV TITLE: [Control VoiceOver using the rotor](#)

## Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, use the rotor to change how VoiceOver works. Set the volume or speaking rate, move from one item to the next on the screen, and more.

You can use the onscreen VoiceOver rotor to change how VoiceOver works. You can adjust the VoiceOver volume or speaking rate, move from one item to the next on the screen, select special input methods such as Braille Screen Input or Handwriting, and more.



[Alt text: The rotor control with the dial pointing to the Speaking Rate setting.]

When you [use Magic Keyboard to control VoiceOver](#), use the rotor to adjust settings such as volume, speech rate, use of pitch or phonetics, typing echo, and reading of punctuation.

### Use the VoiceOver rotor



1. When VoiceOver is turned on, rotate two fingers on your screen as if you're turning a dial. If you prefer to use one finger on each hand, simultaneously drag up with one finger and drag down with the other.

VoiceOver speaks the rotor setting. Keep rotating your fingers to hear more settings. Stop rotating your fingers when you hear the setting you want.

2. Swipe your finger up or down on the screen to use the setting.

The available rotor settings and their effects depend on what you're doing. For example, if you choose Headings when you're browsing a webpage, swipe down or up to move the VoiceOver cursor to the next or previous heading.

### Customize the VoiceOver rotor

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Add or reorder the rotor settings:* Tap Rotor, then choose the settings you want, or drag  [Alt text: the Reorder button] to reorder settings.
  - *Add another voice to the rotor:* See [Change the speaking voice](#).
  - *Have VoiceOver confirm rotor actions:* Tap Verbosity, then turn on Speak Confirmation.

### Related

[Operate iPhone when VoiceOver is on](#)

[Change your VoiceOver settings on iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use the onscreen keyboard](#)

## Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone

#### Metadata

**Summary:** When using VoiceOver on iPhone, use the onscreen keyboard when you activate an editable text field. Enter, select, and delete text; change the keyboard language; and more.

VoiceOver changes how you use the onscreen keyboard when you activate an editable text field. You can enter, select, and delete text; change the keyboard language; and more.

## Enter text with the onscreen keyboard

1. Select a text field, then double-tap.

The insertion point and the onscreen keyboard appear.

2. To enter text, do one of the following:
  - *Standard typing:* Select a key by swiping left or right on the keyboard, then double-tap to enter the character. Or move your finger around the keyboard to select a key and, while continuing to touch the key with one finger, tap the screen with another finger. VoiceOver speaks the key when it's selected, and again when the character is entered.
  - *Touch typing:* Touch a key on the keyboard to select it, then lift your finger to enter the character. If you touch the wrong key, slide your finger to the key you want. VoiceOver speaks the character for each key as you touch it, but doesn't enter a character until you lift your finger.
  - *Direct Touch typing:* VoiceOver is disabled for the keyboard only, so you can type just as you do when VoiceOver is off.
  - *Dictation:* Use a two-finger double tap on the keyboard to start and stop dictation.

To enter an accented character, do one of the following:

- *Standard typing:* Select the plain character, then double-tap and hold until you hear a tone indicating alternate characters have appeared. Drag left or right to select and hear the choices. Release your finger to enter the current selection.
- *Touch typing:* Touch and hold a character until the alternate characters appear.



## Edit text with the onscreen keyboard

- *Move the insertion point:* Swipe up or down to move the insertion point forward or backward in the text. Use the rotor to choose whether you want to move the insertion point by character, by word, or by line. To jump to the beginning or end, double-tap the text.


VoiceOver makes a sound when the insertion point moves, and speaks the character, word, or line that the insertion point moves across. When moving forward by words, the insertion point is placed at the end of each word, before the space or punctuation that follows. When moving backward, the insertion point is placed at the end of the preceding word, before the space or punctuation that follows it.

- *Move the insertion point past the punctuation at the end of a word or sentence:* Use the rotor to switch back to character mode.

When moving the insertion point by line, VoiceOver speaks each line as you move across it. When moving forward, the insertion point is placed at the beginning of the next line (except when you reach the last line of a paragraph, when the insertion point is moved to the end of the line just spoken). When moving backward, the insertion point is placed at the beginning of the line that's spoken.

- *Delete a character:* Use  [Alt text: the Delete key] .
- *Select text:* Do any of the following:
  - Set the rotor to Text Selection, swipe up or down to choose Character, Word, Line, or Sentence, then swipe left or right to move backward or forward. (You may need to enable Text Selection—go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor.)
  - Set the rotor to Edit, swipe up or down to choose Select or Select All, then double-tap. If you choose Select, the word closest to the insertion point is selected when you double-tap. To increase or decrease the selection, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a “z”) to dismiss the pop-up menu, then pinch.
- *Cut, copy, or paste:* Set the rotor to Edit, select the text, swipe up or down to choose Cut, Copy, or Paste, then double-tap.
- *Fix misspelled words:* Set the rotor to Misspelled Words, then swipe up or down to jump to the previous or next misspelled word. Swipe left or right to choose a suggested replacement, then double-tap to use the replacement.
- *Undo:* Shake iPhone, swipe left or right to choose the action to undo, then double-tap.

### Change the keyboard settings

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
2. Tap any of the following:
  - *Typing Style:* You can choose a new style. Or, set the rotor to Typing Mode, then swipe up or down.
  - *Phonetic Feedback:* Speak text character by character. VoiceOver first speaks the character, then its phonetic equivalent—for example, “f” and then “foxtrot.
  - *Typing Feedback:* Choose to speak characters, words, both, or nothing.
  - *Verbosity:* Tap Deleting Text. To have VoiceOver speak deleted characters in a lower pitch, tap Change Pitch.

### Related

[Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPhone](#)

[Use VoiceOver on iPhone with an Apple external keyboard](#)

[Use VoiceOver on iPhone with a pointer device](#)

[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Write with your finger](#)

Write with your finger in VoiceOver on iPhone


#### Metadata

**Summary:** When using handwriting mode in VoiceOver on iPhone, enter text by writing characters on the screen with your finger.

With handwriting mode in VoiceOver, you can enter text by writing characters on the screen with your finger. In addition to typing or dictation, use handwriting mode to enter your iPhone passcode silently or to open apps from the Home Screen.

#### Use handwriting mode

1. Set the rotor to Handwriting.

If Handwriting isn't in the rotor, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor, then add it.

2. To choose a character type (lowercase, numbers, uppercase, or punctuation), swipe up or down with three fingers.

To hear the selected character type, tap with three fingers.

3. Trace a character on the screen with your finger.

You can also do any of the following:

- *Enter an alternate character (a character with an accent, for example):* Write the character, then swipe up or down with two fingers until you hear the character you want.
- *Enter a space:* Swipe right with two fingers.
- *Go to a new line:* Swipe right with three fingers.
- *Delete the previous character:* Swipe left with two fingers.

4. To exit handwriting mode, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a “z”), or set the rotor to a different setting.

#### Enter your passcode silently with handwriting mode

1. On the passcode screen, set the rotor to Handwriting.
2. Write the characters of your passcode with your finger.

#### Select an item on the Home Screen

1. On the Home Screen, set the rotor to Handwriting.
2. Start writing the name of the item with your finger.

If there are multiple matches, continue to spell the name until it's unique, or swipe up or down with two fingers to choose from the current matches.

## Quickly navigate a long list

1. Select the index to the right of the list (for example, next to your Contacts list or in the VoiceOver Item Chooser).
2. Set the rotor to Handwriting, then use your finger to write the letter you want to navigate to.

## Related

[Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone](#)

[Use VoiceOver gestures on iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Keep the screen off](#)

## Keep the screen off when you use VoiceOver on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** If you don't need to see what's on the iPhone screen, you can turn on the VoiceOver screen curtain to improve battery life and maintain privacy.

If you use VoiceOver on iPhone, and don't need to see what's on the screen, you can turn on the screen curtain to improve battery life and maintain privacy. When the screen curtain is on, your iPhone is active even though the display is off.

With VoiceOver on, triple-tap with three fingers to turn the screen curtain on or off. If both VoiceOver and the Zoom feature are turned on, quadruple-tap with three fingers.

## Related

[Zoom in on the iPhone screen](#)

[Operate iPhone when VoiceOver is on](#)

[Use VoiceOver gestures on iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use VoiceOver with an external keyboard](#)

## Use VoiceOver on iPhone with an Apple external keyboard

### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, use VoiceOver with shortcuts on an Apple external keyboard. Choose the VoiceOver modifier and learn the keyboard shortcuts.




If you use [Magic Keyboard](#) with iPhone, you can use keyboard shortcuts to activate VoiceOver commands.

Additionally, you can use VoiceOver Help to learn the keyboard layout and the actions associated with various key combinations. VoiceOver Help speaks keys and keyboard commands as you type them, without performing the associated action.

### Choose the VoiceOver modifier

The modifier is a key or set of keys you press with one or more other keys to enter VoiceOver commands. You can set the modifier to be the Caps Lock key or the Control and Option keys pressed at the same time.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT NVA] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Typing > Modifier Keys.
2. Choose the modifier for VoiceOver commands: the Caps Lock key or the Control and Option keys.

This modifier is abbreviated as “VO” below.

### VoiceOver keyboard commands

You can control VoiceOver using key combinations.

(VO = modifier keys)

(table aria-label=VoiceOver keyboard commands)

Action	Shortcut
Turn on VoiceOver Help	VO-K
Turn off VoiceOver Help	Esc (Escape)
Select the next or previous item	VO-Right Arrow or VO-Left Arrow
Activate the selected item	VO-Space bar
Touch and hold the selected item	VO-Shift-M
Read from the current position	VO-A
Read from the top	VO-B
Pause or resume reading	Control
Copy the last spoken text to the clipboard	VO-Shift-C
Search for text	VO-F
Mute or unmute VoiceOver	VO-S
Go to the Home Screen	VO-H

Move to the status bar	VO-M
Open the notifications screen	Move to the status bar (VO-M), then Option-Up Arrow
Open Control Center	Move to the status bar (VO-M), then Option-Down Arrow
Open Search	Option-Up Arrow
Open the App Switcher	VO-H-H
Open the Item Chooser	VO-I
Change the label of the selected item	VO-/
Start, stop, or pause an action	VO-Hyphen
Swipe up or down	VO-Up Arrow or VO-Down Arrow
Turn the rotor left or right	VO-Command-Left Arrow or VO-Command-Right Arrow
Adjust the setting specified by the rotor	VO-Command-Up Arrow or VO-Command-Down Arrow
Turn the screen curtain on or off	VO-Fn-Hyphen (or VO-Globe key-Hyphen, depending on your keyboard)
Return to the previous screen	Esc

### Quick Nav using the arrow keys

Turn on Quick Nav to control VoiceOver using the arrow keys.

(table aria-label=Quick Nav using the arrow keys)

Action	Shortcut
Turn Quick Nav on or off	Left Arrow-Right Arrow
Select the next or previous item	Right Arrow or Left Arrow
Select the next or previous item specified by the rotor	Up Arrow or Down Arrow
Select the first or last item	Control-Up Arrow or Control-Down Arrow
Tap an item	Up Arrow-Down Arrow
Scroll up, down, left, or right	Option-Up Arrow, Option-Down Arrow, Option-Left Arrow, or Option-Right Arrow

---

### Single-key Quick Nav for web browsing

To navigate a webpage quickly, turn on Quick Nav (VO-Q), then press keys on the keyboard to navigate to specific item types, such as headings or links. To move to the previous item, hold the Shift key as you press a key for the item type.

(table aria-label=Single-key Quick Nav for web browsing)

Item type	Shortcut
Heading	H
Link	L
Text field	R
Button	B
Form control	C
Image	I
Table	T
Static text	S
ARIA landmark	W
List	X
Item of the same type	M
Level 1 heading	1
Level 2 heading	2
Level 3 heading	3
Level 4 heading	4
Level 5 heading	5
Level 6 heading	6

### Text editing

Use these commands (with Quick Nav turned off) to work with text. VoiceOver reads the text as you move the insertion point.

(table aria-label=Keyboard shortcuts for text editing)

Action	Shortcut
Go forward or back one character	Right Arrow or Left Arrow
Go forward or back one word	Option-Right Arrow or Option-Left Arrow
Go up or down one line	Up Arrow or Down Arrow
Go to the beginning or end of the line	Command-Left Arrow or Command-Down Arrow
Go to the beginning or end of the paragraph	Option-Up Arrow or Option-Down Arrow
Go to the previous or next paragraph	Option-Up Arrow or Option-Down Arrow
Go to the top or bottom of the text field	Command-Up Arrow or Command-Down Arrow
Select text as you move	Shift + any of the insertion point movement commands above
Select all text	Command-A
Copy, cut, or paste the selected text	Command-C, Command-X, or Command-V
Undo or redo last change	Command-Z or Shift-Command-Z

## Related

[Use VoiceOver gestures on iPhone](#)

[Use VoiceOver on iPhone with a pointer device](#)

[Use Voice Control commands to interact with iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use a braille display](#)

## Use a braille display with VoiceOver on iPhone


### Metadata

**Summary:** Connect a Bluetooth braille display and use it to control and navigate iPhone and read what's on the screen.

With VoiceOver, you can connect a Bluetooth® wireless refreshable braille display and use it to control and navigate iPhone and read what's on the screen. The braille you type on the display is automatically translated into text, and the display shows what you're typing in context. You can read and type using contracted or uncontracted braille, with support for many international braille tables.

For a list of supported braille displays, see the Apple Support article [Braille displays supported by iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

### Connect a braille display and learn commands to control iPhone

1. Turn on the braille display.
2. On iPhone, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, then choose the display.
3. On iPhone, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille, then choose the display.
4. To see the braille commands for controlling iPhone, tap More Info, then tap Braille Commands.

See the Apple Support article [Common braille commands for VoiceOver on your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

### Change the braille display settings


1. On iPhone, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille.
2. Set any of the following:

(table aria-label=Braille display settings)

Setting	Description
Match Input and Output Tables	Set the braille display to use the same table for both the input and the output.
Output	Choose the braille table you want to use to read braille output. You can choose from tables for additional languages as well as six dot or eight dot and contracted or uncontracted braille.
Input	Choose the braille table you want to use to type braille input. You can choose from tables for additional languages as well as six dot or eight dot and contracted or uncontracted braille.
Braille Screen Input	Choose the input method for entering braille using the screen. See <a href="#">Type braille directly on the iPhone screen with VoiceOver</a> .
Braille Tables	Add tables to the braille table rotors.

Automatic Translation	Turn this option on to automatically translate the braille you type into text soon after you stop typing.
Status Cells	Turn on the general and text status cells and choose their location.
Equations use Nemeth Code	Turn on Nemeth Code for mathematical equations.
Show On-screen Keyboard	Display the keyboard on the screen.
Turn Pages when Panning	Automatically turn pages when panning.
Word Wrap	Wrap words to the next line.
Braille Alert Messages	When turned on, your braille display shows an alert message for the specified duration.
Ignore Chord Duration	Adjust the amount of time required before subsequent key presses are recognized as braille chords.
Auto Advance Duration	Adjust this setting to your preferred reading speed.
Sound Curtain	When a braille display is connected to iPhone, mute most sounds. Emergency alerts will still play sounds.
Enable Bluetooth on Start	Automatically turn on Bluetooth when you turn on VoiceOver so that braille displays can connect to iPhone.

### Output closed captions in braille during media playback

1. On iPhone, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Verbosity.
2. Choose Braille or Speech and Braille.

### Use a 2D braille display

If you use a supported 2D braille display, you can use the rotor to switch between different output modes, such as the mode for displaying images or the mode for reading text on multiple lines.

1. [Connect your braille display](#) to iPhone.
2. With VoiceOver turned on, use the Braille Text Mode rotor to switch between output modes. See [Control VoiceOver using the rotor](#).

### Related

[Type braille directly on the iPhone screen with VoiceOver](#)

[Write with your finger in VoiceOver on iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Type braille on the screen](#)

## Type braille directly on the iPhone screen with VoiceOver

### Metadata

**Summary:** Input braille directly on the iPhone screen, without a physical braille keyboard.

When you turn on Braille Screen Input in VoiceOver, you can use your fingers to type braille directly on the iPhone screen, without a physical braille keyboard. You can also use Braille Screen Input to enter braille commands for navigating and controlling your iPhone.

### Enter braille on the screen

1. With VoiceOver turned on, place one finger from each hand at the top and bottom edges of the screen and double-tap to start Braille Screen Input.
2. Place iPhone in one of the following positions:
  - *Tabletop mode:* Lay iPhone flat in front of you.
  - *Screen away mode:* Hold iPhone with the screen facing away from you. Your fingers wrap around the sides of iPhone to tap the screen.
3. Enter braille characters by tapping the screen with one or more fingers at the same time.

**Tip:** To hear where each dot is located, touch and hold, then drag your finger around the screen. To move the entry dots to match your natural finger positions, tap and lift your right three fingers all at once to position dots 4, 5, and 6, followed immediately by your left three fingers for dots 1, 2, and 3.

You can also use gestures to perform actions such as the following:

(table aria-label=Gestures for Braille screen input)

Action	Gesture
Enter a space	Swipe right with one finger; in screen away mode, swipe to <i>your</i> right
Delete the previous character	Swipe left with one finger
Move to a new line	Swipe right with two fingers
Cycle through spelling suggestions	Swipe up or down with one finger

Enter a carriage return, or send a message (in Messages)	Swipe up with three fingers
Cycle through modes (like Braille Entry Mode and Command Mode)	Swipe left or right with three fingers
Translate immediately (if you're typing contracted braille)	Swipe down with two fingers
Switch to the next braille table	Swipe up with two fingers

- To exit Braille Screen Input, slide two fingers in opposite directions, or do a two-finger scrub (draw the letter “z” by quickly moving two fingers back and forth three times).

**Tip:** You can view and edit the commands and gestures you can perform when Braille Screen Input is turned on. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Commands > Braille Screen Input.


### Type on the screen to enter braille commands

With Braille Screen Input Command Mode, you can control iPhone by typing braille commands on the screen. You can use the same commands you use with a refreshable braille display.

- With VoiceOver turned on, place one finger from each hand at the top and bottom edges of the screen and double-tap to start Braille Screen Input.
- Switch to Command Mode by swiping left or right with three fingers.
- Type braille commands directly on the screen.

See the Apple Support article [Common braille commands for VoiceOver on your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

### Change Braille Screen Input settings

- Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille > Braille Screen Input.
- Set any of the following:
  - Use Activation Gestures:* To start Braille Screen Input, place one finger from each hand at the top and bottom edges of the screen and double-tap. To exit Braille Screen Input, slide two fingers in opposite directions. If you turn this option off, you enter and exit Braille Screen Input using the rotor.
  - Start Automatically when Editing:* Have Braille Screen Input start automatically when you enter a text input area.
  - Keep Active until Dismissed:* After you launch an app or choose an item in Braille Entry Mode, automatically switch to Command Mode and keep it active.



- *Reverse Dot Positions*: For six-dot braille, swap the positions of dots 1 and 3, and dots 4 and 6.
- *Visual Text Feedback*: As you type in braille, display a text translation of what you're typing.
- *Typing Feedback*: Get sound or haptic feedback as you enter text with Braille Screen Input.
- *Mode announcements*: When you switch Braille Screen Input modes, have VoiceOver speak, play sounds, or both.
- *Braille table*: Set the method for braille screen input.

### Related

[Use a braille display with VoiceOver on iPhone](#)

[Customize VoiceOver gestures and keyboard shortcuts on iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)


NAV TITLE: [Customize gestures and keyboard shortcuts](#)

## Customize VoiceOver gestures and keyboard shortcuts on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, customize the gestures and keyboard shortcuts that activate VoiceOver commands.

You can customize the gestures and keyboard shortcuts that activate VoiceOver commands.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Commands.
2. Tap any of the following:
  - *All Commands*: Navigate to the command you want to customize, then tap Edit, Add Gesture, or Add Keyboard Shortcut.
  - *Touch Gestures*: List the gestures and the associated commands.
  - *Handwriting*: List the gestures for handwriting and the associated commands.
  - *Braille Screen Input*: List the gestures for Braille Screen Input and the associated commands.

To clear your custom gestures and keyboard shortcuts, tap Reset VoiceOver Commands.

### Related

[Use VoiceOver on iPhone with an Apple external keyboard](#)  
[Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone](#)  
[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)


NAV TITLE: [Use VoiceOver with a pointer device](#)

## Use VoiceOver on iPhone with a pointer device

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, adjust how a pointer device works with VoiceOver.

If you use a pointer device with iPhone, you can adjust how it works with VoiceOver.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
2. Below Pointer Control, tap any of the following:
  - *Pointer*: Set the pointer to ignore, follow, or move the VoiceOver cursor.
  - *Speak Under Pointer*: You can adjust the delay to speak the item under the pointer.

### Related

[Make the pointer easier to see when using a mouse or trackpad with iPhone](#)  
[Change display colors on iPhone to make it easier to see what's onscreen](#)  
[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Get live descriptions of your surroundings](#)

## Get live descriptions of your surroundings with VoiceOver on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, use VoiceOver to get descriptions of your surroundings as well as images on the screen.

If you're blind or have low vision, you can use VoiceOver Recognition on iPhone to scan your surroundings and get live descriptions of the scenes detected in the camera view. You can also get descriptions of onscreen images and user interface elements, even in apps and on webpages that don't provide accessibility information.

**Important:** VoiceOver Recognition should not be relied upon in circumstances where you could be harmed or injured, in high-risk situations, for navigation, or for the diagnosis or treatment of any medical condition.

### Get live descriptions of your surroundings

1. With VoiceOver on, triple-tap the screen with four fingers to start Live Recognition.
2. Choose the kinds of visual information you want VoiceOver to describe, like scenes, people, doors, furniture, or text. At the bottom of the screen, select a category, then double-tap to turn it on or off. If you turn on Point & Speak, you can point your finger at text and have VoiceOver read it aloud.

**Note:** Detection of people, doors, and furniture is available only on [supported iPhone models](#).



3. Position iPhone so the rear camera can detect what's around you. VoiceOver describes what it detects.

To interrupt VoiceOver speech and move to the next detected item, tap the screen with two fingers.

4. To turn off Live Recognition, triple-tap the screen with four fingers. Or, if the VoiceOver cursor is focused on an interface element for Live Recognition, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a “z”).




**Tip:** You can also set up a shortcut to quickly start and stop Live Recognition. See [Set up shortcuts for Live Recognition](#).

You can also use Detection Mode in the Magnifier app to detect and describe scenes, people, and more. See [Get live descriptions of visual information around you with Magnifier](#).

To change Live Recognition settings, go to the Magnifier app  [ALT N/A] , tap  [Alt text: the Settings button] , then tap Detect. Tap [Scenes](#), [People](#), [Doors](#), [Furniture](#), [Text](#), or [Point & Speak](#).

### Get descriptions of images in apps and on the web

With VoiceOver Recognition, you can get descriptions of the people, objects, and text in images in apps and on webpages, even if they don't provide accessibility information. You can move your finger over a photo to discover a person's position relative to other objects, or navigate nutrition labels and receipts in the order items are listed.


1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > VoiceOver Recognition, then turn on Image Descriptions.
2. To get descriptions of text found in images, turn on Text Recognition.
3. Go to an app such as Photos  [ALT N/A] or Safari  [ALT N/A] , then select an image.
4. Swipe up to hear more options, then double-tap when you hear Explore Image
5. Move your finger around the image to find out the position of each object.

You can [add custom descriptions](#) to your images with Markup.

**Note:** Image Descriptions are not available in all languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS 18 Feature Availability](#) webpage.

### Get descriptions of user interface elements

With VoiceOver Recognition, you can get descriptions of user interface elements in apps and on webpages, even if they don't provide accessibility information.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > VoiceOver Recognition.
2. Turn on Screen Recognition.

### Related

[Find and name people and pets in Photos on iPhone](#)  
[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use VoiceOver in apps](#)




## Use VoiceOver in apps on iPhone


### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, use VoiceOver in built-in iOS apps, such as Safari, Maps, Books, Files, Voice Memos, and more, even if you can't see the screen.

You can use VoiceOver in all the built-in apps that come with your iPhone—such as Safari, Maps, and more. With VoiceOver Recognition, you can get descriptions of images and screen elements on webpages and in apps, even if they don't provide accessibility information.



### Browse the web in Safari

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Safari app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Search the web:* Select the address field, double-tap to show the keyboard, then enter a search term, phrase, or URL. Double-tap Go, or select a search suggestion, then double-tap.
  - *Skip to the next element on a webpage:* Set the rotor to the element type—such as headings, links, and form controls—then swipe up or down.
  - *Set the rotor settings for web browsing:* Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor. Select or deselect items, or drag  [Alt text: the Reorder button] up or down to reposition an item.

- *Skip images while navigating:* Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Navigate Images. You can choose to skip all images or only those without descriptions.
- *Reduce page clutter for easier reading and navigation:* In the Safari address field, select the Format Options button, double-tap, select Show Reader View (not available for all webpages), then double-tap.

**Tip:** If you use [Magic Keyboard](#) with iPhone, you can use [single-key Quick Nav for web browsing](#).

## Navigate in Maps


1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Maps app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Control how the map tracks your current location:* Select  [Alt text] the Tracking button , then double-tap until you hear the tracking option you want.
    - *Tracking on:* The map automatically centers on your current location.
    - *Tracking on with heading:* The map automatically centers on your current location and rotates so that the heading you're facing is at the top of the screen. In this mode, iPhone speaks street names and points of interest as you approach them.
    - *Tracking off:* The map doesn't automatically center on your current location.
  - *Explore the map:* Drag your finger around the screen, or swipe left or right to move to another item.
  - *Zoom in or out:* Select the map, set the rotor to Zoom, then swipe up or down with one finger.
  - *Pan the map:* Select the map, then swipe with three fingers.
  - *Browse locations and pins on the map:* Select the map, set the rotor to Points of Interest, then swipe up or down with one finger.
  - *Follow a road:* Hold your finger down on the road, wait until you hear "pause to follow," then move your finger along the road.
  - *Get information about a location:* Select the location (for example, a business, landmark, or pin), then double-tap to open the information card. Swipe left or right to hear information such as directions, street address, phone number, business hours, and customer reviews.
  - *Get guidance to the starting point:* When you start walking directions in Maps, iPhone guides you in the direction of the starting point using sound and haptic feedback.

## Read PDFs


In the Books and Files apps, you can use VoiceOver to read PDFs. VoiceOver even describes detailed information—such as forms, tables, and lists.

### **Make and receive phone calls**

You can use VoiceOver to make and receive calls.




1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Phone app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Answer or end a call:* Double-tap the screen with two fingers.  
  
When a phone call is established with VoiceOver on, the screen displays the numeric keypad by default, instead of showing call options.
  - *Display call options:* Select the Hide button in the lower-right corner, then double-tap.
  - *Display the numeric keypad again:* Select the Keypad button near the center of the screen, then double-tap.

### **Take photos and videos**

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Camera app  [ALT N/A ] on your iPhone. VoiceOver describes objects in the viewfinder.
2. Select Camera Mode, then swipe up or down with one finger to switch between modes, like Photo or Video.
3. To take a photo or start or stop recording a video, double-tap the screen with two fingers.


### **Trim voice memo recordings**

You can use VoiceOver to edit recordings in the Voice Memos app.

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Voice Memos  [ALT N/A ] app on your iPhone.
2. Select the recording you want to trim, then double-tap.
3. Select  [Alt text: the More Actions button] , then double-tap.
4. Select Edit Recording, then double-tap.
5. Select  [Alt text: the Trim button] , then double-tap.
6. In the Waveform Overview, select Trim Beginning or Trim End, double-tap and hold, then swipe up or down to adjust the start or end time.
7. Select Trim, then double-tap.
8. Select Save, then double-tap.
9. Select Done, then double-tap.

### **Hear visual Weather data as sound**

Some maps in the Weather app are encoded to allow you to hear the data as a changing tone or pitch. For example, as intensity of weather condition changes in a visual animation on screen, you can have these described using variations in sound.

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Weather app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a location page with a precipitation, wind, or air quality map.
3. Double-tap and hold the map until you hear a tone or the words “Weather Map Snapshot.” If you hear spoken instructions, follow them.

As you run your finger or pointer over a sonified map, the pitch shifts to represent the changing values.

### Read math equations

VoiceOver can read math equations on the web (encoded using MathML) and in supported Apple apps such as Numbers and Keynote.

- *Hear an equation:* Have VoiceOver read the text as usual. VoiceOver says “math” before it starts reading an equation.
- *Explore the equation:* Double-tap the selected equation to display it in full screen and move through it one element at a time. Swipe left or right to read elements of the equation. Use the rotor to select Symbols, Small Expressions, Medium Expressions, or Large Expressions, then swipe up or down to hear the next element of that size. To drill down into the selected element, double-tap it, then swipe left or right to read one part of the element at a time.

Equations spoken by VoiceOver can also be output to a braille device using Nemeth Code, as well as the codes used by Unified English Braille, British English, French, and Greek. See [Use a braille display with VoiceOver](#).

### Related

[Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone](#)

[Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps on iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)

## Mobility

NAV TITLE: [Overview of accessibility features for mobility](#)


### Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Discover accessibility features for mobility that allow you to control iPhone with

your voice, assistive devices, and more.

With built-in accessibility features for mobility, you can navigate and interact with iPhone using just your eyes, spoken commands, assistive devices, an external keyboard, and more. You can also set options so it's easier to use gestures and press iPhone buttons.

To explore accessibility features for mobility, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility, then scroll down to the Physical and Motor section.

(table aria-label=Mobility-related accessibility features)

Action	Related features and settings
Navigate your iPhone hands-free	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">Eye Tracking</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Voice Control</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Siri</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Shortcuts</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Call audio routing</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Use simple sounds to perform gestures</a></li></ul>
Let iPhone type for you	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">Dictation</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Predictive text</a></li></ul>
Connect other inputs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">Switch Control</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Keyboards</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Bluetooth accessories</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Head tracking</a></li></ul>
Control other devices	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">Apple Watch Mirroring</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Apple TV remote</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Control nearby devices</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Platform Switching</a></li></ul>
Customize gestures	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">AssistiveTouch</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Back tap</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Reachability</a></li><li>• <a href="#">AirPods</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Pointer scrolling speed</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Side or Home button</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Face ID and attention</a></li></ul>



---

Adjust the sensitivity of your input

- [Slow Keys and Sticky Keys](#)
- [Siri Pause Time](#)
- [Touch accommodations](#)

---

Turn off vibration

- [Vibration](#)

---

**Tip:** Control your go-to accessibility features and settings with the click of a button or from Control Center. See [Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut](#).

### Related

[Get started with accessibility features on iPhone](#)

[Apple Accessibility Support website](#)

[Apple Accessibility webpage for Mobility](#)

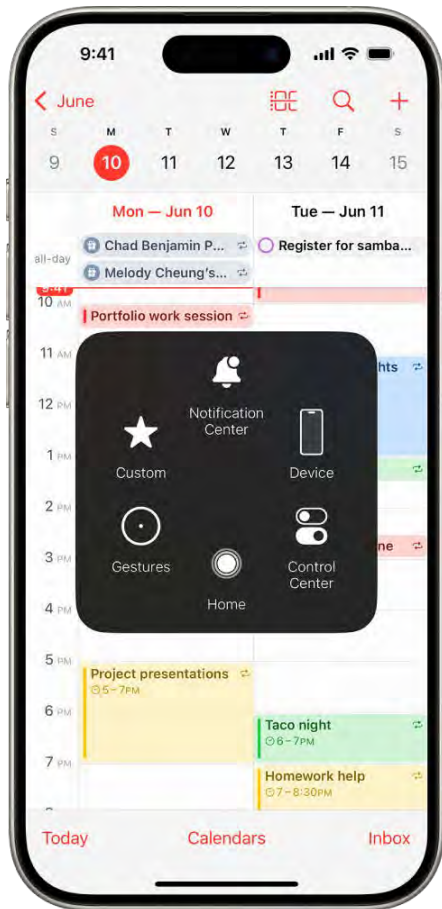
NAV TITLE: [Use AssistiveTouch](#)

## Use AssistiveTouch on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** With AssistiveTouch on iPhone, you can adapt the touchscreen to fit your needs— if certain gestures don't work for you, replace them with a tap or other gesture, or use a simple sound.

With AssistiveTouch on iPhone, you can adapt the touchscreen to fit your needs. If certain gestures don't work for you, replace them with a tap or other gesture, or use a simple sound. You can also use AssistiveTouch when you need to press iPhone buttons. You can use AssistiveTouch without any accessory or with a compatible adaptive accessory (such as a joystick).



[Alt text: An iPhone with the AssistiveTouch menu visible, showing controls for Notification Center, Device, Control Center, Home, Gestures, and Custom.]

You can use AssistiveTouch to perform actions such as the following:





- Go to the Home Screen
- Double-tap
- Perform multifinger gestures
- Perform scroll gestures
- Activate Siri
- Access Control Center, notifications, the Lock Screen, or the App Switcher
- Adjust the volume on iPhone
- Shake iPhone
- Take a screenshot
- Use 3D Touch (on [supported iPhone models](#))

- Use Apple Pay
- Use Emergency SOS
- Speak screen
- Adjust dwell settings
- Restart iPhone

### Set up AssistiveTouch


**Siri:** Say something like: “Turn on AssistiveTouch” or “Turn off AssistiveTouch.” [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

Or do the following:

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch.
2. Turn on AssistiveTouch. The AssistiveTouch menu button  [ALT N/A] appears on the screen.
3. To customize AssistiveTouch, tap any of the following:
  - *Customize Top Level Menu:* Tap an icon to change its action. Tap  [Alt text: the Decrement button] or  [Alt text: the Increment button] to change the number of icons in the menu. The menu can have up to eight icons.
  - *Single-Tap, Double-Tap, Long Press, or 3D Touch:* Assign custom actions that run when you interact with the menu button. 3D Touch is available only on [supported iPhone models](#).
  - *Create New Gesture:* Add your favorite gestures.
  - *Idle Opacity:* Adjust the visibility of the menu button when not in use.
  - *Confirm with AssistiveTouch:* On an [iPhone with Face ID](#), confirm payments with Face ID by using AssistiveTouch instead of double-clicking the side button.

**Tip:** To quickly turn AssistiveTouch on or off, you can [set up the Accessibility Shortcut](#), then triple-click the side or Home button.

### Use AssistiveTouch

When AssistiveTouch is on, tap the AssistiveTouch menu button  [ALT N/A], then choose an action or gesture.

To return to the previous menu, tap the arrow in the center of the menu. To exit the menu without performing a gesture, tap anywhere outside the menu.


To move the AssistiveTouch menu button, drag it to a new location on the screen.

For a multifinger gesture, do the following:

- *Pinch and Rotate*: Tap Custom, then tap Pinch and Rotate. When the two pinch circles appear, touch anywhere on the screen to move the pinch circles, then drag them in or out to perform a pinch or rotate gesture. When you finish, tap the menu button.
- *Multifinger swipe or drag*: Tap Device > More > Gestures, then tap the number of digits needed for the gesture. When the circles appear on the screen, swipe or drag in the direction required by the gesture. When you finish, tap the menu button.

### Control iPhone with a pointer device


You can connect Bluetooth® and USB assistive pointer devices, such as trackpads, game controllers, and mouse devices.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch.
2. Turn on AssistiveTouch.
3. Below Pointer Devices, tap any of the following:
  - *Devices*: Pair or unpair devices and customize buttons.
  - *Mouse Keys*: Allow the AssistiveTouch pointer to be controlled using the keyboard.
  - *Pointer Style*: Adjust the size, color, and auto-hide settings.
  - *Show Onscreen Keyboard*: Display the onscreen keyboard.
  - *Sound on Click*: Play a sound when the pointer device is clicked.
  - *Always Show Menu*: Show the AssistiveTouch menu when a pointer device is connected.
  - *Tracking Sensitivity*: Adjust how quickly the pointer moves when you drag the mouse or your finger on the trackpad.

You can also [change the appearance of the pointer](#).

### Set up Dwell Control


iPhone performs a selected action when you hold the cursor still on a screen element or an area of the screen.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch, then turn on Dwell Control.
2. Adjust any of the following:
  - *Fallback Action*: Turn on to revert the dwell action to the selected fallback action after performing an operation.
  - *Movement Tolerance*: Adjust the distance the cursor can move while dwelling on an item.
  - *Hot Corners*: Perform a selected action—such as take a screenshot, open Control Center, activate Siri, scroll, or use a shortcut—when the cursor dwells in a corner of the screen.

- *Time needed to initiate a dwell action:* Tap  [Alt text: the Decrement button] or  [Alt text: the Increment button] .


### Use simple sounds to perform gestures

With AssistiveTouch, you can have iPhone perform a gesture or other action when you make a simple sound, such as a mouth pop or an S-sound.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch, then turn AssistiveTouch on.
2. Tap Sound Actions, then tap a sound.
3. Select the gesture or other action you want performed when you make the sound.
4. To perform the gesture or action, just make the sound.


### Create custom gestures

You can add gestures you use often (such as touch and hold or two-finger rotation) to the AssistiveTouch menu. You can even create several gestures with, for example, different degrees of rotation.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch > Create New Gesture.
2. Perform your gesture on the recording screen. For example:
  - *Touch-and-hold gesture:* Touch and hold your finger in one spot until the recording progress bar reaches halfway, then lift your finger. Be careful not to move your finger while recording, or the gesture will be recorded as a drag.
  - *Two-finger rotation gesture:* Rotate two fingers on the iPhone screen around a point between them. (You can do this with a single finger or stylus—just create each arc separately, one after the other.)

If you record a sequence of taps or drag gestures, they're all played back at the same time. For example, using one finger or a stylus to record four separate, sequential taps at four locations on the screen creates a simultaneous four-finger tap.

3. If your gesture doesn't turn out quite right, tap Cancel, then try again.
4. When you're satisfied with your gesture, tap Save, then name the gesture.

To use your custom gesture, tap the AssistiveTouch menu button  [ALT N/A] , tap Custom, then choose the gesture. When the blue circles representing your gesture appear, drag them to where you want to use the gesture, then release.

### Related

[Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone](#)  
[Adjust how iPhone responds to your touch](#)






## Adjust how iPhone responds to your touch

### Metadata



**Summary:** If you have difficulty performing tap, swipe, and touch-and-hold gestures, change how the iPhone touchscreen responds.

If you have difficulties with hand tremors, dexterity, or fine motor control, you can adjust how the iPhone touchscreen responds to tap, swipe, and touch-and-hold gestures. You can have iPhone recognize faster or slower touches and ignore multiple touches. You can also prevent iPhone from waking when you touch the screen, or turn off Shake to Undo if you unintentionally shake iPhone.

### Adjust settings for taps, swipes, and multiple touches


1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Touch > Touch Accommodations, then turn on Touch Accommodations.
2. You can configure iPhone to do any of the following:
  - *Respond to longer or shorter touches:* Turn on Hold Duration, then tap  [Alt text: the Decrement button] or  [Alt text: the Increment button] to adjust the duration.
  - *Prevent unintended swipe gestures:* If you turn on Hold Duration (above), you can increase the amount of movement required before a swipe gesture begins. Tap Swipe Gestures, turn on Swipe Gestures, then adjust required movement.
  - *Treat multiple touches as a single touch:* Turn on Ignore Repeat, then tap  [Alt text: the Decrement button] or  [Alt text: the Increment button] to adjust the amount of time allowed between multiple touches.
  - *Respond to the first or last place you touch:* Choose Use Initial Touch Location or Use Final Touch Location.

If you choose Use Initial Touch Location, iPhone uses the location of your first tap—when you tap an app on the Home Screen, for example.


If you choose Use Final Touch Location, iPhone registers the tap where you lift your finger. iPhone responds to a tap when you lift your finger within a certain period of time. Tap  [Alt text: the Decrement button] or  [Alt text: the Increment button] to adjust the timing. Your iPhone can respond to other gestures, such as a drag gesture, if you wait longer than the gesture delay.

### Adjust settings for touch-and-hold gestures


You use the touch-and-hold gesture to see additional options or actions you can perform, or show a preview of content. If you have trouble performing this gesture, do the following:

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Touch, then tap Haptic Touch or 3D & Haptic Touch.
2. Choose the touch duration—Fast or Slow.
3. On an [iPhone with 3D Touch](#), you can also choose the pressure needed—Light, Medium, or Firm.
4. Test your new settings on the image at the bottom of the screen.

### Turn off Tap to Wake

On a [supported iPhone model](#), you can prevent touches on the screen from waking iPhone. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Touch, then turn off Tap to Wake.

### Turn off Shake to Undo

If you tend to unintentionally shake iPhone, you can turn off Shake to Undo. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Touch.

**Tip:** To undo text edits, swipe left with three fingers.

### Related

[Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone](#)

[Use AssistiveTouch on iPhone](#)


NAV TITLE: [Back tap](#)

## Tap the back of iPhone to perform actions or shortcuts

Metadata

Summary: Double-tap or triple-tap the back of iPhone to perform actions or shortcuts.

You can double-tap or triple-tap the back of iPhone to perform actions such as taking a screenshot, turning on an accessibility feature, running a shortcut, and more.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Touch > Back Tap.
2. Choose Double Tap or Triple Tap, then choose an action.
3. To perform the action you set, double-tap or triple-tap the back of iPhone.

To turn off Back tap, go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > Back Tap, choose Double Tap or Triple Tap, then tap None.

### Related

[Use Shortcuts to automate tasks on iPhone](#)

[Quickly turn accessibility features on or off on iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone](#)

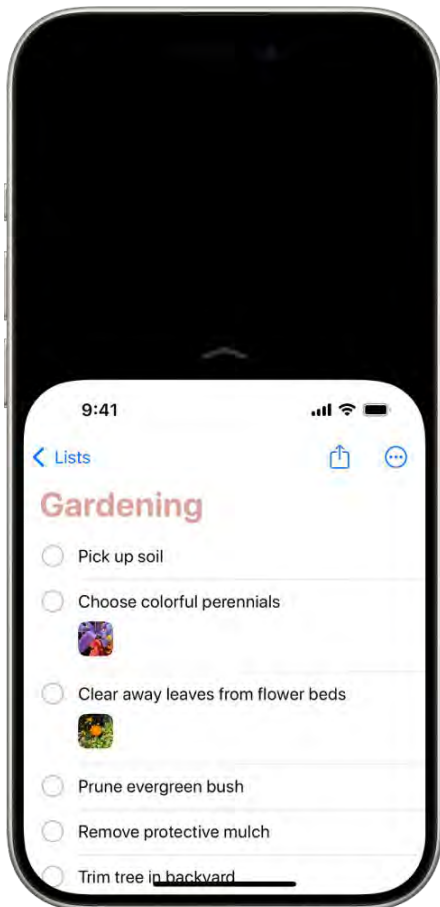
NAV TITLE: [Use Reachability](#)

## Reach the top of the iPhone screen with one hand

Metadata


**Summary:** Use Reachability to lower the top half of the iPhone screen and make it more easily accessible with one hand.

When you use iPhone with one hand in portrait orientation, you can use Reachability to lower the top half of the screen so it's within easy reach of your thumb.



[Alt text: The iPhone screen with Reachability activated. The top of the screen has moved down so it's within easy reach of your thumb.]



1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Touch, then turn on Reachability.
2. To lower the top half of the screen, do one the following:
  - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Swipe down on the bottom edge of the screen.
  - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Lightly double-tap the Home button.
3. To return to the full screen, tap the upper half of the screen.

#### Related

[Use AssistiveTouch](#)

[Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone](#)




NAV TITLE: [Auto-answer calls](#)

## Route and automatically answer calls on iPhone

#### Metadata

**Summary:** Route the audio of phone or FaceTime calls to the iPhone speaker, a Bluetooth headset, or your hearing device. iPhone can also automatically answer calls.

You can automatically direct the audio of phone or FaceTime calls to the iPhone speaker, a Bluetooth® headset, or your hearing device. iPhone can also automatically answer calls after a length of time you set.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Touch > Call Audio Routing, then choose an audio destination.
2. Tap Auto-Answer Calls, turn on Auto-Answer Calls, then set the duration of time before the call is answered by tapping  [Alt text: the Decrement button] or  [Alt text: the Increment button] .

During a call, you can switch the audio routing from your hearing aid to the iPhone speaker by removing the hearing aid from your ear.

#### Related

[Use hearing devices with iPhone](#)

[Announce calls and notifications for specific apps](#)

[End calls with Siri](#)

[Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone](#)


NAV TITLE: [Turn off vibration](#)

## Turn off vibration on iPhone

#### Metadata

**Summary:** If you don't want iPhone to vibrate, turn vibration off.

If you don't want your iPhone to vibrate, you can turn vibration off for specific uses or all alerts.

- *Set vibration options for specific alerts:* Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Sounds & Haptics. See [Change iPhone sounds and vibrations](#).
- *Turn off all vibrations:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch, then turn off Vibration.

**Note:** This setting turns off vibrations for earthquake, tsunami, and other emergency alerts.

#### Related

[Stop or reduce onscreen motion on iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Change Face ID and attention settings](#)

## Change Face ID and attention settings on iPhone


#### Metadata

**Summary:** On an iPhone with Face ID, adjust Face ID and attention settings if you have physical or vision limitations.

On an [iPhone with Face ID](#), you can adjust Face ID and attention settings if you have physical or vision limitations.

#### Set up Face ID with Accessibility Options

Setting up Face ID usually requires you to gently move your head in a circle to show all the angles of your face. If you can't perform the full range of head motion, you can still set up Face ID without moving your head.


1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Face ID & Passcode.
2. Position your face within the frame, then tap Accessibility Options.

Face ID is still secure but requires more consistency when you unlock iPhone.

#### Change attention settings

For additional security, Face ID is *attention-aware*. It unlocks iPhone only when your eyes are open and looking at the screen. iPhone can also reveal notifications and messages, keep the screen lit when you're reading, or lower the volume of alerts.

If you don't want iPhone to check for your attention, do the following:

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Face ID & Passcode.
2. Turn on or off any of the following:
  - Require Attention for Face ID
  - Attention Aware Features

These settings are turned off by default if you turn on VoiceOver when you first set up iPhone.

**Note:** Requiring attention makes Face ID more secure.

### Related

[Set up Face ID on iPhone](#)

[Set up Touch ID on iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use Voice Control](#)

## Use Voice Control commands to interact with iPhone

### Metadata


**Summary:** Control iPhone with your voice. Speak commands to perform gestures, interact with screen elements, dictate and edit text, and more.


After you turn on Voice Control on your iPhone, you can speak commands to interact with what's on the screen, perform gestures and button presses, dictate and edit text, and more.

**Note:** When Voice Control is on, you use Voice Control to dictate text; standard iOS Dictation isn't available. If you just want to enter text using Dictation, without controlling your iPhone with your voice, see [Dictate text](#). Voice Control isn't available in all languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

### Set up Voice Control

Before you turn on Voice Control for the first time, make sure iPhone is connected to the internet over a Wi-Fi network. After iPhone completes a one-time file download from Apple, you don't need an internet connection to use Voice Control.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Voice Control.
2. Tap Set Up Voice Control, then tap Continue to start the file download.

When the download is complete,  [ALT text: the Voice Control icon] appears in the status bar to indicate that Voice Control is turned on.

3. Set options such as the following:

- *Language*: Set the language and download languages for offline use.
- *Customize Commands*: View the available commands and create new commands.
- *Vocabulary*: Teach Voice Control to recognize new words and phrases. You can enter a word or phrase and teach Voice Control how you pronounce it, or import a vocabulary list.

**Note:** Not all Voice Control languages support a custom vocabulary.

- *Show Confirmation*: When Voice Control recognizes a command, a visual confirmation appears at the top of the screen.
- *Play Sound*: When Voice Control recognizes a command, an audible sound is played.
- *Show Hints*: See command suggestions and hints.
- *Overlay*: Display numbers, names, or a grid over screen elements.
- *Attention Aware*: On an [iPhone with Face ID](#), Voice Control wakes up when you look at your iPhone and goes to sleep when you look away.

### Turn Voice Control on or off


After you set up Voice Control, you can turn it on or off quickly by doing any of the following:


- Use [Control Center](#) if you've added Voice Control there.
- Use [Accessibility Shortcut](#) if you've set it up to turn on Voice Control.

**Siri:** Say something like: "Turn on Voice Control" or "Turn off Voice Control." [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

### Start using commands


To use Voice Control on your iPhone, just say a command.

 [ALT N/A ] **Voice Control:** Say, for example, "Open Control Center," "Go home," "Tap *item name*," or "Turn up volume."

**Tip:** Use the interactive Voice Control Tutorial to get familiar with Voice Control and practice essential commands. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A ] > Accessibility > Voice Control, then tap Open Voice Control Tutorial.

### Pause or resume Voice Control


Pause Voice Control when you don't want words you say to be interpreted as commands or dictation. Resume Voice Control when you're ready for it to listen for commands and dictation again.

 [ALT N/A ] **Voice Control:** Say "Stop listening" or "Start listening."

## See what commands you can use

Display a list of the available commands, which vary depending on the app you're working in and what you're doing. For example, you see text formatting commands while writing a document.

 [ALT N/A] **Voice Control:** Say “Show commands.”

To browse the full list of supported commands and see examples of how to use them, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Voice Control > Commands.

## Label onscreen items

When you're not sure what to call something, you can display a name or number next to each item on the screen. You can then use the item's name or number to interact with it.

 [ALT N/A] **Voice Control:** Say “Show names” or “Show numbers.”

To interact with an item, say its name or number, or say a command—such as “Long press”—followed by the item's name or number. The item names or numbers disappear after you say the command.

## Show a numbered grid on the screen

You can make it easier to interact with a precise area of the screen by superimposing a grid.

 [ALT N/A] **Voice Control:** Say “Show grid.”

- *Interact with a location on the grid:* If a number is at the location you want to interact with, say any command—such as “Tap”—followed by the grid number. The grid disappears after you say the command.
- *Drill down on an area of the grid:* If you need to further refine the location, say a grid number to show a more detailed grid in that area.

Say “Hide names,” “Hide numbers,” or “Hide grid” to turn the overlay off.

## Enter text

When working in a text input area, you can dictate word by word (with Dictation mode) or character by character (with Spelling mode). To avoid mistakenly entering a Voice Control command as text, have Voice Control respond only to commands (with Command mode).

When you're in a text input area and [label onscreen items with numbers](#), numbers are shown next to each line of text. Select a line or another section of the text to display a number for each word in the selection; select a single word to show a number for each character in the word. To interact with a text item (such as a line or a word), say a command followed by the item's name or number. For example, you can say “Delete [item number]” or “Uppercase [item number].”

(table aria-label=Voice Control commands for entering text)

Command	Description
---------	-------------

 [ALT N/A] **Voice Control:** Say “Dictation mode.”

Dictate word by word.

Any words you say that aren’t Voice Control commands are entered as text. Dictation mode is on by default.


In some Voice Control languages, if several words phonetically match what you say, they appear onscreen. Tap to choose the one you want.

---

 [ALT N/A] **Voice Control:** Say “Spelling mode.”

Dictate character by character.

Spelling mode is helpful when you need to enter a password, a web address, or another sequence of characters that wouldn’t be recognized as a word in Dictation mode.

When Spelling mode is on,  [Alt text: the Spelling Mode icon] appears in the text input area.

To increase accuracy when entering letters, you can use the letter’s phonetic alphabet code word (for example, say “Alfa Bravo Charlie” to enter “abc”).


**Note:** Spelling mode isn’t available in all Voice Control languages.

---

 [ALT N/A] **Voice Control:** Say “Command mode.”

Voice Control responds only to commands.

Words and characters that aren’t commands are ignored and aren’t entered as text. Command mode is helpful when you need to say a series of commands and don’t want them inadvertently entered in a text input area.

When Command mode is on,  [Alt text: the Command Mode icon] appears in the text input area to indicate you can’t dictate to enter text.

---

## Related

[Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use Voice Control commands to interact with CarPlay](#)

## Use Voice Control commands to interact with CarPlay


### Metadata


**Summary:** With Voice Control, you can use your voice to navigate CarPlay and apps, and interact with what’s on the CarPlay touchscreen.

With Voice Control, you can use your voice to navigate CarPlay and apps, and interact with what's on the CarPlay touchscreen.

**Note:** Voice Control is available only in [supported languages](#). CarPlay is available only in [supported countries and regions](#).

### Turn Voice Control on or off

1. In CarPlay, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility.
2. Turn Voice Control on or off.

When you turn on Voice Control,  [Alt text: the Voice Control icon] appears in the sidebar to indicate that Voice Control is listening for commands.

### Start using commands


To use Voice Control in CarPlay, just say a command.

 [ALT N/A] **Voice Control:** Say, for example, “Open Maps,” “Pan left,” or “Go back.”

When you say multiple commands in quick succession, pause about half a second between commands.

### Pause or resume Voice Control

Pause Voice Control when you don't want words you say to be interpreted as commands. Resume Voice Control when you're ready for it to listen for commands again.

 [ALT N/A] **Voice Control:** Say “Stop listening” or “Start listening.”

### Commands for navigation and interaction

(table aria-label=Commands for navigation and interaction)

Command	Description
“Open [app]”	Open an app.
“Go Home”	Return to the Home Screen.
“Go back”	Return to the previous screen (in apps with a Back button).
“Tap [item]”	Tap an item on the touchscreen.  In some apps, if you're not sure what to call an unlabeled item, you can refer to it based on its position relative to other items. For example, if you see a row of icons with no text labels, you can try saying “Tap first” or “Tap second” to tap the first or second icon in the row, respectively.
“Single tap”	Tap the touchscreen.

This can be useful in an app like Maps where some items are hidden after a period of inactivity. Tapping the screen causes hidden items to reappear.

---

“Double-tap”	Double-tap the touchscreen.  This can be used in an app like Maps to zoom in on the map.
“Double-tap [item]”	Double-tap an item on the touchscreen.
“Swipe left” or “Swipe right”	Swipe between pages in CarPlay Home or CarPlay Dashboard.
“Swipe up” or “Swipe down”	Navigate up or down in a list.
“Pan left,” “Pan right,” “Pan up,” or “Pan down”	In an app like Maps, move around the map.
“Open Siri”	Activate Siri (instead of pressing the voice command button on the steering wheel).

---

### Use Voice Control in Maps

If you use Voice Control in the Maps app in CarPlay and don't know what to call a button, you can use the button names in the table below.




If a button has a text label, use the text shown as the name of the button. For example, to tap a button labeled Go, just say “Tap Go.”











(table aria-label=Button names in Maps in CarPlay)

---

Button	Name
 [Alt text: The Zoom In button.]	Zoom In
 [Alt text: The Zoom Out button.]	Zoom Out
 [Alt text: The Pan button.]	Pan
 [Alt text: The Tracking button.]	Tracking



This button may appear as  [Alt text: The Tracking button.],  [Alt text: The Tracking Off button], or  [Alt text: The Tracking On Heading button], depending on the current setting.

 [Alt text: The Overview button.]	Overview or Route Overview
 [Alt text: The Expand button.]	Expand or Up
 [Alt text: The Collapse button.]	Collapse or Down
 [Alt text: The Close button.]	Close or Dismiss
 [Alt text: The Report button.]	Report
 [Alt text: The Speaker button.]	All Guidance or Speaker
 [Alt text: The Alerts Only button.]	Alerts Only
 [Alt text: The Mute button.]	No Guidance or Mute
 [Alt text: The Siri button.]	Siri or Dictation
	Keyboard

[Alt text: The Keyboard button.]

---

To learn more about using the Maps app in CarPlay, see [Get turn-by-turn directions with CarPlay](#), [Change the map view](#), and [Report traffic incidents](#).

### Related

[Change settings in CarPlay](#)

[Use Siri to Control CarPlay](#)

[Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone](#)


NAV TITLE: [Adjust the side or Home button](#)

## Adjust settings for the side or Home button on iPhone

### Metadata

Summary: On iPhone, adjust accessibility settings for the side or Home button.

You can adjust accessibility settings for the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Home button (on other iPhone models).

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility, then tap Side Button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Home Button (on other iPhone models).
2. Set any of the following:
  - *Click Speed*: Choose the speed required to double-click or triple-click the button—Default, Slow, or Slowest.
  - *Press and Hold to Speak*: Choose whether Siri responds when you press and hold the button.
  - *Rest Finger to Open*: On an [iPhone with Touch ID](#), you can unlock and open iPhone by resting your finger on Touch ID.

On an [iPhone with Face ID](#), you can also [use AssistiveTouch](#) or [use Switch Control](#) to confirm payments with Face ID instead of double-clicking the side button.

### Related

[Quickly turn accessibility features on or off on iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone](#)


NAV TITLE: [Use Apple TV Remote buttons](#)

## Use buttons on the Apple TV Remote on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** On the Apple TV Remote on iPhone, use buttons instead of swipe gestures.

On the Apple TV Remote on iPhone, you can use buttons instead of swipe gestures.

Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Apple TV Remote, then turn on Directional Buttons.

### Related

[Control a nearby Apple device with iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Adjust pointer settings](#)

## Make the pointer easier to see when using a mouse or trackpad with iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** If you use a mouse or trackpad with iPhone, customize the color, shape, size, and scrolling speed of the pointer.

If you have difficulty seeing or following the pointer when you [use a mouse or trackpad](#) with iPhone, you can change its size and color so it's easier to locate on the screen.

Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Pointer Control, then adjust any of the following:

- Increase Contrast
- Automatically Hide Pointer
- Color
- Pointer Size
- Scrolling Speed

To customize the buttons of the pointing device, go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch > Devices.

### Related

[Use VoiceOver on iPhone with a pointer device](#)

[Zoom in on the iPhone screen](#)  
[Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Adjust keyboard settings](#)

## Adjust the onscreen and external keyboard settings for accessibility on iPhone

### Metadata


**Summary:** On iPhone, set the onscreen keyboard to show only uppercase letters, adjust key sensitivity, and make it easier to press combinations of keys.

You can set the onscreen keyboard on iPhone to show only uppercase letters, and if you use a physical keyboard with your iPhone, adjust key sensitivity and make it easier to press combinations of keys.

You can also [set typing options](#), such as auto-correction and slide to type, make it easier to [type with one hand](#), and [add keyboards](#) for other languages or alternative layouts.

### Set the onscreen keyboard to display only uppercase letters


If it's easier to read uppercase letters, you can set an option so the onscreen keyboard doesn't display lowercase letters.

Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Keyboards, then turn off Show Lowercase Keys.

**Tip:** Rotate iPhone to landscape orientation to use a larger keyboard for typing in many apps, including Mail, Messages, Notes, and Safari. See [Change or lock the screen orientation](#).

### Change how the keys respond on an external keyboard

If you use [Magic Keyboard](#) or another physical keyboard with iPhone, you can adjust the sensitivity of keys and make it easier to press combinations of keys.

Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Keyboards, then tap any of the following:

- **Key Repeat:** You can set how long you must press and hold a key before it starts repeating and how fast it repeats once it starts. You can also prevent the key from repeating at all.
- **Sticky Keys:** When you need to press multiple keys at the same time, you can press each key separately instead. For example, enter the keyboard shortcut Command-Z by pressing Command, then pressing Z.
- **Slow Keys:** Adjust the time between when you press a key and when it's activated.

### Related

[Save keystrokes with text replacements on iPhone](#)

[Type with the onscreen keyboard on iPhone](#)  
[Control iPhone with an external keyboard](#)  
[Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Control iPhone with an external keyboard](#)


## Control iPhone with an external keyboard

### Metadata

**Summary:** If you use a physical keyboard with iPhone, you can use Full Keyboard Access to control your device with the keyboard instead of the touchscreen.

If you use [Magic Keyboard](#) or another physical keyboard with iPhone, you can use Full Keyboard Access to control your device with keyboard shortcuts instead of the touchscreen. Full Keyboard Access highlights the item on the screen that has focus.

### Control iPhone using Full Keyboard Access


1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Keyboards, tap Full Keyboard Access, then turn on Full Keyboard Access.
2. Navigate iPhone using the following default commands.

(table aria-label=Keyboard shortcuts for full keyboard access)

Action	Shortcut
View available Full Keyboard Access commands	Tab-H
Move forward	Tab
Move backward	Shift-Tab
Activate the selected item	Space bar
Go to the Home Screen	Fn-H
Open the App Switcher	Fn-Up Arrow
Open Control Center	Fn-C
Open Notification Center	Fn-N

### Customize Full Keyboard Access

You can change the keyboard shortcuts associated with Full Keyboard Access commands, and customize the appearance of Full Keyboard Access (such as the color, contrast, and size of the highlight).

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Keyboards, then tap Full Keyboard Access.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *View a complete list of Full Keyboard Access commands and customize them:* Tap Commands.
  - *Change the look of Full Keyboard Access:* Tap an option below Appearance.

### Related

[Adjust the onscreen and external keyboard settings for accessibility on iPhone](#)

[Use shortcuts on Magic Keyboard with iPhone](#)

[Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone](#)


NAV TITLE: [Adjust AirPods settings](#)

## Adjust the accessibility settings for AirPods on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, change the accessibility settings for your AirPods (3rd generation), AirPods Pro, or AirPods Max to suit your mobility or hearing needs. For example, adjust how quickly you must press two or three times before an action occurs.

If you have AirPods (3rd generation), AirPods Pro, or AirPods Max, you can adjust the accessibility settings to suit your mobility or hearing needs.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > AirPods.
2. If you have multiple AirPods, select one.
3. Set any of the following options:
  - *Press Speed:* Adjust how quickly you must press two or three times before an action occurs.
  - *Press and Hold Duration:* Adjust the duration required to press and hold on your AirPods.
  - *Noise Cancellation with One AirPod:* (AirPods Pro) Turn on noise cancellation even when you're using only one of your AirPods.

- *Spatial Audio Head Tracking*: When you turn on Follow iPhone, Spatial Audio sounds like it's coming from your iPhone instead of following the movement of your head (for supported audio and video content).

4. To customize your audio, tap Audio Accessibility Settings.

#### Related

[Adjust audio settings on iPhone](#)

[Use AirPods with iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Turn on Apple Watch Mirroring](#)


## Interact with Apple Watch on your iPhone


#### Metadata

**Summary:** Apple Watch Mirroring allows you to see and control your Apple Watch screen from a paired iPhone.

Apple Watch Mirroring allows you to see and control your Apple Watch screen from your paired iPhone. You can use touch or assistive features like Voice Control, Switch Control, and more on your iPhone to interact with Apple Watch. (Apple Watch Mirroring is available on Apple Watch Series 6 and later.)

To turn on Apple Watch Mirroring, do any of the following:

- Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Apple Watch Mirroring.
- You can triple-click a button if you set up [Accessibility Shortcut](#).

To turn off Apple Watch Mirroring, tap  [Alt text: the Close button] .

#### Related

[Use Apple Watch with iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone](#)


NAV TITLE: [Control a nearby Apple device](#)

## Control a nearby Apple device with iPhone

#### Metadata


**Summary:** Control another Apple device with your iPhone.

You can remotely control your other Apple devices with your iPhone.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Control Nearby Devices, then tap Control Nearby Devices.

The device you want to control must be [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) and connected to the same Wi-Fi network as your iPhone.

2. Choose the device you want to control, then tap a button.

Button names correspond to the controls on your device. Tap  [Alt text: the More button] to see your options, including media play controls.

**Tip:** To quickly turn on Control Nearby Devices, add this feature to [Accessibility Shortcut](#).

To stop controlling the other device, tap  [Alt text: the Close button] .

### Related

[Control several devices with one switch on iPhone](#)

[Use buttons on the Apple TV Remote on iPhone](#)

[Interact with Apple Watch on your iPhone](#)

[Control your home remotely with iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Control iPhone with the movement of your eyes](#)

## Control iPhone with the movement of your eyes

### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, you can use Eye Tracking to control your device with the movement of your eyes.

With Eye Tracking, you can control iPhone using just your eyes. An onscreen pointer follows the movement of your eyes, and when you look at an item and hold your gaze steady, or *dwell*, you perform an action, such as a tap. All data used to set up and control Eye Tracking is processed on device.


### Before you begin

Eye Tracking uses the built-in, front-facing camera on iPhone. For best results, make sure that the camera has a clear view of your face and that your face is adequately lit. iPhone should be on a stable surface about a foot and a half away from your face.

Eye Tracking is available with [supported iPhone models](#).

### Turn on Eye Tracking





1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Eye Tracking, then turn on Eye Tracking.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions to calibrate Eye Tracking. As a dot appears in different locations around the screen, follow its movement with your eyes.

**Note:** You need to calibrate Eye Tracking every time you turn it on.

### Use Eye Tracking

After you turn on and calibrate Eye Tracking, an onscreen pointer follows the movement of your eyes. When you're looking at an item on the screen, an outline appears around the item.


When you hold your gaze steady at a location on the screen, the dwell pointer  [ALT N/A] appears where you're looking and the dwell timer begins (the dwell pointer circle starts to fill). When the dwell timer finishes, an action—tap, by default—is performed.

To perform additional onscreen gestures or physical button presses, use the AssistiveTouch menu  [ALT N/A]. See [Use AssistiveTouch](#).

### Recalibrate Eye Tracking

When Eye Tracking is on, you can recalibrate it as needed. You may want to do this if you change the position of your face or your iPhone.


1. Look at the top-left corner of your screen and hold your gaze steady.

The dwell pointer  [ALT N/A] appears and the dwell timer begins (the dwell pointer circle starts to fill). When the dwell timer finishes, Eye Tracking calibration starts.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions to calibrate Eye Tracking. As a dot appears in different locations around the screen, follow its movement with your eyes.

You can change which corner of the screen you need to look at to start recalibration or assign actions to other corners. See [Set up Dwell Control](#).

### Set options for Eye Tracking

You can set options for how the Eye Tracking pointer responds to your gaze.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Eye Tracking, then adjust any of the following:
  - *Smoothing:* Increase this value to make the movement of the pointer smoother. Or decrease this value to make the pointer more responsive.
  - *Snap to Item:* Have the Eye Tracking pointer automatically move to the item on the screen that's closest to where you're looking.
  - *Zoom on Keyboard Keys:* When you dwell on the keyboard, zoom in on the section of the keyboard you're looking at. Dwell again on a key to tap it.
  - *Auto-Hide:* Show the Eye Tracking pointer when you hold your gaze steady for the amount of time specified. The pointer automatically fades while your eyes are moving.

- *Dwell Control*: Turn Dwell Control on or off. To adjust settings for Dwell Control, such as the default dwell action and the duration of the dwell timer, see [Set up Dwell Control](#).

To change the size or color of the Eye Tracking pointer, go to Settings > Accessibility > Pointer Control. See [Make the pointer easier to see](#).

## Related

[Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone](#)

## Switch Control

NAV TITLE: [Intro to Switch Control](#)

### Intro to Switch Control on iPhone

#### Metadata

**Summary:** If you have motor limitations, use Switch Control to control iPhone using one or more switches.

Switch Control is an assistive technology for anyone with limited mobility. It enables you to interact with iPhone by activating a *switch*, such as pressing an external adaptive button, performing a head movement, or making a voiced or voiceless sound. Using one or more switches, you can navigate a cursor around the iPhone screen, then open the Scanner menu to choose an available action such as tap, zoom in, zoom out, and more.

### What is a switch?

A switch can be an external hardware device or a feature on your iPhone.

Switches on iPhone don't require any additional hardware. For example:

- *Screen*: Use a tap or long press anywhere on the iPhone screen. You can set up tap and long press as two different switches with separate actions.
- *Camera*: While in view of the front-facing iPhone camera, move your head to the left or right, or pinch your left or right index finger and thumb. You can set up each gesture as a different switch with a separate action.
- *Back Tap*: Double-tap or triple-tap the back of iPhone. You can set up double tap and triple tap as two different switches with separate actions.
- *Sound*: Make simple voiced sounds (such as "Oo") or voiceless sounds (such as a pop). You can set up each sound as a different switch with a separate action.

- *AirPods*: Nod or shake your head while wearing [supported AirPods](#) that are paired with your iPhone. You can set up nod and shake as two different switches with separate actions.
- *Gaming*: Turn any switch into a virtual game controller to play your favorite games on iPhone.

External switches connect to iPhone through Bluetooth® or the Lightning or USB-C connector. For example:

- Adaptive accessory
- Joystick
- Game controller
- [MFi](#) switch or switch interface

### How does Switch Control work?

In Switch Control, each switch performs a specific action—for example, Move To Next Item moves the cursor to the next item on the screen. The switch’s action is performed when you activate the switch—such as by pressing the adaptive button, moving your head, or making a sound.

You can use just one switch, or you can use multiple switches for different actions, depending on how you like to work. For example, you can activate your Move to Next Item switch to move the cursor from one item to the next. When the cursor highlights the item you want, you can activate your Select Item switch.

### Related

[Set up and turn on Switch Control on iPhone](#)  
[Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Set up and turn on Switch Control](#)

### Set up and turn on Switch Control on iPhone


#### Metadata

**Summary:** If you have severe motor limitations, use Switch Control to control iPhone using one or more switches.

To set up [Switch Control](#), you need to connect and add one or more [switches](#), then assign an action to each switch. You can choose a scanning style and fine-tune other settings to suit your needs. After you turn on Switch Control, you may need to change the assigned actions or readjust the settings. If you have difficulty performing these steps, you can get personalized help at your nearest Apple Store.


### Step 1: Connect an external switch (optional)

If you want to use an adaptive accessory, joystick, game controller, or [MFi](#) device for Switch Control, you need to first connect it to iPhone by following the manufacturer's instructions. If the switch connects using Bluetooth®, you need to pair it with iPhone.

1. Turn on the switch.
2. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, tap the name of the switch, then follow the onscreen instructions.

### Step 2: Add switches and assign actions

You can use only one switch, or you can use multiple switches to accommodate different actions. Each switch performs an assigned action, such as selecting an item or moving the cursor to the next item.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Switch Control > Switches.
2. Tap Add New Switch, then choose External, Screen, Camera, Back Tap, or Sound.

If you're trying to add an external switch but it isn't shown in the list, make sure it's connected to your iPhone as described above in [Step 1: Connect an external switch \(optional\)](#).


3. Assign an action to the switch.

The action for the switch depends on the number of switches you have and the scanning style you choose in [Step 3: Choose a scanning style](#), below. If you don't know which action to assign, choose Select Item, which is compatible with Auto Scanning (the default scanning style). You can return to this setting later to change the assigned action.

**Tip:** Turn your iPhone into a game controller that uses gestures you've already set up, like the same switch (or alternative input method) that you navigate and control your iPhone with. Or you may decide to reuse your [Back Tap](#) gestures instead.

### Step 3: Choose a scanning style

By default, the cursor automatically moves from one item to the next after a specified duration. If you prefer to move the cursor manually, you can choose a different scanning style.

Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Switch Control > Scanning Style, then choose one of the following:

- *Auto Scanning:* The cursor automatically moves to the next item after a specified duration. This is the default scanning style.

If you use Auto Scanning with just one switch, make sure the Select Item action is assigned to the switch.

- *Manual Scanning:* When you activate your Move to Next Item switch, the cursor moves to the next item.

Manual Scanning requires at least two switches. Make sure the Move to Next Item action is assigned to one switch, and the Select Item action is assigned to another switch.

- *Single Switch Step Scanning:* When you activate the Move to Next Item switch, the cursor moves to the next item; if no action is taken within a specified duration, the current item is automatically selected.

This scanning style requires only one switch. Make sure the Move to Next Item action is assigned to the switch.

#### **Step 4: Fine-tune Switch Control settings**


You can adjust the behavior of Switch Control in a variety of ways, to suit your specific needs and style. For example, you can change the scanning speed or have iPhone speak the highlighted items.

Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Switch Control, then adjust any of the following:

- *Auto Scanning Time:* Adjust the item scanning speed.
- *Pause on First Item:* Set scanning to pause on the first item in a group.
- *Loops:* Choose how many times to cycle through the screen before hiding Switch Control.
- *Move Repeat:* Set the delay before moving to the previous or next item while a switch is pressed.
- *Long Press:* Set whether a different action occurs when you press and hold a switch, and how long to wait before performing that action.
- *Tap Behavior:* Choose a tap behavior and set the interval for performing a second switch action to show the Scanner menu.
- *Focused Item After Tap:* Choose whether Switch Control resumes scanning at an item you tap or from the beginning.
- *Hold Duration:* Specify how long you need to press and hold a switch before it's accepted as a switch action.
- *Ignore Repeat:* Ignore accidental repeated switch triggers.
- *Sound Effects:* Turn on sound effects.
- *Speech:* Speak items as they're scanned.
- *Menu Items:* Choose the actions shown in the Scanner menu and the order in which they appear.
- *Group Items:* Group items for faster navigation.
- *Large Cursor:* Make the highlight more prominent.
- *Cursor Color:* Choose a different highlight color.

## Step 5: Turn on Switch Control

**Important:** When Switch Control is turned on, you can't use the standard gestures on the touchscreen to exit Switch Control.

Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Switch Control, then turn on Switch Control.

**Tip:** You can add Switch Control to [Accessibility Shortcut](#), then quickly turn it on or off by triple-clicking the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or the Home button (on other iPhone models).

## Related

[Intro to Switch Control on iPhone](#)

[Use Switch Control on iPhone to select items, perform actions, and more](#)

[Control several devices with one switch on iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Select items, perform actions, and more](#)

## Use Switch Control on iPhone to select items, perform actions, and more

### Metadata

**Summary:** With Switch Control on iPhone, use item scanning, gliding cursor (point scanning), or head tracking to select an item on the screen.

After you [set up and turn on Switch Control](#), you can select items on the screen by doing any of the following:

- *Item mode:* The cursor sequentially highlights items or groups of items. This is the default method when you first turn on Switch Control and whenever the Scanner menu appears.
- *Gliding cursor:* You select a point on the screen using scanning crosshairs. This method is useful when you need to select a specific point, such as in Maps, or on a screen with many items.
- *Head tracking:* You can move your head (detected by the front-facing camera) to control the cursor on the screen. This method is useful when you need to select a specific point, such as in Maps, or on a screen with many items.

When the cursor is on the item you want, the Scanner menu opens to show the available actions such as tap, scroll, control the volume, and more.

## Use item mode to select items and perform actions

1. Depending on the [scanning style](#) you're using, do one of the following:

- *If using Auto Scanning:* Watch or listen as groups of items are sequentially highlighted.

- *If using Manual Scanning:* Activate your Move to Next Item switch to navigate through the groups of items on the screen.
  - *If using Single Switch Step Scanning:* Activate your Move to Next Item switch to navigate through the groups of items on the screen.
2. When the group you want is highlighted, do one of the following:
    - *If using Auto Scanning:* Activate your Select Item switch.
    - *If using Manual Scanning:* Activate your Select Item switch.
    - *If using Single Switch Step Scanning:* Wait until the current group is automatically selected.
  3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to scan and select an item within the group.
  4. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to scan and choose an action in the Scanner menu. The dots at the bottom of the menu provide more options.

To dismiss the Scanner menu without choosing an action, activate your Select Item switch when the original item is highlighted and all the icons in the menu are dimmed.

#### **Use the gliding cursor to select a point**

By default, Switch Control starts in item mode. To use the gliding cursor instead, do the following:


1. [Use item mode](#) to select any item, then choose Gliding Cursor (in the Scanner menu).
2. To position the vertical crosshair, activate your Select Item switch when the wide vertical band is over the item you want.
3. Activate your Select Item switch again when the fine vertical line is over the item.
4. To position the horizontal crosshair, activate your Select Item switch when the wide horizontal band is over the item you want.
5. Activate your Select Item switch again when the fine horizontal line is over the item.
6. In the Scanner menu, select the action you want, then activate your Select Item switch.



To return to item mode, open the Scanner menu, then choose Item Mode.

#### **Set up head tracking**

You can move your head to control a cursor on the screen. You can also assign actions to facial expressions, such as a smile or raised eyebrows.

To set up head tracking, do the following:

- Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Switch Control > Switches, then make sure you've [set up switches](#).

- Go to Settings > Accessibility > Switch Control > Head Tracking, turn on Head Tracking, then set any of these options:
  - *Assign actions to facial expressions:* Each expression can perform a different action and require a different degree of expressiveness.
  - *Choose how the pointer tracks your head movement:* Tap Tracking Mode, then choose With Face, When Facing Screen Edges, or Relative to Head.
  - *Adjust the pointer speed:* Tap  [Alt text: the Decrement button] or  [Alt text: the Increment button] .

### Use head tracking

To use head tracking, do the following:

1. [Use item mode](#) to select any item, then choose Head Tracking (in the Scanner menu).
2. Move your head to position the cursor on the location you want, then activate it using your Select Item switch or facial expression.
3. In the Scanner menu, select the action you want, then activate your Select Item switch or facial expression.

To return to item mode, open the Scanner menu, then choose Item Mode.

### Related

- [Intro to Switch Control on iPhone](#)
- [Set up and turn on Switch Control on iPhone](#)
- [Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Control several devices with one switch](#)

### Control several devices with one switch on iPhone

#### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, use Platform Switching to control multiple devices using a single switch.

You can remotely control your other Apple devices without adjusting any switch connections. With Platform Switching, you can navigate your iPad, Mac, or Apple TV using the same switch that you use to control your iPhone.

1. Connect your devices to the same Wi-Fi network.
2. [Sign in with the same Apple Account](#) on all your devices.



3. [Set up and turn on Switch Control on iPhone](#), then turn on Switch Control for the others: [iPad](#), [Mac](#), or [Apple TV](#).
4. [Use the switch](#) to open the Scanner menu.
5. Choose Device, choose Use Other Device, then choose Connect.

To remove control from your iPhone, choose Devices on the connected device, then choose Disconnect.

### Related

- [Control a nearby Apple device with iPhone](#)
- [Interact with Apple Watch on your iPhone](#)
- [Control your home remotely with iPhone](#)
- [Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone](#)

## Hearing


NAV TITLE: [Overview of accessibility features for hearing](#)

### Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone

#### Metadata

**Summary:** Discover accessibility features on iPhone to help you hear better or stay connected without hearing a sound.

iPhone comes with built-in tools designed to help you hear better—or stay connected without hearing a sound.

To explore accessibility features for hearing, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility, then scroll down to the Hearing section.

#### Use alternatives to sound

(table aria-label=Use alternatives to sound)



[ALT N/A]

**Get real-time captions of spoken audio**



[ALT N/A]

**Customize subtitles and captions**

With Live Captions, get a transcription of the audio from any app and from live conversations around you.

[Get live captions of spoken audio](#)

Change how subtitles look. Or instead of standard subtitles, use closed captions and SDH when available.

[Display subtitles and captions](#)



[ALT N/A]

### **Blink the iPhone light for notifications**

If you can't hear your alerts, get notified visually.

[Flash the iPhone indicator light for notifications](#)



[ALT N/A]

### **Get notified about sounds around you**

With Sound Recognition, have iPhone listen for sounds—such as a doorbell or siren—and alert you when it recognizes them.

[Recognize sounds](#)



[ALT N/A]

### **Feel the music**

Experience music as taps, textures, and refined vibrations that are synchronized with a song's audio.

[Play music as vibrations and other haptics](#)



[ALT N/A]

### **Type to Siri**

Type your Siri requests instead of speaking them.

[Change Siri accessibility settings](#)



[ALT N/A]

### **Make Real-Time Text (RTT) calls**

Type to communicate on a phone call. The person you're talking to sees your message as you type it.

[Set up and use RTT and TTY](#)

You can also get transcriptions of [audio messages](#), [HomePod intercom messages](#), and [podcasts](#).

### **Use hearing devices and make audio adjustments**

(table aria-label=Use hearing devices and make audio adjustments)



[ALT N/A]

### **Hearing devices**



[ALT N/A]

### **Live Listen**

Pair [Made for iPhone \(MFi\)](#) hearing aids or sound processors with iPhone and adjust their settings.

[Use hearing devices](#)



[ALT N/A]

#### Audio balance

Play stereo audio as mono, adjust left-right stereo balance, and more.

[Adjust audio settings](#)

Stream sound from the iPhone microphone to your MFi hearing devices or AirPods.

[Use iPhone as a remote microphone with Live Listen](#)



[ALT N/A]

#### AirPods

Set accessibility options for AirPods and other Apple headphones paired with your iPhone.

[Adjust the accessibility settings for AirPods](#)



[ALT N/A]

#### Background sounds

Have your iPhone play ambient sounds—such as ocean waves or rain—to help you focus or rest.

[Play background sounds](#)

You can also [have Siri announce notifications and calls](#) on your MFi hearing devices.

**Tip:** Control your go-to accessibility features and settings with the click of a button or from Control Center. See [Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut](#).

#### Related

[Get started with accessibility features on iPhone](#)

[Apple Accessibility Support website](#)

[Apple Accessibility webpage for Hearing](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use hearing devices](#)


## Use hearing devices with iPhone

Metadata


Summary: Use MFi hearing aids or sound processors with iPhone and adjust their settings.

You can use [MFi](#) hearing aids or sound processors with iPhone and adjust their settings. See the Apple Support article [Made for iPhone compatible hearing devices](#) for a list of models that work well with iPhone.

## Pair hearing devices with iPhone

If your hearing devices aren't listed in Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Hearing Devices, you need to pair them with iPhone.

If your hearing devices are already paired to another nearby device, such as a Mac or iPad, make sure Bluetooth® is turned off on those devices. (When you finish pairing your hearing devices to your iPhone, you can turn Bluetooth on again on those devices.)

1. On iPhone, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Bluetooth, then make sure Bluetooth is turned on.
2. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices.
3. Turn your hearing devices off and back on again.




If you're unsure how to turn them off, refer to the instructions that came with them, or check with the audiologist who helped you set them up.

4. When their name appears below MFi Hearing Devices (this could take a minute), tap the name and respond to the pairing requests.

Pairing can take as long as 60 seconds—don't try to stream audio or otherwise use the hearing devices until pairing is finished. When pairing is finished, you hear a series of beeps and a tone, and a checkmark appears next to the hearing devices in the Devices list.

You need to pair your devices only once (and your audiologist might do it for you). After that, your hearing devices automatically reconnect to iPhone whenever they turn on.

## Adjust the settings and view the status of your hearing devices

- *In Settings:* Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Hearing Devices > MFi Hearing Devices.
- *By triple-clicking the side or Home button:* Use the [Accessibility Shortcut](#) if you've set it up.
- *In Control Center:* Tap  [Alt text: the Hearing Devices button] . (If you don't see  [Alt text: the Hearing Devices button] , add it to [Control Center](#).)
- *On the Lock Screen:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices > MFi Hearing Devices, then turn on Control on Lock Screen. From the Lock Screen, you can do the following:
  - Check battery status.
  - Adjust ambient microphone volume and equalization.
  - Choose which hearing device (left, right, or both) receives streaming audio.
  - Control Live Listen.
  - Choose whether phone and media audio are routed to the hearing device.
  - Choose to play ringtones through the hearing device.

## Use your hearing devices with more than one device


If you pair your hearing devices with more than one device (both iPhone and iPad, for example), the connection for your hearing devices automatically switches from one to the other when you do something that generates audio on the other device, or when you receive a phone call on iPhone.

Changes you make to hearing device settings on one device are automatically synced with your other devices.

1. [Sign in to your Apple Account](#) on all the devices.
2. Connect all the devices to the same Wi-Fi network.

## Turn on Hearing Aid Compatibility

Hearing Aid Compatibility may reduce interference and improve audio quality with some hearing aid models.


1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Hearing Devices.
2. Turn on Hearing Aid Compatibility.

For iPhone hearing aid compatibility ratings, see the Apple Support article [About Hearing Aid Compatibility \(HAC\) requirements for iPhone](#).

Hearing aid compatibility ratings aren't a guarantee that a particular hearing aid works well with a particular phone. Some hearing aids might work well with phones that do not meet the FCC requirements for hearing aid compatibility. To ensure that a particular hearing aid works well with a particular phone, use them together before purchasing.

## Stream audio to your hearing devices

You can stream audio from Phone  [ALT N/A], Siri  [ALT N/A], Apple Music  [ALT N/A], Apple Podcasts  [ALT N/A], Apple TV  [ALT N/A], and more.

1. Tap  [Alt text: the Playback Destination button in Control Center, on the Lock Screen, or in the Now Playing controls for the app you're listening to].
2. Choose your hearing device.

You can also automatically [route audio calls](#) to a hearing device.

To troubleshoot issues you have using your hearing devices with iPhone, see the Apple Support article [Use Made for iPhone hearing devices](#).

## Related

[Use iPhone as a remote microphone with Live Listen](#)  
[Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone](#)


## Use iPhone as a remote microphone with Live Listen

### Metadata


**Summary:** On iPhone, stream sound from the microphone to your MFi hearing devices or AirPods.




You can stream sound from the microphone on iPhone to your [MFi](#) hearing devices or AirPods. This can help you hear better in some situations—for example, when having a conversation in a noisy environment.

1. If you're using AirPods, place them in your ears.

If your AirPods don't automatically connect to iPhone, tap  [Alt text: the Playback Destination button] in Control Center or on the Lock Screen, then choose your AirPods.

2. To turn Live Listen on or off, do one of the following:

- [Open Control Center](#), tap  [Alt text: the Hearing Devices button], tap your hearing device or AirPods, then tap Live Listen.

(If you don't see  [Alt text: the Hearing Devices button], add it to Control Center—go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Control Center, then tap  [Alt text: the Insert button] next to Hearing.)

- If you've [set up the Accessibility Shortcut](#), triple-click the side or Home button, tap Hearing Devices, then tap Live Listen.
- If you're using hearing aids, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Hearing Devices, then turn on Live Listen.

3. Position iPhone near the sound source.

### Related

[AirPods User Guide: Use Live Listen with AirPods](#)

[Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Use sound recognition](#)

## Recognize sounds using iPhone


### Metadata

**Summary:** iPhone can listen for certain sounds and notify you when it recognizes these sounds.

Your iPhone can continuously listen for certain sounds—such as a doorbell, siren, or crying baby—and notify you when it recognizes these sounds.

**Note:** Don't rely on your iPhone to recognize sounds in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, in high-risk or emergency situations, or for navigation.


### Set up Sound Recognition

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Sound Recognition, then turn on Sound Recognition.
2. Tap Sounds, then turn on the sounds you want iPhone to recognize.

**Tip:** To quickly turn Sound Recognition on or off, add it to [Control Center](#).

### Add a custom alarm, appliance, or doorbell

You can also set up iPhone to recognize a custom alarm, appliance, or doorbell if they aren't recognized automatically.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Sound Recognition > Sounds.
2. Tap Custom Alarm or Custom Appliance or Doorbell, then enter a name.
3. When your alarm, appliance, or doorbell is ready, place iPhone near the sound and minimize background noise.
4. Tap Start Listening, then follow the onscreen instructions.

### Related

[Get notified about car horns and sirens in CarPlay](#)

[Use iPhone as a remote microphone with Live Listen](#)

[Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Set up and use RTT and TTY](#)

## Set up and use RTT and TTY on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, communicate by telephone using Teletype (TTY) or real-time text (RTT) if you have hearing or speech difficulties. Use Software TTY on iPhone or connect iPhone to an external TTY device.

If you have hearing or speech difficulties, you can communicate by telephone using Teletype (TTY) or real-time text (RTT)—protocols that transmit text as you type and allow the recipient to read the message right away. RTT is a more advanced protocol that transmits audio as you type text.

iPhone provides built-in Software RTT and TTY from the Phone app—it requires no additional devices. If you turn on Software RTT/TTY, iPhone defaults to the RTT protocol whenever it's supported by the carrier.

iPhone also supports Hardware TTY, so you can connect iPhone to an external TTY device with the iPhone TTY Adapter (sold separately in many regions).

**Important:** RTT and TTY aren't supported by all carriers or in all countries or regions. RTT and TTY functionality depends on your carrier and network environment. When making an emergency call in the U.S., iPhone sends special characters or tones to alert the operator. The operator's ability to receive or respond to these tones can vary depending on your location. Apple doesn't guarantee that the operator will be able to receive or respond to an RTT or TTY call.

### Set up RTT and TTY


1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > RTT/TTY.

**Note:** Depending on your carrier, you might see RTT, TTY, or RTT/TTY.

2. Turn on Software RTT, then do any of the following:

- If your iPhone has Dual SIM, choose a line.
- Tap Relay Number, then enter the phone number to use for relay calls using Software RTT.
- Turn on Send Immediately to send each character as you type. Turn it off to complete messages before sending.
- Turn on Answer All Calls as RTT/TTY.

3. If you want to answer and make TTY calls from an external TTY device instead of your iPhone, turn on Hardware TTY.

When RTT or TTY is turned on,  [Alt text: the TTY icon] appears in the status bar at the top of the screen.


### Connect iPhone to an external TTY device

If you turned on Hardware TTY in Settings > Accessibility > RTT/TTY, connect your iPhone to your TTY device using the iPhone TTY Adapter. If Software TTY is also turned on, incoming calls default to Hardware TTY. For information about using a particular TTY device, see the documentation that came with it.

### Start an RTT or TTY call

1. Go to the Phone app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.







2. Tap Contacts, then choose a contact.
3. Tap Call, then choose RTT/TTY Call or RTT/TTY Relay Call.
4. Wait for the call to connect, then tap  [Alt text: the RTT button] .

iPhone defaults to the RTT protocol whenever it's supported by the carrier.




If you haven't turned RTT on and you receive an incoming RTT call, tap the RTT button to answer the call with RTT.

### Type text during an RTT or TTY call

1. When you accept or [start an RTT or TTY call](#), tap  [ALT N/A] Use RTT, then tap  [Alt text: the RTT button] .
2. Enter your message in the text field.  
  
If you turned on Send Immediately in Settings, your recipient sees each character as you type. Otherwise, tap  [Alt text: the Send button] to send the message.
3. To also transmit audio, tap  [Alt text: the Microphone Off Muted button] in the top-right corner.

### Review the transcript of a Software RTT or TTY call

Your iPhone can capture voice messages and provide auto-answer transcriptions for incoming calls.

1. Go to the Phone app  [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Recents, then tap  [Alt text: the More Info button] next to a caller.
3. RTT and TTY calls with transcripts are marked with a  [Alt text: the RTT/TTY icon] in your call history. Tap the call to see its transcript.

**Note:** Continuity features aren't available for RTT and TTY support. Standard voice call rates apply for both Software RTT/TTY and Hardware TTY calls.

### Related

[Get live captions of spoken audio on iPhone](#)

[Type to speak using Live Speech on iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone](#)

[Apple Support article: Answer or make RTT or TTY calls from your iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Flash the indicator light for notifications](#)


## Flash the iPhone indicator light for notifications

Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, set the LED to flash for incoming calls and other alerts.

You can set the iPhone indicator light to blink when you receive a notification. This can be useful if you can't hear the sounds that announce incoming calls or other alerts, or if you might miss audible alerts in a noisy environment.

The indicator light is the light-emitting diode (LED) located on the back of iPhone, next to the camera lens.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Audio & Visual, then turn on LED Flash for Alerts.
2. Turn any of the following on or off:
  - *Flash While Unlocked:* The indicator light flashes even when iPhone is unlocked.
  - *Flash in Silent Mode:* The indicator light flashes even when iPhone is in [Silent mode](#).

### Related

[Change iPhone sounds and vibrations](#)

[Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Adjust audio settings](#)


## Adjust audio settings on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, use mono audio, and adjust left-right stereo balance and other audio settings to suit your hearing needs.


You can use mono audio, adjust left-right stereo balance, and—with supported headphones—amplify soft sounds and adjust certain frequencies to best suit your hearing needs.

### Balance the audio

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Audio & Visual.
2. Adjust any of the following:
  - *Mono Audio:* Turn on Mono Audio to make the left and right speakers play the same content.
  - *Stereo Audio Balance:* Drag the Balance slider left or right.


### Use phone noise cancellation

Phone noise cancellation uses air pressure to reduce ambient background noise. This means that you hear better when you're holding the receiver to your ear in certain noisy environments. Phone noise cancellation is available and on by default on iPhone 12 and earlier, and can be turned off for your comfort.




1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Audio & Visual.
2. Turn Phone Noise Cancellation off or on.

### Adjust certain frequencies and soft sounds

With Headphone Accommodations for [supported Apple and Beats headphones](#), you can adjust certain sounds to best suit your hearing. Make soft sounds louder and boost some frequencies so phone calls and media sound crisper and clearer.

1. Make sure you're in a quiet environment and that you've [paired your AirPods](#) or [paired other supported Bluetooth® headphones](#).
2. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Audio & Visual > Headphone Accommodations, then turn on Headphone Accommodations.
3. Adjust any of the following:
  - *Frequencies*: Below Tune Audio For, choose an option to boost different frequencies.
  - *Soft sounds*: Drag the slider to set an amplification level for soft sounds.
4. Scroll down, then do any of the following:
  - Turn on Phone to apply the settings to phone calls.
  - Turn on Media to apply the settings to media playback like music, movies, and podcasts.


With some supported headphones, you can use Headphone Accommodations to personalize your headphone audio based on what sounds good to you. Tap Custom Audio Setup, then follow the onscreen instructions.




**Tip:** Quickly access Headphone Accommodations by tapping  [Alt text: the Headphone Accommodations button] in [Control Center](#). (If you don't see  [Alt text: the Headphone Accommodations button], add it—tap  [Alt text: the Add button], tap Add a Control, scroll down to Hearing Accessibility, then tap Headphone Accommodations.)

For information about applying Headphone Accommodations settings to Transparency Mode and Conversation Boost when using AirPods Pro and iPhone, see [Customize Transparency mode for AirPods Pro](#) in the AirPods User Guide.

### Make dialogue sound clearer in videos

When you watch supported video content, you can turn on voice isolation so the dialogue is easier to hear. During dialogue, voices are isolated and all other audio is substantially reduced.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Audio & Visual.

2. Turn on Add Voice Isolation.
3. While watching a supported video in the Apple TV app  [ALT N/A], do one of the following:
  - Tap  [Alt text: the Audio Track button] .
  - Tap  [Alt text: the More Controls button] , then tap Audio.
4. Tap Enhance Dialogue, then tap Isolate.

### Related

- [Check your headphone audio levels on iPhone](#)
- [Play music on iPhone as taps, textures, and more](#)
- [Adjust the sound in Music on iPhone](#)
- [Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone](#)


NAV TITLE: [Play background sounds](#)

## Play background sounds on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, play ambient background sounds like ocean waves or rain to help you focus or rest.

You can have iPhone play ambient background sounds—such as ocean waves or rain—to help you focus or rest.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Audio & Visual > Background Sounds, then turn on Background Sounds.  
**Tip:** Control Background Sounds with the click of a button or from Control Center. See [Quickly turn accessibility features on or off](#).
2. Set any of the following:
  - *Sound:* Choose a sound; the audio file downloads to your iPhone.
  - *Volume:* Drag the slider.
  - *Use When Media is Playing:* Adjust the volume of the background sound when iPhone is playing music or other media.
  - *Stop Sounds When Locked:* Background sounds stop playing when iPhone is locked.

### Related

- [Play music on iPhone](#)

[Set up a Focus on iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone](#)

[Apple Support article: Play rain sounds and other ambient noise with Background Sounds](#)

NAV TITLE: [Display subtitles and captions](#)

## Display subtitles and captions on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, see subtitles, closed captions, and transcriptions to follow along more easily with audio and video.

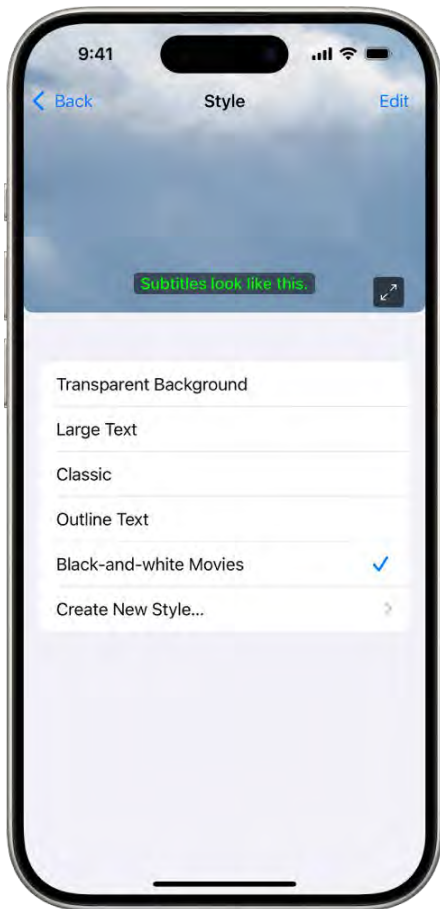
iPhone can provide subtitles, closed captions, and transcriptions so you can follow along more easily with audio and video.

### Turn on subtitles and captions in the Apple TV app


When you play video content in a supported app, you can turn on subtitles and closed captions (if available). iPhone usually shows standard subtitles and captions, but you can also choose special accessible captions—such as subtitles for the deaf and hard of hearing (SDH)—if available.

1. While playing video content, tap  [Alt text: the Media Selection button] .
2. Choose from the list of available subtitles and captions.

### Customize the subtitles and captions in supported video apps



[Alt text: An iPhone showing an example of subtitles with a custom style.]

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Subtitles & Captioning.
2. If you prefer closed captioning or subtitles for the deaf and hard of hearing when available, turn on Closed Captions + SDH.
3. Tap Style, then choose an existing caption style or create a new style based on the following:
  - Font, size, and color
  - Background color and opacity
  - Text opacity, edge style, and highlight

### Related

[Get live captions of spoken audio on iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone](#)




NAV TITLE: [Show transcriptions for Intercom messages](#)

## Show transcriptions for Intercom messages from HomePod on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, get transcriptions for Intercom messages.

If members of your home [use HomePod for Intercom messages](#), iPhone can transcribe the messages for you.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Subtitles & Captioning, then turn on Show Audio Transcriptions.
2. In the Home app  [ALT N/A], tap  [Alt text: the More button], then tap Home Settings.
3. Tap Intercom, then choose when you receive notifications.

See [Use HomePod as an Intercom](#) in the HomePod User Guide.

### Related

[Get live captions of spoken audio on iPhone](#)

[Display subtitles and captions on iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Get live captions of spoken audio](#)

## Get live captions of spoken audio on iPhone


### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, see live captions to more easily follow the audio in any app, such as FaceTime or Podcasts, and in live conversations around you.

With Live Captions on iPhone, you can get a real-time transcription of spoken audio. Use Live Captions to more easily follow the audio in any app, such as FaceTime or Podcasts, as well as live conversations around you.

**Note:** Live Captions is available on iPhone 11 and later when the [primary language is set](#) to English (U.S.) or English (Canada). The accuracy of Live Captions may vary and shouldn't be relied upon in high-risk or emergency situations.




### Set up and customize Live Captions

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Live Captions, then turn on Live Captions.

2. Tap Appearance to customize the text, size, and color of the captions.
3. By default, Live Captions are shown across all apps. To get live captions only for certain apps such as FaceTime or RTT, turn them on below In-App Live Captions.

### Use Live Captions

With Live Captions turned on, iPhone automatically transcribes the spoken audio in apps—or from dialogue around you. You can do any of the following:

- *Transcribe an in-person conversation:* Tap Live Captions, then tap Microphone.
- *Transcribe iPhone audio:* Tap Live Captions, then tap iPhone Audio.
- *Pause the transcription:* Tap Live Captions, then tap Pause Listening.
- *Move the Live Captions window:* Drag the Live Captions window to reposition it on the screen.
- *Hide the Live Captions window:* The Live Captions window is automatically hidden when no audio is detected. Or swipe left or right on the window to hide it. To restore the window, tap  [Alt text: the Live Captions Collapsed button] .
- *Make the transcription window full-screen:* Tap  [Alt text: the Maximize button] . To restore the window to the smaller size, tap  [Alt text: the Minimize button] .

### Related

[Display subtitles and captions on iPhone](#)

[Show transcriptions for Intercom messages from HomePod on iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Play music as taps, textures, and more](#)


## Play music on iPhone as taps, textures, and more

### Metadata

**Summary:** On iPhone, you can turn on Music Haptics to play music with taps, textures, and refined vibrations that are synchronized with a song's audio.

With Music Haptics, you can experience music on iPhone with taps, textures, and refined vibrations that are synchronized with a song's audio.

**Note:** Music Haptics is available with [supported iPhone models](#) for millions of songs in [Apple Music](#), [Music Classical](#), [Shazam](#), and compatible third-party apps when your iPhone is connected to Wi-Fi or cellular.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Music Haptics.



2. Turn Music Haptics on or off.

**Tip:** Control Music Haptics with the click of a button or from Control Center. See [Quickly turn accessibility features on or off](#).

#### Related

[Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: [Get notified about car horns and sirens in CarPlay](#)


## Get notified about car horns and sirens in CarPlay

#### Metadata

**Summary:** With Sound Recognition in CarPlay, you can have iPhone continuously listen for and recognize car horns or sirens.

With Sound Recognition in CarPlay, you can have iPhone continuously listen for car horns and sirens, and recognize them using on-device intelligence. A notification appears on the CarPlay touchscreen when these sounds are detected.

**Note:** Sound Recognition in CarPlay is available with [supported iPhone models](#). Don't rely on Sound Recognition in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, in high-risk or emergency situations, or for navigation. CarPlay is not available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability page](#).

1. In CarPlay, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility.
2. Tap Sound Recognition, then turn on Sound Recognition.
3. Turn on the sounds you want to be notified about.

#### Related

[Intro to CarPlay and iPhone](#)

[Change settings in CarPlay](#)

[Recognize sounds using iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone](#)

## Speech


NAV TITLE: [Overview of accessibility features for speech](#)

## Accessibility features for speech on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** Discover accessibility features for speech on iPhone—have what you type spoken out loud, create a synthesized voice that sounds like you, and more.

iPhone comes with built-in tools for communicating in the way that works best for you, whether you're nonspeaking, at risk of speech loss, or someone with a speech disability. You can have what you type spoken out loud, create a synthesized voice that sounds like you, and more.

To explore accessibility features for speech, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility, then scroll down to the Speech section.

### Type to speak

(table aria-label=Type to speak)



[ALT N/A]

#### Live Speech

If you're unable to speak or you have a speech disability, type what you want to say and have iPhone speak it.

[Type to speak using Live Speech](#)



[ALT N/A]

#### Personal Voice

If you're at risk of losing your ability to speak, create a synthesized voice that sounds like you.

[Record your Personal Voice](#)



[ALT N/A]

#### Type to Siri

Type your Siri requests instead of speaking them.

[Type instead of speaking to Siri](#)

### Control iPhone with your voice

(table aria-label=Control iPhone with your voice)



[ALT N/A]

#### Use voice commands



[ALT N/A]

#### Use simple sounds

Speak commands to navigate and interact with what's on the screen, dictate and edit text, and more.

[Use Voice Control commands to interact with iPhone](#)

You can use voiced or voiceless sounds—like an S-sound or a mouth pop—to navigate and interact with what's on the screen.

[Use sound actions with Switch Control](#)



[ALT N/A]

### Vocal Shortcuts

Have iPhone perform an action when you speak a word or another sound of your choosing.

[Use Vocal Shortcuts](#)



[ALT N/A]

### Have Siri listen for atypical speech

If you have an acquired or progressive condition that affects speech, have Siri recognize a wider range of atypical speech patterns.

[Change Siri accessibility settings on iPhone](#)

You can also [have Siri wait longer for you to finish speaking](#), or use [Dictation](#) to enter text using just your voice.

**Tip:** Control your go-to accessibility features and settings with the click of a button or from Control Center. See [Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut](#).

### Related

[Get started with accessibility features on iPhone](#)

[Apple Accessibility Support website](#)

[Apple Accessibility webpage for Speech](#)

NAV TITLE: [Type to speak](#)

## Type to speak using Live Speech on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Type to speak on iPhone using any of dozens of voices.

If you're unable to speak or have lost your speech over time, you can use Live Speech on iPhone to have what you type spoken out loud during in-person conversations and in apps like FaceTime. You can choose from dozens of system voices or use [a personal voice you create](#).

**Note:** Live Speech is not available in all languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability page](#).

### Turn on Live Speech

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Live Speech, then turn on Live Speech.

2. Choose a voice. You can use Live Speech with any voice you choose, including your Personal Voice.
3. Triple-click the side button or Home button (depending on your iPhone model), then tap Live Speech (if the Accessibility Shortcut is set up with more than one feature).

### **Have what you type spoken out loud**

1. After you [turn on Live Speech](#), type what you want to have spoken in the Live Speech window.

You can also paste copied text into the window, or tap suggested words that appear above the keyboard as you type.

2. Tap Speak to have your text spoken out loud.

If you're on a FaceTime call, Live Speech is output on the other end of the call. Otherwise, the speaker on your iPhone outputs Live Speech.



### **Have saved phrases spoken out loud**

With Live Speech, you can select from a list of phrases you use often.

1. After you [turn on Live Speech](#), tap Keyboard at the top of the Live Speech window.
2. Tap a category, like Recent or Saved, then tap a phrase to have it spoken out loud.
3. To hide your saved phrases and return to entering text with the keyboard, tap Phrases at the top of the Live Speech window.



### **Add or remove saved phrases**

Add or remove phrases from the list of saved phrases that you use often.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Live Speech, then tap Phrases.
2. Tap Saved or another category you've created, then do any of the following:
  - *Add a saved phrase:* Tap  [Alt text: the Add Phrase button], enter your phrase in the text field, then tap Save.
  - *Remove a saved phrase:* Tap a phrase, then tap Delete Phrase.

### **Create categories for saved phrases**

Organize your saved phrases into categories, such as for different activities—like work, school, or gaming.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Live Speech, then tap Phrases.
2. Tap  [Alt text: the Add Category button], enter a name for the category, choose an icon, then tap Done.

### **Related**

[Type instead of speak to Siri](#)  
[Hear iPhone speak the screen, selected text, and typing feedback](#)  
[Accessibility features for speech on iPhone](#)


NAV TITLE: [Record your personal voice](#)

## Record your personal voice on iPhone

### Metadata

**Summary:** Record your voice on iPhone if you're at risk of speech loss or someone with a speech disability.

If you're at risk of speech loss or someone with a speech disability, you can use Personal Voice on iPhone to create a synthesized voice that sounds like you. You can use your personal voice with Live Speech and [have what you type spoken out loud](#) during in-person conversations, in Phone and FaceTime calls, and in assistive communication apps.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Personal Voice.
2. Tap Create a Personal Voice, then follow the onscreen instructions.

(If you need to pause your recording session, tap Done. To resume, tap the name of your personal voice, then tap Continue Recording.)

**Note:** To see the option to create your personal voice, you must first [set a passcode](#). Personal Voice is available on supported iPhone models and is not available in all languages. See the Apple Support article [Create a Personal Voice on your iPhone, iPad, or Mac](#).

Your personal voice is saved securely on your iPhone for you to use during Phone and FaceTime calls, in-person conversations, and third-party alternative and augmentative communication (AAC) apps.

**Important:** Personal Voice can be used only with Live Speech and with third-party apps that you allow, such as Augmentative and Alternative Communication (AAC) apps. You can use Personal Voice only to create a voice that sounds like you on device, using your own voice, and for your own personal, noncommercial use. Your [Legacy Contact](#) won't be able to access your Personal Voice.

### Related

[Type instead of speak to Siri](#)  
[Hear iPhone speak the screen, selected text, and typing feedback](#)  
[Accessibility features for speech on iPhone](#)


## Use Vocal Shortcuts on iPhone

### Metadata


**Summary:** Use Vocal Shortcuts to have iPhone perform an action when you speak a word or another sound of your choosing.

With Vocal Shortcuts, you can teach iPhone to perform an action when you speak a word or another sound of your choosing. Vocal Shortcuts can be useful if you have moderate to severe atypical speech but can reliably vocalize certain utterances. Audio is processed on device.

### Set up Vocal Shortcuts

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Vocal Shortcuts.
2. Tap Set Up, then tap Continue.
3. Choose an action for iPhone to perform when you say the shortcut. If you want the action to be a request to Siri, tap Siri Request, then enter the request.
4. Enter the phrase you'll say when you want iPhone to perform the action, then follow the onscreen instructions to repeat the phrase out loud so that iPhone can recognize it.



### Add a Vocal Shortcut

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Vocal Shortcuts.
2. Tap Add Action, then tap Continue.
3. Choose an action for iPhone to perform when you say the shortcut. If you want the action to be a request to Siri, tap Siri Request, then enter the request.
4. Enter the phrase you'll say when you want iPhone to perform the action, then follow the onscreen instructions to repeat the phrase out loud so that iPhone can recognize it.

### Use a Vocal Shortcut

After you've [set up Vocal Shortcuts](#), just say the phrase for one the [shortcuts you've created](#).

### Delete a Vocal Shortcut

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Vocal Shortcuts.
2. Tap Edit, tap  [Alt text: the Remove button] next to the shortcut you want to delete, then tap Delete.

**Tip:** If you have an acquired or progressive condition that affects speech, you can have Siri listen for and recognize a wider range of atypical speech patterns. See [Change Siri accessibility settings](#).

### Related

- [Use Siri on iPhone](#)
- [Use Voice Control commands to interact with iPhone](#)
- [Use Shortcuts to automate tasks on iPhone](#)
- [Accessibility features for speech on iPhone](#)

## Cognitive


NAV TITLE: [Overview of cognitive accessibility features](#)

### Cognitive accessibility features on iPhone

#### Metadata

**Summary:** Discover cognitive accessibility features for speech on iPhone—temporarily lock it to one app, turn on features to streamline tasks and stay focused, and more.

iPhone comes with built-in options to suit your cognitive needs—or those of someone you care for.

To explore accessibility features on iPhone, go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility.

#### Adapt iPhone for someone you care for

(table aria-label=Adapt iPhone for someone you care for)



[ALT N/A]

##### Keep iPhone simple

If someone you care for has a cognitive disability, set up an iPhone with a simplified interface. Choose and customize core features that work best for them.

[Assistive Access User Guide](#)



[ALT N/A]

##### Lock iPhone to one app

When you let a child use your iPhone, limit their access to a single app.

[Lock iPhone to one app with Guided Access](#)

You can also reduce sensory stimulus from the screen—for example, automatically dim the display of content that depicts flashing or strobing lights, and pause the display of rapid animated images such as GIFs. See [Stop or reduce onscreen motion](#).

iPhone offers many additional tools to help you focus, make it easier to enter text, or follow along with what you're reading or listening to with features like [Focus](#), [Dictation](#), [Spoken Content](#), and [Live Captions](#).

For more resources, visit the [Apple Cognitive Accessibility webpage](#).

**Tip:** Control your go-to accessibility features and settings with the click of a button or from Control Center. See [Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut](#).

### Related

[Get started with accessibility features on iPhone](#)

[Apple Accessibility Support website](#)

NAV TITLE: [Lock iPhone to one app](#)

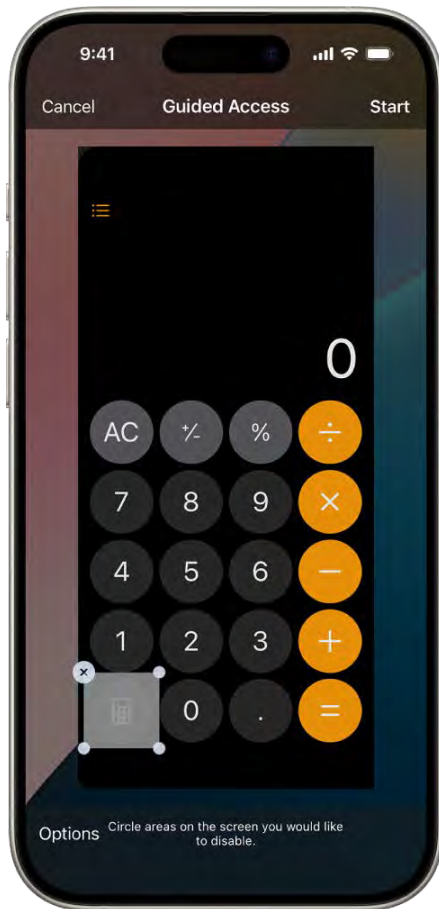
## Lock iPhone to one app with Guided Access

### Metadata

**Summary:** With Guided Access, you can temporarily restrict iPhone to one app when you let a child use your device or when you want to stay focused on a task.


With Guided Access, you can temporarily restrict iPhone to a single app. This can be useful when you let a child use your iPhone or when you want to stay focused on a task. You can set a time limit, and customize which features, hardware buttons, and areas of the screen are available.





[Alt text: An iPhone screen showing Guided Access being set up. iPhone is being temporarily locked to just the Calculator app, and one of the buttons in the app has been disabled.]

## Set up Guided Access

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Guided Access, then turn on Guided Access.
2. Adjust any of the following:
  - *Passcode Settings:* Tap Set Guided Access Passcode, then enter a passcode.  
You can also turn on [Face ID](#) (on an iPhone with Face ID) or [Touch ID](#) (on other iPhone models) as a way to end a Guided Access session.
  - *Time Limits:* Play a sound or speak the time remaining before a Guided Access session ends.
  - *Accessibility Shortcut:* Allow the use of [Accessibility Shortcut](#) during Guided Access sessions.
  - *Display Auto-Lock:* Set how long it takes iPhone to automatically lock during a Guided Access session.

### Start a Guided Access session

1. Go to the app you want to use.
2. To turn on Guided Access, do one of the following:
  - **Siri:** Say something like: “Turn on Guided Access.” [Learn how to use Siri.](#)
  - Use [Control Center](#) if you’ve added Guided Access there.
  - Use the [Accessibility Shortcut](#).
3. Circle any areas of the screen you want to disable. Drag the mask into position or use the handles to adjust its size.
4. Tap Options, then turn on or off any of the following:
  - Side Button
  - Volume Buttons
  - Motion (to prevent iPhone from switching from portrait to landscape or from responding to other motions)
  - Software Keyboards
  - Touch
  - Time Limit
5. Tap Start.

**Important:** Crash Detection and Emergency Services are not available while using Guided Access. Exit Guided Access to use Crash Detection or to make emergency calls.

### End a Guided Access session

Depending on the passcode options you chose when you [set up Guided Access](#), do any of the following:

- *Use the passcode:* Triple-click the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Home button (on other iPhone models), then enter the Guided Access passcode. If you didn’t set a Guided Access passcode, enter your iPhone passcode.
- *Use Face ID or Touch ID:* If you turned on the Face ID or Touch ID option in Guided Access Passcode Settings, double-click the side button or Home button, then unlock your iPhone with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your iPhone model).

To set up an iPhone with a simplified user interface and a customizable set of core features, see the [Assistive Access User Guide](#).

### Related

[Set up a Focus on iPhone](#)

[Hide distractions when reading articles in Safari on iPhone](#)

[Stop or reduce onscreen motion on iPhone](#)

[Cognitive accessibility features on iPhone](#)

---

## Privacy and security

NAV TITLE: [Control what you share](#)

### Control what you share on iPhone

#### Metadata

**Summary:** On your iPhone, control the overall level of privacy by choosing how much you want to share with apps.

Apps ask for permission the first time they want to use something on your iPhone. You can control which apps can access your data, location, camera, and microphone, and manage safety protections. You can later change how much you want to share.

#### **Control which apps have access to information on your iPhone**

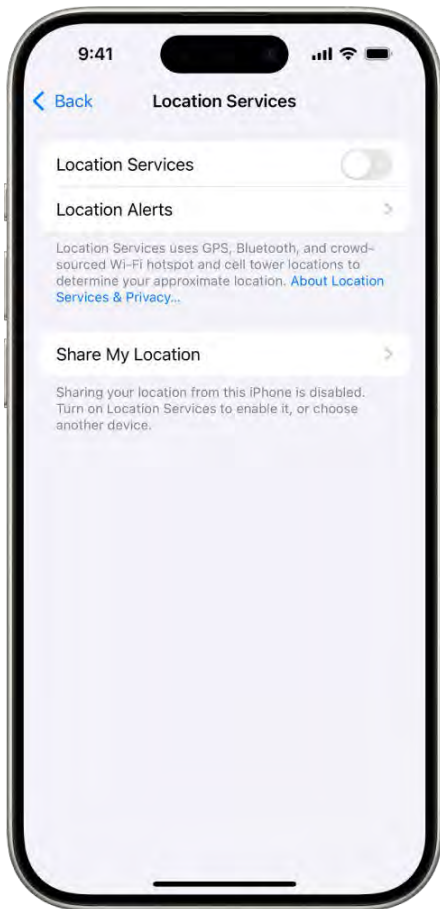


[Alt text: The Privacy & Security screen, with settings for Location Services and Tracking, and settings to control which apps can access your data.]


You can let third-party apps use information in your iPhone apps—such as Contacts, Photos, and Calendar—to help you get things done more quickly. For example, a message app may request access to your contacts to find friends who are using the same app. You can turn access on or off for any individual app.

[How to control access to information in iPhone apps](#)

**Control which apps can use the location of your iPhone**

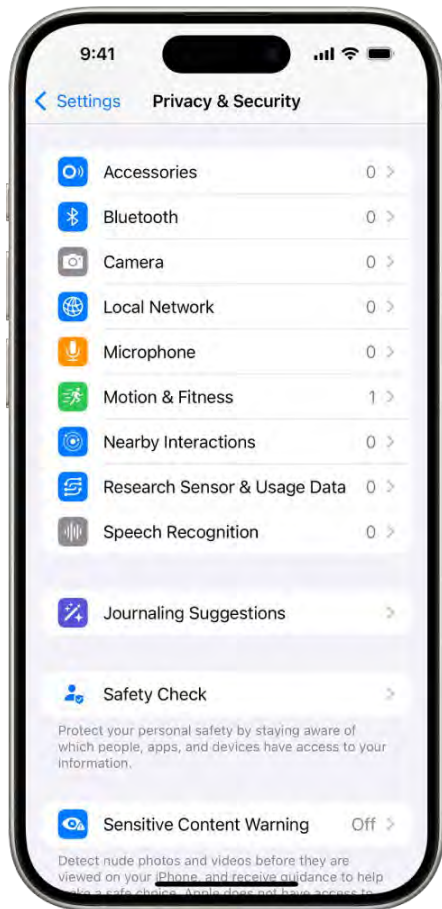


[Alt text: The Location Services screen, with settings to share the location of your iPhone with apps.]

When you give apps access to the location of your iPhone, those apps can help you get directions, receive assistance in an emergency, and more. For example, a ride-sharing app may request access to your location to pick you up. When an app is using Location Services,  [Alt text: the Location Services icon] appears in the status bar.

[How to control access to the location of your iPhone](#)

**Control which apps have access to the camera and microphone on your iPhone**



[Alt text: The Privacy & Security screen, with settings to control whether apps can use the camera, microphone, and other parts of your iPhone.]

You can let apps use the camera and microphone to make it easier to post content directly to those apps. For example, a social networking app may ask to use your camera so that you can take and upload pictures to that app. Whenever an app uses the camera (including when the camera and microphone are used together), a green indicator appears.

[How to control access to the camera and microphone](#)

**Control which apps can track you or your iPhone across websites or other apps**